Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington

Volume I - Minimum Technical Requirements and Site Planning
Volume II - Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention
Volume III - Hydrologic Analysis and Flow Control Design/BMPs
Volume IV - Source Control BMPs
Volume V - Runoff Treatment BMPs

Prepared by:

Washington State Department of Ecology
Water Quality Program

August 2001
Publication Numbers 99-11 through 99-15
(Replaces Publication Number 91-75)

Printed on Recycled Paper

How to Get Printed Copies of the Stormwater Manual

If you have a credit card, you can order printed copies of the manual or the manual on CD at the following Internet address:

https://wws2.wa.gov/prt/printwa/wsprt/default.asp

You can also use this Internet site to get price information and then send a check or money order payable to "Department of Printing" at the following address:

Department of Printing
P.O. Box 798
Olympia, WA 98507-0798

Make sure you include your name, mailing address, phone number, and the name of the publication (Stormwater Manual). Allow about two weeks for delivery. If you have questions about ordering the Stormwater Manual, please call the Department of Printing at (360) 753-6820.

How to Find the Stormwater Management Manual on the Internet

The Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington is also available on Ecology's Stormwater Homepage. The Internet address is:

http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html

How to Find Corrections, Updates, and Additional Information

With a publication of this size and complexity there will inevitably be errors that must be corrected and clarifications that are needed. There will also be new information and technological updates. Ecology intends to publish corrections, updates and new technical information on our Stormwater Homepage. This web site will not be used to make revisions in key policy areas – such as the thresholds and minimum requirements in Volume I. We encourage you to check this site periodically and incorporate corrections and updates into your copies of the Manual. You can also visit this web site for updates and additional information about other Ecology stormwater activities.

The Department of Ecology is an equal opportunity agency. If you have special accommodation needs or require this document in an alternative format, please call Donna Lynch at (360) 407-7529. The TDD number is (360) 407-6006. E-mail can be sent to dlyn461@ecy.wa.gov

Foreword

Objective of the Manual

Urban development causes significant changes in patterns of stormwater flow from land into receiving waters. Water quality can be affected when runoff carries sediment or other pollutants into streams, wetlands, lakes, and marine waters or into ground water. Stormwater management can help to reduce these effects. Stormwater management involves careful application of site design principles, construction techniques to prevent sediments and other pollutants from entering surface or ground water, source controls, and treatment of runoff to reduce pollutants and the impact of altered hydrology.

The objective of this manual is to provide a commonly accepted set of technical standards and guidance on stormwater management measures that will control the quantity and quality of stormwater produced by new development and redevelopment. The Department Ecology believes that when the standards and recommendations of this manual are properly applied, stormwater runoff should generally comply with water quality standards and protect beneficial uses of the receiving waters. We recognize that individual circumstances vary greatly, and in some instances compliance with the manual may not ensure compliance with water quality standards.

Development of The Manual

The Ecology stormwater manual was originally developed in 1992 in response to a directive of the Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan.

In preparing this revision to the1992 Manual, Ecology has relied heavily on contributions from advisory committees. There were five separate advisory committees, with nearly 100 members, representing a broad range of expertise and interests. Their insights and practical knowledge – gained from years of experience in the field – have been particularly valuable.

Two public review drafts were prepared and presented at public workshops. Ecology staff reviewed numerous public comments and in consultation with the advisory committees, incorporated many of those comments into the final document.

What Are Some of the Key Revisions to the Manual?

The manual has been made easier to use. In this publication, we have revised the format and organization of material to make it more "user friendly," we have improved the graphics, and we have included an index.

The geographic scope of the manual has been expanded to include all of Western Washington. New federal regulations under the Clean Water Act and the Safe Drinking Water Act, as well as state regulations under the Growth Management Act, make it necessary to expand the scope of the manual to include regions outside Puget Sound. Ecology is working with Eastern Washington communities and other interested parties to complete a separate manual for Eastern Washington.

Technical material has been updated. Our knowledge of the impacts of stormwater runoff and the methods for controlling it has improved. New research findings, changes in federal stormwater regulations, and proposed and actual listings under the Endangered Species Act (ESA) call for significant changes in the way we manage urban runoff. We have updated the manual to include new information and standards that we believe are more protective. Those changes include:

- Changing thresholds for selection of Best Management Practices (BMPs) to require nearly all projects to apply appropriate flow control and runoff treatment BMPs – including on-site stormwater management techniques.
- Increasing flow control requirements to address both peak flows and duration of high flows, and calling for the use of continuous runoff models when available.
- Adding a requirement for higher levels of treatment (enhanced treatment) for discharges from most industrial, commercial, and multifamily sites and arterials and highways.

Organization of This Manual

The manual is organized into five volumes. For more information on how to use the manual, refer to Volume I, Chapter 1.

- Volume I provides an introduction and overview, establishes Minimum Requirements applicable to new development and redevelopment projects, and provides site planning guidance.
- Volume II covers stormwater pollution prevention at construction sites with a primary focus on erosion and sediment control.
- Volume III covers hydrologic analysis methods for estimating pre- and post-developed runoff quantities and flow rates, and provides details of detention facility design, construction, and maintenance.

- Volume IV addresses control of runoff pollution produced by urban land uses with a primary emphasis on source control BMPs.
- Volume V provides the details of treatment BMP selection, design, construction, and maintenance.

How is the Manual Applied?

The users of this manual will be engineers, planners, environmental scientists, plan reviewers, and inspectors at the local, state, and federal government levels and private industry. Local government officials may adopt and apply the requirements of this manual directly or adopt and apply the requirements of an equivalent manual. Local government staff may use this manual, or their own manual, as a reference for reviewing stormwater site plans, checking BMP designs, and for providing technical advice in general. Private industry may use the manual for information on how to develop and implement stormwater site plans, and as a reference for technical specifications of BMPs.

The manual itself has no independent regulatory authority. The minimum requirements and technical guidance in the manual only become required through:

- Ordinances and rules established by local governments; and,
- Permits and other authorizations issued by local, state, and federal authorities.

Adoption of either Ecology's manual or an equivalent manual is a key element of local stormwater programs called for in the Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan.

Adoption of either Ecology's manual or an equivalent manual is required for all municipalities currently covered under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Municipal Stormwater Permit. The manual is also referenced in Ecology's construction and industrial stormwater permits.

Under new federal regulations, many additional cities and counties will be required to apply for coverage under an NPDES Permit. In order to satisfy federal regulations, Ecology intends to require that those jurisdictions adopt either Ecology's manual or an equivalent manual.

Ecology's Stormwater Manual Team
Tony Barrett, Team Lead
Lisa Austin, PE; Stan Ciuba, PE; Foroozan Labib, PE; Ed O'Brien, PE ; and Donna Lynch

Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington

Volume V
Runoff Treatment BMPs

Prepared by:
Washington State Department of Ecology
Water Quality Program

August 2001
Publication No. 99-15
(A revised portion of Publication No. 91-75)

♻ *printed on recycled paper*

Acknowledgments

Volume V of Ecology's Stormwater Management Manual was developed with considerable assistance from a technical advisory committee. Their expertise was invaluable in developing this document. Ecology wishes to thank this committee for volunteering their time and sharing their expertise in this effort.

Advisory Member	Affiliation
Tony Allen	WA Department of Transportation
Mark Blosser	City of Olympia
Michelle Cramer	WA Department of Fish and Wildlife
Roger James	Consultant
Chris Johnson	City of Tacoma
Louise Kulzer	King County Surface Water Management
Bill Leif	Snohomish County Stormwater Management
Jim Lenhart	Stormwater Management
Stan Miller	Spokane County
Gary Minton, PhD	Resource Planning Associates
Mel Oleson	Boeing Co.
Bill Peacock	City of Spokane
Kate Rhoads	King County
John Semrau	Semrau Engineering & Surveying
Joe Simmler	Entranco Engineers
Larry West	HWA Geosciences, Inc.
Ed Wiltsie	Jerome W. Morrissette & Associates
Jane Zimmerman	City of Everett

Department of Ecology Technical Leads

Lisa Austin
Stan Ciuba

Technical Review and Editing

Economic and Engineering Services, Inc.

Table of Contents

Tables

Figures

Credit for Figures

Figure 2.1 was prepared by Ecology staff.

Figures 5.1 through 5.5 are reproduced, with permission, from King County's Surface Water Design Manual. Figures 5.6 and 5.7 are taken from the 1992 Ecology Manual. Figures 5.8 through 5.14 are reproduced courtesy of Washington Aggregate and Concrete Association.

Figures in Chapter 7 through 12 are reproduced, with permission, from King County's Surface Water Design Manual, except where otherwise noted.

Figure 11.3 was taken from the 1992 Ecology Manual.

Chapter 1 -- Introduction

1.1 Purpose of this Volume

Best Management Practices (BMPs) are schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, managerial practices, or structural features that prevent or reduce adverse impacts to waters of Washington State. As described in Volume I of this stormwater manual, BMPs for long-term management of stormwater at developed sites can be divided into three main categories:

- BMPs addressing the amount and timing of stormwater flows;
- BMPs addressing prevention of pollution from potential sources; and
- BMPs addressing treatment of runoff to remove sediment and other pollutants.

This volume of the stormwater manual focuses on the third category, treatment of runoff to remove sediment and other pollutants at developed sites. The purpose of this volume is to provide guidance for selection, design and maintenance of permanent runoff treatment facilities.

BMPs with respect to controlling stormwater flows and control of pollutant sources are presented in Volumes III and IV, respectively.

1.2 Content and Organization of this Volume

Volume V of the stormwater manual contains 12 chapters. Chapter 1 serves as an introduction and summarizes available options for treatment of stormwater. Chapter 2 outlines a step-by-step process for selecting treatment facilities for new development and redevelopment projects. Chapter 3 presents treatment facility "menus" that are used in applying the step-by-step process presented in Chapter 2. These menus cover different treatment needs that are associated with different sites. Chapter 4 discusses general requirements for treatment facilities. Chapter 5 presents information regarding on-site stormwater management BMPs. These BMPs are intended to infiltrate, disperse, or contain runoff on site, as well as to provide treatment. Chapters 6 through 11 provide detailed information regarding specific types of treatment identified in the menus. Chapter 12 discusses special considerations for emerging technologies for stormwater treatment.

The Appendices to this volume contain more detailed information on selected topics described in the various chapters.

1.3 How to Use this Volume

This volume should be consulted to select specific BMPs for runoff treatment for inclusion in Stormwater Site Plans (see Volume I). After the Minimum Requirements have been identified from Volume I, this volume can be used to select specific treatment facilities for permanent use at developed sites, and as an aid in designing and constructing these facilities.

1.4 Runoff Treatment Facilities

1.4.1 General Considerations

Runoff treatment facilities are designed to remove pollutants contained in stormwater runoff. The pollutants of concern include sand, silt, and other suspended solids; metals such as copper, lead, and zinc; nutrients (e.g., nitrogen and phosphorous); certain bacteria and viruses; and organics such as petroleum hydrocarbons and pesticides. Methods of pollutant removal include sedimentation/settling, filtration, plant uptake, ion exchange, adsorption, and bacterial decomposition. Floatable pollutants such as oil, debris, and scum can be removed with separator structures.

1.4.2 Maintenance

Maintenance is required for all types of runoff treatment facilities. See Section 4.6 for maintenance standards for the treatment facilities discussed in this volume.

1.4.3 Treatment Methods

Methods used for runoff treatment facilities and common terms used in runoff treatment are discussed below:

- **Wetpools.** Wetpools provide runoff treatment by allowing settling of particulates during quiescent conditions (sedimentation), by biological uptake, and by vegetative filtration. Wetpools may be single-purpose facilities, providing only runoff treatment, or they may be combined with a detention pond or vault to also provide flow control. If combined, the wetpool facility can often be stacked under the detention facility with little further loss of development area.
- **Biofiltration.** Biofiltration uses vegetation in conjunction with slow and shallow-depth flow for runoff treatment. As runoff passes through the vegetation, pollutants are removed through the combined effects of filtration, infiltration, and settling. These effects are aided by the reduction of the velocity of stormwater as it passes through the biofilter. Biofiltration facilities include swales that are designed to convey and treat concentrated runoff at shallow depths and slow velocities, and filter strips that are broad areas of vegetation for treating sheet flow runoff.

- **Oil/Water Separation.** Oil/water separators remove oil floating on the top of the water. There are two general types of separators - the American Petroleum Institute (API) separators and coalescing plate (CP) separators. Both use gravity to remove floating and dispersed oil. API separators, or baffle separators, are generally composed of three chambers separated by baffles. The efficiency of these separators is dependent on detention time in the center, or detention chamber, and on droplet size. CP separators use a series of parallel plates, which improve separation efficiency by providing more surface area, thus reducing the space needed for the separator. Oil/water separators must be located off-line from the primary conveyance/detention system, bypassing flows greater than the water quality design flow. Other devices/facilities that may be used for removal of oil include catch basin inserts and linear sand filters. Oil control devices/facilities should always be placed upstream of other treatment facilities and as close to the source of oil generation as possible.
- **Pretreatment.** Presettling basins are often used to remove sediment from runoff prior to discharge into other treatment facilities. Basic treatment facilities, listed in Step 6 – Figure 2.1, can also be used to provide pretreatment. Pretreatment often must be provided for filtration and infiltration facilities to protect them from clogging or to protect ground water. Appropriate pretreatment devices include a pre-settling basin, wet pond/vault, biofilter, constructed wetland, or oil/water separator.
- **Infiltration.** Infiltration refers to the use of the filtration, adsorption, and biological decomposition properties of soils to remove pollutants. Infiltration can provide multiple benefits including pollutant removal, peak flow control, ground water recharge, and flood control. However, one condition that can limit the use of infiltration is the potential adverse impact on ground water quality. To adequately address the protection of ground water when evaluating infiltration it is important to understand the difference between soils that are suitable for runoff treatment and soils only suitable for flow control. Sufficient organic content and sorption capacity to remove pollutants must be present for soils to provide runoff treatment. Examples are silty and sandy loams. Coarser soils, such as gravelly sands, can provide flow control but are not suitable for providing runoff treatment. The use of coarser soils to provide flow control for runoff from pollutant generating surfaces must always be preceded by treatment to protect ground water quality. Thus, there will be instances when soils are suitable for treatment but not flow control, and vice versa.
- **Filtration.** A relatively new application of a pollutant removal system for stormwater is the use of various media such as sand, perlite, zeolite, and carbon, to remove low levels of total suspended solids (TSS). Specific media such as activated carbon or zeolite, can remove

hydrocarbons and soluble metals. Filter systems can be configured as basins, trenches or the novel cartridges.

- **"Emerging Technologies."** Emerging technologies are new technologies that have not been evaluated using approved protocols, but for which preliminary data indicate that they may provide a desirable level of stormwater pollutant removal. They have not been evaluated in sufficient detail to be acceptable as stand alone BMPs for general usage in new development or redevelopment situations requiring Basic Treatment. In the instances noted in Chapter 3, a few emerging technologies are allowed to help remove metals, hydrocarbons, and nutrients. Otherwise, their use is restricted in accordance with their level of development as explained in Chapter 12. The recommendations for use of these emerging technologies will change as we collect more data on their performance. Updated recommendations on their use will be posted to the Ecology website. Meanwhile, emerging technologies can also be used for retrofit situations.

- **"On-line" Systems.** Most treatment facilities can be designed as "On-line" systems with flows above the water quality design flow or volume simply passing through the facility with lesser or no pollutant removal efficiency. However, it is sometimes desirable to restrict flows to treatment facilities and bypass the remaining higher flows around them. These are called "Off-line" systems. An example of an on-line system is a wetpool that maintains a permanent pool of water for runoff treatment purposes.

- **Design Flow.** For information on determining the design storm and flows for sizing treatment facilities refer to Chapter 4 of this volume.

Chapter 2 – Treatment Facility Selection Process

This chapter describes a step-by-step process for selecting the type of treatment facilities that will apply to individual projects. Physical features of sites that are applicable to treatment facility selection are also discussed. Refer to Chapter 3 for additional detail on the four treatment menus - oil control treatment, phosphorous treatment, enhanced treatment, and basic treatment.

2.1 Step-by-Step Selection Process for Treatment Facilities

Please refer to Figure 2.1. Use the step-by-step process outlined below to determine the type of treatment facilities applicable to the project.

Step 1: Determine the Receiving Waters and Pollutants of Concern Based on Off-Site Analysis

To obtain a more complete determination of the potential impacts of a stormwater discharge, Ecology encourages local governments to require an Off-site Analysis similar to that in Chapter 2 of Volume 1. Even without an off-site analysis requirement, the project proponent must determine the natural receiving water for the stormwater drainage from the project site (ground water, wetland, lake, stream, or salt water). This is necessary to determine the applicable treatment menu from which to select treatment facilities. The identification of the receiving water should be verified by the local government agency with review responsibility. If the discharge is to the local municipal storm drainage system, the receiving water for the drainage system must be determined.

The local government should verify whether any type of water quality management plans and/or local ordinances or regulations have established specific requirements for that (those) receiving waters. Examples of plans to be aware of include:

- Watershed or Basin Plans: These can be developed to cover a wide variety of geographic scales (e.g., Water Resource Inventory Areas, or sub-basins of a few square miles), and can be focused solely on establishing stormwater requirements (e.g., "Stormwater Basin Plans"), or can address a number of pollution and water quantity issues, including urban stormwater (e.g., Puget Sound Non-Point Action Plans).
- Water Clean-up Plans: These plans are written to establish a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) of a pollutant or pollutants in a specific receiving water or basin, and to identify actions necessary to remain below that maximum loading. The plans may identify discharge limitations or management limitations (e.g., use of specific treatment facilities) for stormwater discharges from new and redevelopment projects.

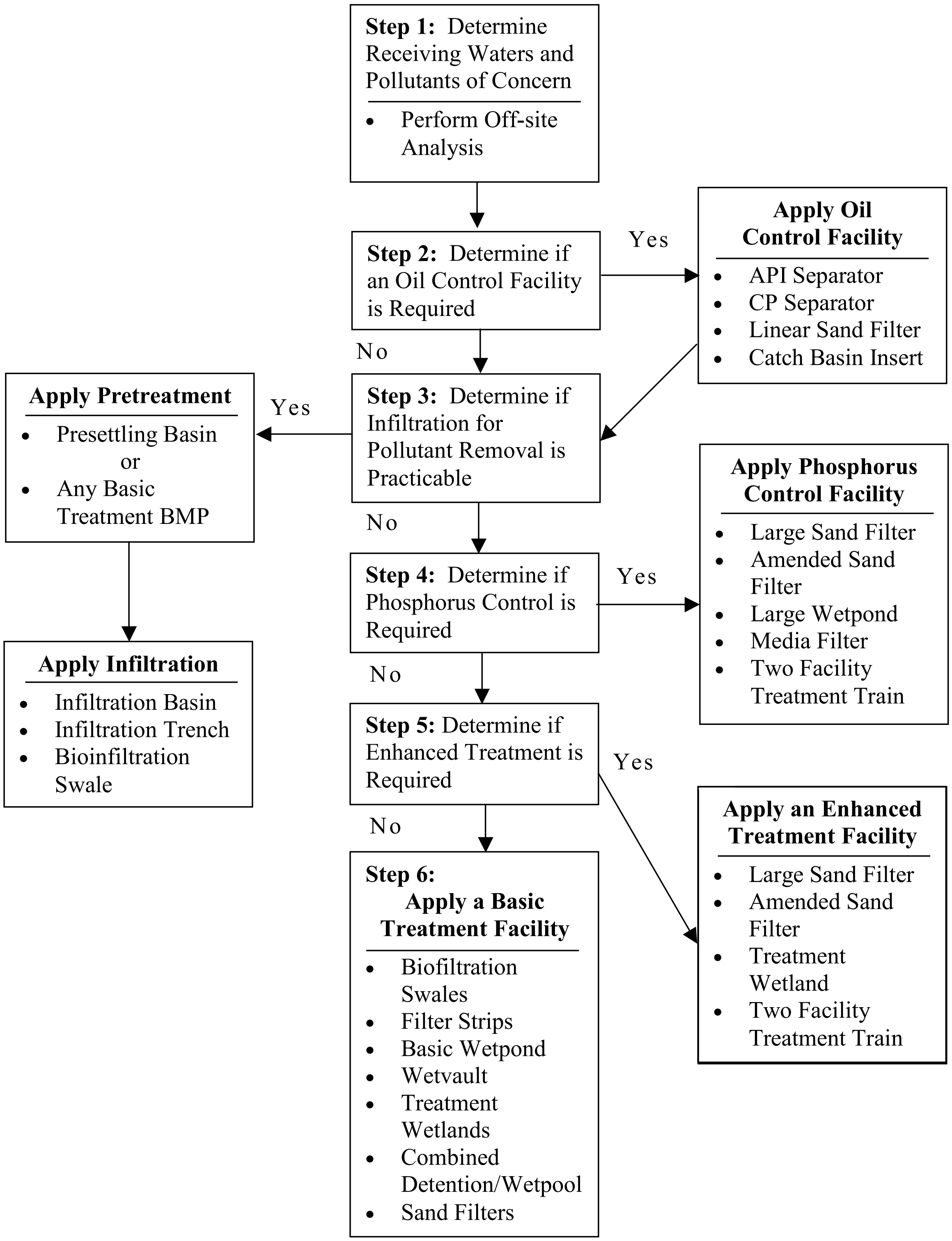


Figure 2.1 Treatment Facility Selection Flow Chart

- Groundwater Management Plans (Wellhead Protection Plans): To protect groundwater quality and/or quantity, these plans may identify actions required of stormwater discharges.

- Lake Management Plans: These plans are developed to protect lakes from eutrophication due to inputs of phosphorus from the drainage basin. Control of phosphorus from new development is a likely requirement in any such plans.

An analysis of the proposed land use(s) of the project should also be used to determine the stormwater pollutants of concern. Table 2.1 lists the pollutants of concern from various land uses. Refer to this table for examples of treatment options after determining whether "basic," "enhanced," or "phosphorus" treatment requirements apply to the project. Those decisions are made in the steps below.

Step 2: Determine if an Oil Control Facility/Device is Required

The use of oil control devices and facilities is dependent upon the specific land use proposed for development.

The Oil Control Menu (Chapter 3, Section 3.2) applies to projects that have "high-use sites." High-use sites are those that typically generate high concentrations of oil due to high traffic turnover or the frequent transfer of oil. High-use sites include:

- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area,
- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to petroleum storage and transfer in excess of 1,500 gallons per year, not including routinely delivered heating oil,
- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to parking, storage or maintenance of 25 or more vehicles that are over 10 tons gross weight (trucks, buses, trains, heavy equipment, etc.),
- A road intersection with a measured average daily traffic (ADT) count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use improvements.

Note: The traffic count can be estimated using information from "Trip Generation," published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers, or from a traffic study prepared by a professional engineer or transportation specialist with experience in traffic estimation.

Please refer to the Oil Control Menu for a listing of oil control facility options. Then see Chapter 11 of this volume for guidance on the proper selection of options and design details.

Note that some land use types require the use of a spill control (SC-type) oil/water separator. Those situations are described in Volume IV and are separate from this treatment requirement. While a number of activities may be required to use spill control (SC-type) separators, only a few will necessitate an American Petroleum Institute (API) or a coalescing plate (CP)-type separators for treatment. The following urban land uses are likely to have areas that fall within the definition of "high-use sites" or have sufficient quantities of free oil present that can be treated by an API or CP-type oil/water separator:

- Industrial Machinery and Equipment, and Railroad Equipment Maintenance
- Log Storage and Sorting Yards
- Aircraft Maintenance Areas
- Railroad Yards
- Fueling Stations
- Vehicle Maintenance and Repair
- Construction Businesses (paving, heavy equipment storage and maintenance, storage of petroleum products)

If oil control is required for the site, please refer to the General Requirements in Chapter 4. These requirements may affect the design and placement of facilities on the site (e.g., flow splitting).

If an Oil Control Facility is required, select and apply an Oil Control Facility. Please refer to the Oil Control Menu in Chapter 3, Section 3.2. After selecting an Oil Control Facility, proceed to Step 3.

If an Oil Control Facility is not required, proceed directly to Step 3.

Step 3: Determine if Infiltration for Pollutant Removal is Practicable

Please check the infiltration treatment design criteria in Chapter 7 of this volume. Infiltration can be effective at treating stormwater runoff, but soil properties must be appropriate to achieve effective treatment while not adversely impacting ground water resources. The location and depth to bedrock, the water table, or impermeable layers (such as glacial till), and the proximity to wells, foundations, septic tank drainfields, and unstable slopes can preclude the use of infiltration. Infiltration treatment facilities must be preceded by a pretreatment facility, such as a presettling basin or vault, to reduce the occurrence of plugging. Any of the basic treatment facilities, and detention ponds designed to meet flow control requirements, can also be used for pre-treatment.

If infiltration is planned, please refer to the General Requirements in Chapter 4. They can affect the design and placement of facilities on your site. For non-residential developments, if your infiltration site is within ¼ mile of a fish-bearing stream, a tributary to a fish-bearing stream, or a lake, please refer to the Enhanced Treatment Menu (Chapter 3, Section 3.4). Read the "Where Applied" paragraph in that section to determine if the Enhanced Treatment Menu applies to part of, or all of the site. If it does apply, read the Note under "Infiltration with appropriate pretreatment" to identify special pretreatment needs. If your infiltration site is within ¼ mile of a phosphorus-sensitive receiving water, please refer to the Phosphorus Treatment Menu (Chapter 3, Section 3.3) for special pretreatment needs.

Note: Infiltration through soils that do not meet the site suitability criteria in Chapter 7 is allowable as a flow control BMP (See Volume III). However, the infiltration facility must be preceded by at least a basic treatment facility. Following a basic treatment facility (or an enhanced treatment or a phosphorus treatment facility in accordance with the previous paragraph), infiltration through the bottom of a detention/retention facility for flow control can also be acceptable as a way to reduce direct discharge volumes to streams and the size of the facility.

If infiltration is practicable, select and apply pretreatment and an infiltration facility.

If infiltration is not practicable, proceed to Step 4.

Step 4: Determine if Control of Phosphorous is Required

Please refer to the plans, ordinances, and regulations identified in Step 1 as sources of information.

The requirement to provide phosphorous control is determined by the local government with jurisdiction, the Department of Ecology, or the USEPA. The local government may have developed a management plan and implementing ordinances or regulations for control of phosphorus from new development and redevelopment for the receiving water(s) of the stormwater drainage. The local government can use the following sources of information for pursuing plans and implementing ordinances and/or regulations:

- Those waterbodies reported under section 305(b) of the Clean Water Act, and designated as not supporting beneficial uses due to phosphorous;
- Those listed in Washington State's Nonpoint Source Assessment required under section 319(a) of the Clean Water Act due to nutrients.

If phosphorus control is required, select and apply a phosphorous treatment facility. Please refer to the Phosphorus Treatment Menu in Chapter 3 Section 3.3. Select an option from the menu after reviewing the applicability and limitations, site suitability, and design criteria of each for compatibility with the site. You may also use Tables 2.1 through 2.3 as an initial screening of options.

If you have selected a phosphorus treatment facility, please refer to the General Requirements in Chapter 4. They may affect the design and placement of the facility on the site.

Note: Project sites subject to the Phosphorus Treatment requirement could also be subject to the Enhanced Treatment requirement (see Step 5). In that event, apply a facility or a treatment train that is listed in both the Enhanced Treatment Menu and the Phosphorus Treatment Menu.

If phosphorus treatment is not required for the site, proceed to Step 5.

Step 5: Determine if Enhanced Treatment is Required

Enhanced treatment is required for:

Industrial project sites,
Commercial project sites,
Multi-family project sites, and
Arterials and highways

that discharge to fish-bearing streams, lakes, or to waters or conveyance systems tributary to fish-bearing streams or lakes. Areas of multifamily, industrial and commercial project sites that are identified as subject to Basic Treatment requirements are not subject to Enhanced Treatment requirements. For developments with a mix of land use types, the Enhanced Treatment requirement shall apply when the runoff from the areas subject to the Enhanced Treatment requirement comprise 50% or more of the total runoff within a threshold discharge area.

If the project must apply Enhanced Treatment, select and apply an appropriate Enhanced Treatment facility. Please refer to the Enhanced Treatment Menu in Chapter 3, Section 3.4. Select an option from the menu after reviewing the applicability and limitations, site suitability, and design criteria of each for compatibility with the site. You may also use Tables 2.1 through 2.3 for an initial screening of options.

Note: Project sites subject to the Enhanced Treatment requirement could also be subject to a phosphorus removal requirement if located in an area designated for phosphorus control. In that event, apply a facility or a treatment train that is listed in both the Enhanced Treatment Menu and the Phosphorus Treatment Menu. If you have selected an Enhanced Treatment facility, please refer to the General Requirements in Chapter 4. They may affect the design and placement of the facility on the site.

If Enhanced Treatment does not apply to the site, please proceed to Step 6.

Step 6: Select a Basic Treatment Facility

The Basic Treatment Menu is generally applied to:

- Project sites that discharge to the ground (see Step 3), UNLESS:
  - The soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment are met (see Chapter 7), or
  - The project uses infiltration strictly for flow control – not treatment - and the discharge is within ¼-mile of a phosphorus sensitive lake (use the Phosphorus Treatment Menu), or within ¼ mile of a fish-bearing stream, or a lake (use the Enhanced Treatment Menu).
- Residential projects not otherwise needing phosphorus control in Step 4 as designated by USEPA, the Department of Ecology, or a local government; and
- Project sites discharging directly to salt waters, river segments, and lakes listed in Appendix V-A; and
- Project sites that drain to streams that are not fish-bearing, or to waters not tributary to fish-bearing streams;
- Landscaped areas of industrial, commercial, and multi-family project sites, and parking lots of industrial and commercial project sites, dedicated solely to parking of employees' private vehicles, that do not involve any other pollution-generating sources (e.g., industrial activities, customer parking, storage of erodible or leachable material, wastes or chemicals). For developments with a mix of land use types, the Basic Treatment requirement shall apply when the runoff from the areas subject to the Basic Treatment requirement comprise 50% or more of the total runoff within a threshold discharge area.

Please refer to the Basic Treatment Menu in Chapter 3, Section 3.5. Select an option from the menu after reviewing the applicability and limitations, site suitability, and design criteria of each for compatibility with the site. You may also use Tables 2.1 through 2.3 as an initial screening of options.

After selecting a Basic Treatment Facility, please refer to the General Requirements in Chapter 4. They may affect the design and placement of the facility on the site.

You have completed the treatment facility selection process.

2.2 Other Treatment Facility Selection Factors

The selection of a treatment facility should be based on site physical factors and pollutants of concern. The requirements for use of Enhanced Treatment or Phosphorus Treatment represent facility selection based on pollutants of concern. Even if the site is not subject to those requirements, try to choose a facility that is more likely to do a better job removing the types of pollutants generated on the site. The types of site physical factors that influence facility selection are summarized below.

Pollutants of Concern (Table 2.1 and Table 2.2)

Table 2.1 summarizes the pollutants of concern and those land uses that are likely to generate pollutants. It also provides suggested basic and enhanced treatment options for each land use. For example, oil and grease are the expected pollutants from an uncovered fueling station. Using Table 2.1, a combination of an oil/water separator and a biofilter could be considered as the basic treatment for runoff from uncovered fueling stations. Table 2.2 is a general listing of the relative effectiveness of classes of treatment facilities in removing key stormwater pollutants.

Soil Type (Table 2.3)

The permeability of the soil underlying a treatment facility has a profound influence on its effectiveness. This is particularly true for infiltration treatment facilities that are best sited in sandy to loamy sand soils. They are not generally appropriate for sites that have final infiltration rates (f) of less than 0.5 inches per hour. Wet pond facilities situated on coarser soils will need a synthetic liner or the soils amended to reduce the infiltration rate and provide treatment. Maintaining a permanent pool in the first cell is necessary to avoid resuspension of settled solids. Biofiltration swales in coarse soils can also be amended to reduce the infiltration rate.

High Sediment Input

High TSS loads can clog infiltration soil, sand filters and coalescing plate oil & water separators. Pretreatment with a presettling basin, wet vault, or another basic treatment facility would typically be necessary.

Other Physical Factors

Slope: Steep slopes restrict the use of several BMPs. For example, biofiltration swales are usually situated on sites with slopes of less than 6%, although greater slopes can be considered. Infiltration BMPs are not suitable when the slope exceeds 15%.

High Water Table: Unless there is sufficient horizontal hydraulic receptor capacity the water table acts as an effective barrier to exfiltration and can sharply reduce the efficiency of an infiltration system. If the high water table extends to within five (5) feet of the bottom of an infiltration BMP, the site is seldom suitable.

Depth to Bedrock/ Hardpan/Till: The downward exfiltration of stormwater is also impeded if a bedrock or till layer lies too close to the surface. If the impervious layer lies within five feet below the bottom of the infiltration BMP the site is not suitable. Similarly, pond BMPs are often not feasible if bedrock lies within the area that must be excavated.

Proximity to Foundations and Wells: Since infiltration BMPs convey runoff back into the soil, some sites may experience problems with local seepage. This can be a real problem if the BMP is located too close to a building foundation. Another risk is ground water pollution, hence the requirement to site infiltration systems more than 100 feet away from drinking water wells.

Maximum Depth: Wet ponds are also subject to a maximum depth limit for the "permanent pool" volume. Deep ponds (greater than 8 feet) may stratify during summer and create low oxygen conditions near the bottom resulting in re-release of phosphorus and other pollutants back into the water.

Table 2.1 Suggested Stormwater Treatment Options for New Development and Redevelopment Projects				
Pollutant Sources	**Pollutants of Concern**	**Basic Treatment**	**Enhanced Treatment**	**Phosphorus Treatment[1]**
ROOFS:				
Com/Ind				
Metal	Zn	STW/INF	LSF/ASF/STW/INF	
Vents & Emissions[2]	O & G, TSS, Organics	OWS/CBI + BF/WP/STW	OWS/CBI + INF/ASF/STW/LSF	OWS/CBI + INF/LWP/LSF
PARKING LOT/DRIVEWAY:				
>High-use Site	High O & G, TSS, Cu, Zn, PAH	OWS/CBI/LinSF + BF/WP/STW	OWS/CBI + BF/WP/WV + SF	OWS/CBI + LSF/LWP, or OWS/CBI + BF/WP/WV+ SF
<High-use	O & G, TSS	BF/WP/STW	BF/WP/STW/WV + SF	LSF/LWP, or BF/WP/WV+SF
STREETS/HIGHWAYS:				
Arterials/H'ways	O & G, TSS, Cu, Zn, PAH	BF/WP/WV/STW	INF/LSF/ASF/STW, or BF/WV/WP + SF	INF/LSF/LWP, or BF/WV + SF
Residential Collectors	Low O & G, TSS, Cu, Zn	BF/WP/STW/INF	Not Applicable	INF/LSF/LWP, or BF/WV + SF
High Use Site Intersections	High O & G, TSS, Cu, Zn, PAH	OWS + BF/WP/WV/LinSF	OWS + BF/WV+SF, or OWS + LinSF+BF	OWS + ASF, or OWS + LinSF + Filter Strip
OTHER SOURCES:				
Industrial/ Commercial Development	O & G, TSS, Cu, Zn	WP/WV/SF/STW	LSF/ASF/STW, or BF/WP/WV + SF	LSF/ASF/LWP, or BF/WP/STW + SF
Residential Development	TSS, Pest/ Herbicides Nutrients	INF/BF/WP/SF/STW	Not Applicable	INF/LSF/LWP, or BF/WP/STW + SF
Large PGPS	TSS, Nutrients, Pest/Herbicides	WP/STW/SF	Not Applicable	LSF/LWP, or WP/STW + SF
Uncovered Fueling Stations:	High conc. O & G	OWS + BF/WP	OWS + LSF/ASF, or OWS+LinSF+Filter strip	OWS + LSF/ASF, or OWS+LinSF+ Filter strip
Industrial Yards	High O & G, TSS, Metals, PAH	OWS/CBI + BF/WP, or PSB/WV + OWS/CBI + BF/WP	OWS/CBI + LSF/ASF/STW, or OWS/CBI + BF/WP/WV + SF	OWS/CBI + LSF/ASF/LWP, or OWS/CBI + BF/WP/STW + SF
	Metals, TSS, PAH	BF/WP/STW , or PSB +BF/WP/STW	LSF/ASF/STW, or BF/WP/WV + SF	LSF/ASF/LWP, or BF/WP/STW + SF

Notes:

1 Though phosphorus is not typically listed as a pollutant of concern, it is present in most urban runoff situations. It becomes a pollutant of concern when identified by USEPA, the Department of Ecology, or a local government in a local management plan and when requirements are established in local ordinance or rules. If phosphorus is identified as a pollutant of concern, consider the treatment options listed here.

2 Application of effective source control measures is the preferred approach for pollutant reduction. Where source conrol measures are not used, or where they are ineffective, stormwater treatment is necessary.

Legend:

ASF = Amended Sand Filter
BF = Biofilter (includes swales and strips)
Cu = Copper
LSF = Large Sand Filter
LWP = Large Wet Pond
OWS = Oil & Water Separator
PSB = Presettling Basin
SF = Sand Filter
TSS = Total Suspended Solids
WV = Wetvault

INF = Infiltration
CBI = Catch Basin Insert, if applicable (See Chapter 10)
Com/Ind = Commercial or industrial
LinSF = Linear Sand Filter
O & G = Oil and Grease
PAH = Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons
PGPS = Pollution-generating pervious surface
STW = Stormwater Treatment Wetland
WP = Wet Pond
Zn = Zinc

/ = or : The slashes between the abbreviations for treatment types are intended to indicate equivalent treatment options

Additional Notes:

If a detention facility is needed for flow control to meet Min. Requirement #7 or #8, a combined detention and Wetpool (Basic or Large depending upon the discharge circumstance) facility should be considered.

Table 2.2 Ability of Treatment Facilities to Remove Key Pollutants[(1) (3)]						
	TSS	Dissolved Metals	Soap	Total Phosphorus	Pesticides/Fungicides	Hydro-carbons
Wet Pond	✷	+		+		+
Wet Vault	✷					
Biofiltration	✷	+			+	+
Sand Filter	✷	+		+		+
Constructed Wetland	✷	✷	✷		✷	✷
Compost Filters	✷	+			✷	✷
Infiltration[(2)]	✷				+	+
Oil/Water Separator						✷

Footnotes:
- ✷ Major Process
- ✚ Minor Process

(1) Adapted from Kulzer, King Co.
(2) Assumes Loamy sand, Sandy loam, or Loam soils
(3) If neither a Major or Minor Process is shown, the Treatment Facility is not particularly effective at treating the identified pollutant

Table 2.3 Screening Treatment Facilities Based on Soil Type			
Soil Type	Infiltration	Wet Pond*	Biofiltration* (Swale or Filter Strip)
Coarse Sand or Cobbles	✖	✖	✖
Sand	✔	✖	✖
Loamy Sand	✔	✖	✔
Sandy Loam	✔	✖	✔
Loam	✖	✖	✔
Silt Loam	✖	✖	✔
Sandy Clay Loam	✖	✔	✔
Silty Clay Loam	✖	✔	✔
Sandy Clay	✖	✔	✔
Silty Clay	✖	✔	✖
Clay	✖	✔	✖

Notes:
✔ Indicates that use of the technology is generally appropriate for this soil type.
✖ Indicates that use of the technology is generally not appropriate for this soil type

* Coarser soils may be used for these facilities if a liner is installed to prevent infiltration, or if the soils are amended to reduce the infiltration rate.
Note: Sand filtration is not listed because its feasibility is not dependent on soil type.

Chapter 3 -- Treatment Facility Menus

This chapter identifies choices that comprise the treatment facility menus referred to in Chapter 2. The menus in this chapter are discussed in the order of the decision process shown in Figure 2.1 and are as follows:

Oil Control Menu, Section 3.2
Phosphorus Treatment Menu, Section 3.3
Enhanced Treatment Menu, Section 3.4
Basic Treatment Menu, Section 3.5

3.1 Guide to Applying Menus

Read the step-by-step selection process for treatment facilities in Chapter 2.

Determine which menus apply to the discharge situation. This will require knowledge of (1) the receiving water(s) that the project site ultimately discharges to, and (2) whether the local government with jurisdiction, the Department of Ecology or the USEPA, has identified the receiving water as subject to phosphorus control requirements, and (3) whether the site qualifies as subject to oil control.

Determine if your project requires oil control.

If the project requires oil control, or if you elect to provide enhanced oil pollution control, choose one of the options presented in the Oil Control Menu, Section 3.2. Detailed designs for oil control facilities are given in subsequent chapters.

Note: One of the other three treatment menus will also need to be applied along with oil control.

Find the Treatment Menu that applies to the project – Basic, Enhanced, or Phosphorus.

Each menu presents treatment options. Select one option. Since all options are intended to provide equivalent removal of the target pollutant, the choice will depend only on the constraints and opportunities of the site. A project site may be subject to both the Enhanced Treatment requirement and the Phosphorus Treatment requirement. In that event, select a facility or a treatment train that is listed in both treatment menus. Note: If flow control requirements apply, it will usually be more economical to use the combined detention/wetpool facilities. Detailed facility designs for all the possible options are given in subsequent chapters in this Volume.

Read Chapter 4 concerning general facility requirements.

They apply to all facilities and may affect the design and placement of facilities on the site.

3.2 Oil Control Menu

Note: Where this menu is applicable, it is in addition to facilities required by one of the other Treatment Menus.

Where Applied: The Oil Control Menu applies to projects that have **high-use sites. High-use sites** are those that typically generate high concentrations of oil due to high traffic turnover or the frequent transfer of oil**. High-use sites** include:

- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area,
- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to petroleum storage and transfer in excess of 1,500 gallons per year, not including routinely delivered heating oil,
- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to parking, storage or maintenance of 25 or more vehicles that are over 10 tons gross weight (trucks, buses, trains, heavy equipment, etc.),
- A road intersection with a measured ADT count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use improvements.

Note: The traffic count can be estimated using information from "Trip Generation" published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers, or from a traffic study prepared by a professional engineer or transportation specialist with experience in traffic estimation.

Oil control facilities from this menu should be used on other sites that generate high concentrations of oil. In general, all-day parking areas are not intended to be defined as **high-use sites**, and should not require the oil control options listed in this menu**.** Gasoline stations, with or without small food stores, will likely exceed the high-use site threshold. The petroleum storage and transfer criterion is intended to address regular transfer operations such as gasoline service stations, not occasional filling of heating oil tanks.

Application on the Project Site: Oil control facilities are to be placed upstream of other facilities, as close to the source of oil generation as practical. For high-use sites located within a larger commercial center, only the impervious surface associated with the high-use portion of the site is subject to treatment requirements. If common parking for multiple businesses is provided, treatment shall be applied to the number of parking stalls required for the high-use business only. However, if the treatment collection area also receives runoff from other areas, the treatment facility must be sized to treat all water passing through it.

High-use roadway intersections shall treat lanes where vehicles accumulate during the signal cycle, including left and right turn lanes and through lanes, from the beginning of the left turn pocket. If no left turn pocket exists, the treatable area shall begin at a distance equal to three car lengths from the stop line. If runoff from the intersection drains to more than two collection areas that do not combine within the intersection, treatment may be limited to any two of the collection areas.

Performance Goal: The facility choices in the Oil Control Menu are intended to achieve the goals of no ongoing or recurring visible sheen, and to have a 24-hour average Total Petroleum Hydrocarbon (TPH) concentration no greater than 10 mg/l, and a maximum of 15 mg/l for a discrete sample (grab sample).

Note: Use the method for NWTPH-Dx in Ecology Publication No. ECY 97-602, Analytical Methods for Petroleum Hydrocarbons. If the concentration of gasoline is of interest, the method for NWTPH-Gx should be used to analyze grab samples.

Options: Oil control options include facilities that are small, treat runoff from a limited area, and require frequent maintenance. The options also include facilities that treat runoff from larger areas and generally have less frequent maintenance needs.

- **API-Type Oil/Water Separator** – See Chapter 11
- **Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separator** – See Chapter 11
- **Catch Basin Inserts** – See Chapter 12
- **Linear Sand Filter** – See Chapter 8

Note: The linear sand filter is used in the Basic, Enhanced, and Phosphorus Treatment menus also. If used to satisfy one of those treatment requirements, the same facility shall not also be used to satisfy the oil control requirement unless enhanced maintenance is assured. This is to prevent clogging of the filter by oil so that it will function for suspended solids and phosphorus removal as well. Quarterly cleaning is required unless specified otherwise by the designer.

3.3 Phosphorus Treatment Menu

Where Applied: The Phosphorus Treatment Menu applies to projects within watersheds that have been determined by local governments, the Department of Ecology, or the USEPA to be sensitive to phosphorus and that are being managed to control phosphorus inputs from stormwater. This menu applies to stormwater conveyed to the lake by surface flow as well as to stormwater infiltrated within one-quarter mile of the lake in soils that do not meet the soil suitability criteria in Chapter 7.

Performance Goal: The Phosphorus Menu facility choices are intended to achieve a goal of 50% total phosphorus removal for a range of influent concentrations of 0.1 – 0.5 mg/l total phosphorus. In addition, the choices are intended to achieve the Basic Treatment performance goal. The performance goal applies to the water quality design storm volume or flow rate, whichever is applicable, and on an annual average basis. The incremental portion of runoff in excess of the water quality design flow rate or volume can be routed around the facility (off-line treatment facilities), or can be passed through the facility (on-line treatment facilities) provided a net pollutant reduction is maintained. Ecology encourages the design and operation of treatment facilities that engage a bypass at flow rates higher than the water quality design flow rate. However, this is acceptable provided that the overall reduction in phosphorus loading (treated plus bypassed) is at least equal to that achieved with initiating bypass at the water quality design flow rate.

Options: Any one of the following options may be chosen to satisfy the phosphorus treatment requirement.

- **Infiltration with appropriate pretreatment** – See Chapter 6 and Chapter 7
  - Infiltration treatment

    If infiltration is through soils meeting the minimum site suitability criteria for infiltration treatment (See Chapter 7), a presettling basin or a basic treatment facility can serve for pretreatment.
  - Infiltration preceded by Basic Treatment

    If infiltration is through soils that do not meet the soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment, treatment must be provided by a basic treatment facility unless the soil and site fit the description in the next option below.
  - Infiltration preceded by Phosphorus Treatment

    If the soils do not meet the soil suitability criteria **and** the infiltration site is within ¼ mile of a phosphorus-sensitive receiving water, or a tributary to that water, treatment must be provided by one of the other treatment facility options listed below.
- **Large Sand Filter** – See Chapter 8
- **Amended Sand Filter** – See Chapter 12

Note: Processed steel fiber and crushed calcitic limestone are the only sand filter amendments for which Ecology has data that documents increased dissolved metals removal. Though Ecology is interested in obtaining additional data on the effectiveness of these amendments, local governments may exercise their judgment on the extent to which to allow their use.

- **Large Wetpond** – See Chapter 10
- **Media Filter targeted for phosphorus removal** – See Chapter 12

  Note: The use of a Stormfilter™ with iron-infused media is approved for use in limited circumstances, provided a monitoring program consistent with adopted protocols is implemented.

- **Two-Facility Treatment Trains** – See Table 3.1

Table 3.1 – Treatment Trains for Phosphorus Removal

First Basic Treatment Facility	Second Treatment Facility
Biofiltration Swale	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Filter Strip	Linear Sand Filter (no presettling needed)
Linear Sand Filter	Filter Strip
Basic Wetpond	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Wetvault	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Stormwater Treatment Wetland	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Basic Combined Detention and Wetpool	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault

3.4 Enhanced Treatment Menu

Where Applied: Enhanced treatment is required for:

Industrial project sites,
Commercial project sites,
Multi-family project sites, and
Arterials and highways

that discharge to fish-bearing streams, lakes, or to waters or conveyance systems tributary to fish-bearing streams or lakes. Areas of multifamily, industrial and commercial project sites that are identified as subject to Basic Treatment requirements are not subject to Enhanced Treatment requirements. For developments with a mix of land use types, the Enhanced Treatment requirement shall apply when the runoff from the areas subject to the Enhanced Treatment requirement comprise 50% or more of the total runoff within a threshold discharge area.

Performance Goal: The Enhanced Menu facility choices are intended to provide a higher rate of removal of dissolved metals than Basic Treatment facilities. Due to the sparse data available concerning dissolved metals removal in stormwater treatment facilities, a specific numeric removal efficiency goal could not be established at the time of publication. Instead, Ecology relied on available nationwide and local data, and knowledge of the pollutant removal mechanisms of treatment facilities to develop the list of options below. In addition, the choices are intended to achieve the Basic Treatment performance goal. The performance goal assumes that the facility is treating stormwater with dissolved Copper typically ranging from 0.003 to 0.02 mg/l, and dissolved Zinc ranging from 0.02 to 0.3 mg/l.

The performance goal applies to the water quality design storm volume or flow rate, whichever is applicable, and on an annual average basis. The incremental portion of runoff in excess of the water quality design flow rate or volume can be routed around the facility (off-line treatment facilities), or can be passed through the facility (on-line treatment facilities) provided a net pollutant reduction is maintained. Ecology encourages the design and operation of treatment facilities that engage a bypass at flow rates higher than the water quality design flow rate as long as the reduction in dissolved metals loading exceeds that achieved with initiating bypass at the water quality design flow rate.

Options: Any one of the following options may be chosen to satisfy the enhanced treatment requirement:

- **Infiltration with appropriate pretreatment** – See Chapter 7
  - Infiltration treatment

    If infiltration is through soils meeting the minimum site suitability criteria for infiltration treatment (See Chapter 7), a presettling basin or a basic treatment facility can serve for pretreatment.
  - Infiltration preceded by Basic Treatment

    If infiltration is through soils that do not meet the soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment, treatment must be provided by a basic treatment facility unless the soil and site fit the description in the next option below.
  - Infiltration preceded by Enhanced Treatment

    If the soils do not meet the soil suitability criteria **and** the infiltration site is within ¼ mile of a fish-bearing stream, a tributary to a fish-bearing stream, or a lake, treatment must be provided by one of the other treatment facility options listed below.

- **Large Sand Filter –** See Chapter 8

- **Amended Sand Filter** – See Chapter 12

  Note: Processed steel fiber and crushed calcitic limestone are the only sand filter amendments for which Ecology has data that documents increased dissolved metals removal. Though Ecology is interested in obtaining additional data on the effectiveness of these amendments, local governments may exercise their judgment on the extent to which to allow their use.

- **Stormwater Treatment Wetland** – See Chapter 10
- **Two Facility Treatment Trains** – See Table 3.2

Table 3.2 -- Treatment Trains for Dissolved Metals Removal

First Basic Treatment Facility	Second Treatment Facility
Biofiltration Swale	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter(1)
Filter Strip	Linear Sand Filter with no pre-settling cell needed
Linear Sand Filter	Filter Strip
Basic Wetpond	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter(1)
Wetvault	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter(1)
Basic Combined Detention/Wetpool	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter(1)
Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault with a presettling cell if the filter isn't preceded by a detention facility	Media Filter(1)

Footnote:
(1) The media must be of a nature that has the capability to remove dissolved metals effectively based on at least limited data. Ecology includes Stormfilter's ™ leaf compost and zeolite media in this category.

3.5 Basic Treatment Menu

Where Applied: The Basic Treatment Menu is generally applied to:

- Project sites that discharge to the ground (see Step 3), UNLESS:
  - The soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment are met (see Chapter 7), or
  - The project uses infiltration strictly for flow control – not treatment - and the discharge is within ¼-mile of a phosphorus sensitive lake (use the Phosphorus Treatment Menu), or within ¼ mile of a fish-bearing stream, or a lake (use the Enhanced Treatment Menu).
- Residential projects not otherwise needing phosphorus control in Step 4 (See Chapter 2) as designated by USEPA, the Department of Ecology, or a local government; and

- Project sites discharging directly to salt waters, river segments, and lakes listed in Appendix V-A; and
- Project sites that drain to streams that are not fish-bearing, or to waters not tributary to fish-bearing streams;
- Landscaped areas of industrial, commercial, and multi-family project sites, and parking lots of industrial and commercial project sites, dedicated solely to parking of employees' private vehicles, that do not involve any other pollution-generating sources (e.g., industrial activities, customer parking, storage of erodible or leachable material, wastes or chemicals).

For developments with a mix of land use types, the Basic Treatment requirement shall apply when the runoff from the areas subject to the Basic Treatment requirement comprise 50% or more of the total runoff within a threshold discharge area.

Performance Goal: The Basic Treatment Menu facility choices are intended to achieve 80% removal of total suspended solids for influent concentrations that are greater than 100 mg/l, but less than 200 mg/l. For influent concentrations greater than 200 mg/l, a higher treatment goal may be appropriate. For influent concentrations less than 100 mg/l, the facilities are intended to achieve an effluent goal of 20 mg/l total suspended solids.

The performance goal applies to the water quality design storm volume or flow rate, whichever is applicable. The goal also applies on an average annual basis to the entire annual discharge volume (treated plus bypassed). The incremental portion of runoff in excess of the water quality design flow rate or volume can be routed around the facility (off-line treatment facilities), or can be passed through the facility (on-line treatment facilities) provided a net TSS reduction is maintained. Ecology encourages the design and operation of treatment facilities that engage a bypass at flow rates higher than the water quality design flow rate as long as the reduction in TSS loading exceeds that achieved with initiating bypass at the water quality design flow rate.

The performance goal assumes that the facility is treating stormwater with a typical particle size distribution. For a description of a typical particle size distribution, please refer to the stormwater monitoring protocol on the Department of Ecology website.

Options: Any one of the following options may be chosen to satisfy the basic treatment requirement:

- **Bio-infiltration Swale –** See Chapter 7
- **Infiltration –** See Chapter 7

- **Sand Filters –** See Chapter 8
- **Biofiltration Swales** – See Chapter 9
- **Filter Strips** – See Chapter 9
- **Basic Wetpond** – See Chapter 10
- **Wetvault** – See Chapter 10 (see note)
- **Stormwater Treatment Wetland –** See Chapter 10
- **Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities –** See Chapter 10

Note: A wetvault may be used for commercial, industrial, or road projects if there are space limitations. Ecology discourages the use of wetvaults for residential projects. Combined detention/wetvaults are allowed; see Section 10.3.

Chapter 4 - General Requirements for Stormwater Facilities

Note: All Figures in Chapter 4 are courtesy of King County

This chapter addresses general requirements for treatment facilities. Requirements discussed in this chapter include design volumes and flows, sequencing of facilities, liners, and hydraulic structures for splitting or dispersing flows.

4.1 Design Volume and Flow

4.1.1 Water Quality Design Storm Volume

The volume of runoff predicted from a 24-hour storm with a 6-month return frequency (a.k.a., 6-month, 24-hour storm).

Wetpool facilities are sized based upon use of the NRCS (formerly known as SCS) curve number equations in Chapter 2 of Volume III, for the 6-month, 24-hour storm. Treatment facilities sized by this simple runoff volume-based approach are the same size whether they precede detention, follow detention, or are integral with the detention facility (i.e., a combined detention and wetpool facility).

Unless amended to reflect local precipitation statistics, the 6-month, 24-hour precipitation amount may be assumed to be 72 percent of the 2-year, 24-hour amount. Precipitation estimates of the 6-month and 2-year, 24-hour storms for certain towns and cities are listed in Appendix I-B of Volume I. For other areas, interpolating between isopluvials for the 2-year, 24-hour precipitation and multiplying by 72% yields the appropriate storm size. Isopluvials for 2-year, 24-hour amounts for Western Washington are reprinted in Volume III.

4.1.2 Water Quality Design Flow Rate

***Downstream of Detention Facilities*: The full 2-year release rate from the detention facility.**

An approved continuous runoff model should identify the 2-year return frequency flow rate discharged by a detention facility that is designed to meet the flow duration standard.

***Preceding Detention Facilities or when Detention Facilities are not required*: The flow rate at or below which 91% of the runoff volume, as estimated by an approved continuous runoff model, will be treated.** Design criteria for treatment facilities are assigned to achieve the applicable performance goal at the water quality design flow rate (e.g., 80 percent TSS removal).

- *Off-line facilities*: For treatment facilities not preceded by an equalization or storage basin, and when runoff flow rates exceed the water quality design flow rate, the treatment facility should continue to receive and treat the water quality design flow rate to the applicable treatment performance goal. Only the higher incremental portion of flow rates are bypassed around a treatment facility. Ecology encourages design of systems that engage a bypass at higher flow rates provided the reduction in pollutant loading exceeds that achieved with bypass at the water quality design flow rate.

  Treatment facilities preceded by an equalization or storage basin may identify a lower water quality design flow rate provided that at least 91 percent of the estimated runoff volume in the time series of a continuous runoff model is treated to the applicable performance goals (e.g., 80 percent TSS removal at the water quality design flow rate and 80 percent TSS removal on an annual average basis).

- *On-line facilities*: Runoff flow rates in excess of the water quality design flow rate can be routed through the facility provided a net pollutant reduction is maintained, and the applicable annual average performance goal is likely to be met.

Estimation of Water Quality Design Flow Rate for Facilities Preceding Detention or when Detention Facilities are not required:

Until a continuous runoff model is available that identifies the water quality design flow rate directly, that flow rate shall be estimated using Table 4.1, and its following directions for use:

Step 1 Determine whether to use the 15-minute time series or the 1-hour time series. At the time of publication, all BMPs except wetpool-types should use the 15-minute time series.

Step 2 Determine the ratio corresponding with the effective impervious surface associated with the project. For effective impervious areas between two 5 percent increments displayed in the table, a straight line interpolation may be used, or use the higher 5 percent increment value.

Step 3 Multiply the 2-year return frequency flow for the post-developed site, as predicted by an approved continuous runoff model, by the ratio determined above.

Table 4.1 Ratio of 91% Flow Rate to 2-Year Frequency vs. Effective Impervious Area			
15 Minutes data		Hourly data	
EIA	Ratio	EIA	Ratio
10%	0.19	10%	0.19
15%	0.20	15%	0.20
20%	0.22	20%	0.20
25%	0.23	25%	0.21
30%	0.25	30%	0.22
35%	0.26	35%	0.23
40%	0.28	40%	0.24
45%	0.30	45%	0.25
50%	0.31	50%	0.26
54%	0.33	54%	0.27
60%	0.34	60%	0.28
65%	0.36	65%	0.28
70%	0.37	70%	0.29
75%	0.38	75%	0.30
80%	0.39	80%	0.30
85%	0.40	85%	0.31
90%	0.41	90%	0.31
95%	0.42	95%	0.32
100%	0.43	100%	0.32

4.1.3 Flows Requiring Treatment

Runoff from pollution-generating impervious or pervious surfaces must be treated. Pollution-generating impervious surfaces (PGIS) are those impervious surfaces considered to be a significant source of pollutants in stormwater runoff. The glossary in Volume I provides additional definitions and clarification of these terms.

Such surfaces include those which are subject to: vehicular use; industrial activities; or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals, and which receive direct rainfall or the run-on or blow-in of rainfall. Erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals are those substances which, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the rainfall runoff. Examples include erodible soils that are stockpiled, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oily substances, ashes, kiln dust, and garbage dumpster leakage. Metal roofs are also considered to be PGIS unless they are coated with an inert, non-leachable material (e.g., baked enamel coating).

A surface, whether paved or not, shall be considered subject to vehicular use if it is regularly used by motor vehicles. The following are considered regularly-used surfaces: roads, unvegetated road shoulders, bike lanes within the traveled lane of a roadway, driveways, parking lots, unfenced firelanes, vehicular equipment storage yards, and airport runways.

The following are not considered regularly-used surfaces: paved bicycle pathways separated from and not subject to drainage from roads for motor vehicles, fenced firelanes, and infrequently used maintenance access roads.

Pollution-generating pervious surfaces (PGPS) are any non-impervious surface subject to the use of pesticides and fertilizers or loss of soil. Typical PGPS include lawns, landscaped areas, golf courses, parks, cemeteries, and sports fields.

Summary of Areas Needing Treatment

- All runoff from pollution-generating impervious surfaces is to be treated through the water quality facilities specified in Chapter 2 and Chapter 3.
- Lawns and landscaped areas specified are pervious but also generate run-off into street drainage systems. In those cases the runoff from the pervious areas must be estimated and added to the runoff from impervious areas to size treatment facilities.
- Runoff from backyards can drain into native vegetation in areas designated as open space or buffers. In these cases, the area in native vegetation may be used to provide the requisite water quality treatment, provided it meets the requirements in Chapter 5 under the "Cleared Area Dispersion BMPs," of BMP T5.30 Full Dispersion.
- Drainage from impervious surfaces that are not pollution- generating need not be treated and may bypass runoff treatment, if it is not mingled with runoff from pollution-generating surfaces.
- Roof runoff is still subject to flow control per Minimum Requirement #7. Note that metal roofs are considered pollution generating unless they are coated with an inert non-leachabale material.
- Drainage from areas in native vegetation should not be mixed with untreated runoff from streets and driveways, if possible. It is best to infiltrate or disperse this relatively clean runoff to maximize recharge to shallow ground water, wetlands, and streams.
- If runoff from non-pollution generating surfaces reaches a runoff treatment BMP, flows from those areas must be included in the sizing calculations for the facility. Once runoff from non-pollution generating areas is mixed with runoff from pollution-generating areas, it cannot be separated before treatment.

4.2 Sequence of Facilities

The Enhanced Treatment and Phosphorus Removal Menus, described in Chapter 3, include treatment options in which more than one type of treatment facility is used. In those options, the sequence of facilities is prescribed. This is because the specific pollutant removal role of the second or third facility in a treatment often assumes that significant solids settling has already occurred. For example, phosphorus removal using a two-facility treatment relies on the second facility (sand filter) to remove a finer fraction of solids than those removed by the first facility.

There is also the question of whether treatment facilities should be placed upstream or downstream of detention facilities that are needed for flow control purposes. In general, all treatment facilities may be installed upstream of detention facilities, although presettling basins are needed for sand filters and infiltration basins. However, not all treatment facilities can function effectively if located downstream of detention facilities. Those facilities that treat unconcentrated flows, such as filter strips and narrow-area biofilters, are usually not practical downstream of detention facilities. Other types of treatment facilities present special problems that must be considered before placement downstream is advisable.

For instance, prolonged flows discharged by a detention facility that is designed to meet the flow duration standard of Minimum Requirement No. 7 may interfere with proper functioning of basic biofiltration swales and sand filters. Grasses typically specified in the basic biofiltration swale design will not survive. A wet biofilter design would be a better choice.

For sand filters, the prolonged flows may cause extended saturation periods within the filter. Saturated sand can lose all oxygen and become anoxic. If that occurs, some amount of phosphorus captured within the filter may become soluble and released. To prevent long periods of sand saturation, adjustments may be necessary after the sand filter is in operation to bypass some areas of the filter. This bypassing will allow them to drain completely. It may also be possible to employ a different type of facility that is less sensitive to prolonged flows.

Oil control facilities must be located upstream of treatment facilities and as close to the source of oil-generating activity as possible. They should also be located upstream of detention facilities, if possible.

Table 4.2 summarizes placement considerations of treatment facilities in relation to detention.

Table 4.2 Treatment facility placement in relation to detention		
Water Quality Facility	**Preceding Detention**	**Following Detention**
Basic biofiltration swale (Chapter 9)	OK	OK. Prolonged flows may reduce grass survival. Consider wet biofiltration swale
Wet biofiltration swale (Chapter 9)	OK	OK
Filter strip (Chapter 9)	OK	No—must be installed before flows concentrate.
Basic or large wetpond (Chapter 10)	OK	OK—less water level fluctuation in ponds downstream of detention may improve aesthetic qualities and performance.
Basic or large combined detention and wetpond (Chapter 10)	Not applicable	Not applicable
Wetvault (Chapter 10)	OK	OK
Basic or large sand filter or sand filter vault (Chapter 8)	OK, but presettling and control of floatables needed	OK—sand filters downstream of detention facilities may require field adjustments if prolonged flows cause sand saturation and interfere with phosphorus removal.
Stormwater treatment wetland/pond (Chapter 10)	OK	OK—less water level fluctuation and better plant diversity are possible if the stormwater wetland is located downstream of the detention facility.

4.3 Setbacks, Slopes, and Embankments

The following guidelines for setbacks, slopes, and embankments are intended to provide for adequate maintenance accessibility to runoff treatment facilities. Setback requirements are generally required by local regulations, uniform building code requirements, or other state regulations. Local governments should require specific setback, slopes and embankment limitations to address public health and safety concerns.

4.3.1 Setbacks

Local governments may require specific setbacks in sites with steep slopes, land-slide areas, open water features, springs, wells, and septic tank drain fields. Setbacks from tract lines are necessary for maintenance access and equipment maneuverability. Adequate room for maintenance equipment should be considered during site design.

Examples of setbacks commonly used include the following:

- Stormwater infiltration systems shall be set back at least 100 feet from open water features and 200 feet from springs used for drinking water supply. Infiltration facilities upgradient of drinking water supplies must comply with Health Department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, Department of Health, 12/93).
- Stormwater infiltration systems, and unlined wetponds and detention ponds shall be located at least 100 feet from drinking water wells and septic tanks and drainfields.
- Wetvaults and tanks may be required to be set back from building foundations, structures, property lines, and vegetative buffers. A typical setback requirement is 20 feet, for maintenance access.
- All facilities shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any steep (greater than 15%) slope. A geotechnical report must address the potential impact of a wetpond on a steep slope

4.3.2 Side Slopes and Embankments

- Side slopes should preferably not exceed a slope of 3H:1V. Moderately undulating slopes are acceptable and can provide a more natural setting for the facility. In general, gentle side slopes improve the aesthetic attributes of the facility and enhance safety.
- Interior side slopes may be retaining walls, if the design is prepared and stamped by a licensed civil engineer. A fence should be provided along the top of the wall.
- Maintenance access should be provided through an access ramp or other adequate means.
- Embankments that impound water must comply with the Washington State Dam Safety Regulations (Chapter 173-175 WAC). If the impoundment has a storage capacity, including both water and sediment storage volumes, greater than 10 acre-feet above natural ground level, then dam safety design and review are required by the Department of Ecology. See Chapter 3, Volume III, for more detail concerning Detention Ponds.

4.4 Facility Liners

Liners are intended to reduce the likelihood that pollutants in stormwater will reach ground water when runoff treatment facilities are constructed. In addition to groundwater protection considerations, some facility types require permanent water for proper functioning. An example is the first cell of a wetpond.

Treatment liners amend the soil with materials that treat stormwater before it reaches more freely draining soils. They have slow rates of infiltration, generally less than 2.4 inches per hour (1.7×10^{-3} cm/s), but not as slow as low permeability liners. Treatment liners may use in-place native soils or imported soils.

Low permeability liners reduce infiltration to a very slow rate, generally less than 0.02 inches per hour (1.4×10^{-5} cm/s). These types of liners should be used for industrial or commercial sites with a potential for high pollutant loading in the stormwater runoff. Low permeability liners may be fashioned from compacted till, clay, geomembrane, or concrete. Till liners are preferred because of their general resilience and ease of maintenance.

4.4.1 General Design Criteria

- Table 4.3 shows recommendations for the type of liner generally best suited for use with various runoff treatment facilities.
- Liners shall be evenly placed over the bottom and/or sides of the treatment area of the facility as indicated in Table 4.3. Areas above the treatment volume that are required to pass flows greater than the water quality treatment flow (or volume) need not be lined. However, the lining must be extended to the top of the interior side slope and anchored if it cannot be permanently secured by other means.
- For low permeability liners, the following criteria apply:
  1. Where the seasonal high groundwater elevation is likely to contact a low permeability liner, liner buoyancy may be a concern. A low permeability liner shall not be used in this situation unless evaluated and recommended by a geotechnical engineer.
  2. Where grass must be planted over a low permeability liner per the facility design, a minimum of 6 inches of good topsoil or compost-amended native soil (2 inches compost tilled into 6 inches of native till soil) must be placed over the liner in the area to be planted. Twelve inches of cover is preferred.
- If a treatment liner will be below the seasonal high water level, the pollutant removal performance of the liner must be evaluated by a geotechnical or groundwater specialist and found to be as protective as if the liner were above the level of the groundwater.

See Sections 4.4.2 and 4.4.3 for more specific design criteria for treatment liners and low permeability liners.

Table 4.3 Lining Types Recommended For Runoff Treatment Facilities		
WQ Facility	**Area to be Lined**	**Type of Liner Recommended**
Presettling basin	Bottom and sides	Low permeability liner or Treatment liner (If the basin will intercept the seasonal high ground water table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
Wetpond	First cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface --------------------------------- Second cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Low permeability liner or Treatment liner (If the wet pond will intercept the seasonal high ground water table, a treatment liner is recommended.) -------------------------------- Treatment liner
Combined detention/WQ facility	First cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface --------------------------------- Second cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Low permeability liner or Treatment liner (If the facility will intercept the seasonal high ground water table a treatment liner is recommended.) -------------------------------- Treatment liner
Stormwater wetland	Bottom and sides, both cells	Low permeability liner (If the facility will intercept the seasonal high ground water table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
Sand filtration basin	Basin sides only	Treatment liner
Sand filter vault	Not applicable	No liner needed
Linear sand filter	Not applicable if in vault Bottom and sides of presettling cell if not in vault	No liner needed Low permeability or treatment liner
Media filter (in vault)	Not applicable	No liner needed
Wet vault	Not applicable	No liner needed

4.4.2 Design Criteria for Treatment Liners

This section presents the design criteria for treatment liners.

- A two-foot thick layer of soil with a minimum organic content of 5% AND a minimum cation exchange capacity (CEC) of 5 milliequivalents/100 grams can be used as a treatment layer beneath a water quality or detention facility.

- To demonstrate that in-place soils meet the above criteria, one sample per 1,000 square feet of facility area shall be tested. Each sample shall be a composite of subsamples taken throughout the depth of the treatment layer (usually two to six feet below the expected facility invert).

- Typically, side wall seepage is not a concern if the seepage flows through the same stratum as the bottom of the treatment BMP. However, if the treatment soil is an engineered soil or has very low permeability, the potential to bypass the treatment soil through the side walls may be significant. In those cases, the treatment BMP side walls may be lined with at least 18 inches of treatment soil, as described above, to prevent untreated seepage. This lesser soil thickness is based on unsaturated flow as a result of alternating wet-dry periods.
- Organic content shall be measured on a dry weight basis using ASTM D2974.
- Cation exchange capacity (CEC) shall be tested using EPA laboratory method 9081.
- Certification by a soils testing laboratory that imported soil meets the organic content and CEC criteria above shall be provided to the local approval authority.
- Animal manures used in treatment soil layers must be sterilized because of potential for bacterial contamination of the groundwater.

4.4.3 Design Criteria for Low Permeability Liner Options

This section presents the design criteria for each of the following four low permeability liner options: compacted till liners, clay liners, geomembrane liners, and concrete liners.

Compacted Till Liners

- Liner thickness shall be 18 inches after compaction.
- Soil shall be compacted to 95% minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D-1557).
- A different depth and density sufficient to retard the infiltration rate to 2.4×10^{-5} inches per minute (1×10^{-6} cm/s) may also be used instead of Criteria 1 and 2.
- Soil should be placed in 6-inch lifts.
- Soils may be used that meet the following gradation:

Table 4.4

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
6-inch	100
4-inch	90
#4	70 - 100
#200	20

Clay Liners

- Liner thickness shall be 12 inches.
- Clay shall be compacted to 95% minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D-1557).
- A different depth and density sufficient to retard the infiltration rate to 2.4×10^{-5} inches per minute (1×10^{-6} cm/s) may also be used instead of the above critera.
- The slope of clay liners must be restricted to 3H: IV for all areas requiring soil cover; otherwise, the soil layer must be stabilized by another method so that soil slippage into the facility does not occur. Any alternative soil stabilization method must take maintenance access into consideration.
- Where clay liners form the sides of ponds, the interior side slope should not be steeper than 3: 1, irrespective of fencing. This restriction is to ensure that anyone falling into the pond may safely climb out.

Geomembrane Liners

- Geomembrane liners shall be ultraviolet (UV) light resistant and have a minimum thickness of 30 mils. A thickness of 40 mils shall be used in areas of maintenance access or where heavy machinery must be operated over the membrane.
- Geomembranes shall be bedded according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
- Liners shall be installed so that they can be covered with 12 inches of top dressing forming the bottom and sides of the water quality facility, except for liner sand filters. Top dressing shall consist of 6 inches of crushed rock covered with 6 inches of native soil. The rock layer is to mark the location of the liner for future maintenance operations. As an alternative to crushed rock, 12 inches of native soil may be used if orange plastic “safety fencing” or another highly-visible, continuous marker is embedded 6 inches above the membrane.
- If possible, liners should be of a contrasting color so that maintenance workers are aware of any areas where a liner may have become exposed when maintaining the facility.
- Geomembrane liners shall not be used on slopes steeper than 5H:1V to prevent the top dressing material from slipping. Textured liners may be used on slopes up to 3H:1V upon recommendation by a geotechnical engineer that the top dressing will be stable for all site conditions, including maintenance.

Concrete Liners

- Portland cement liners are allowed irrespective of facility size, and shotcrete may be used on slopes. However, specifications must be developed by a professional engineer who certifies the liner against cracking or losing water retention ability under expected conditions of operation, including facility maintenance operations. Weight of maintenance equipment can be up to 80,000 pounds when fully loaded.
- Asphalt concrete may not be used for liners due to its permeability to many organic pollutants.
- If grass is to be grown over a concrete liner, slopes must be no steeper than 5H: IV to prevent the top dressing material from slipping.

4.5 Hydraulic Structures

4.5.1 Flow Splitter Designs

Many water quality (WQ) facilities can be designed as flow-through or on-line systems with flows above the WQ design flow or volume simply passing through the facility at a lower pollutant removal efficiency. However, it is sometimes desirable to restrict flows to WQ treatment facilities and bypass the remaining higher flows around them through off-line facilities. This can be accomplished by splitting flows in excess of the WQ design flow upstream of the facility and diverting higher flows to a bypass pipe or channel. The bypass typically enters a detention pond or the downstream receiving drainage system, depending on flow control requirements. In most cases, it is a designer's choice whether WQ facilities are designed as on-line or off-line; an exception is oil/water separators, which must be designed off-line.

A crucial factor in designing flow splitters is to ensure that low flows are delivered to the treatment facility up to the WQ design flow rate. Above this rate, additional flows are diverted to the bypass system with minimal increase in head at the flow splitter structure to avoid surcharging the WQ facility under high flow conditions.

Flow splitters are typically manholes or vaults with concrete baffles. In place of baffles, the splitter mechanism may be a half tee section with a solid top and an orifice in the bottom of the tee section. A full tee option may also be used as described below in the "General Design Criteria." Two possible design options for flow splitters are shown in Figure 4.1 and Figure 4.2 (King County). Other equivalent designs that achieve the result of splitting low flows and diverting higher flows around the facility are also acceptable.

General Design Criteria

- A flow splitter must be designed to deliver the WQ design flow rate specified in this volume to the WQ treatment facility. For the basic size sand filter, which is sized based on volume, use the WQ design flow rate to design the splitter. For the large sand filter, use the 2-year flow rate or the flow rate that corresponds with treating 95 percent of the runoff volume of a long-term time series predicted by an approved continuous runoff model.

- The top of the weir must be located at the water surface for the design flow. Remaining flows enter the bypass line. Flows modeled using a continuous simulation model should use 15-minute time steps, if available. Otherwise use 1-hour time steps.
- The maximum head must be minimized for flow in excess of the WQ design flow. Specifically, flow to the WQ facility at the 100-year water surface must not increase the design WQ flow by more than 10%.
- Either design shown in Figure 4.1 or Figure 4.2 or an equivalent design may be used.
- As an alternative to using a solid top plate in Figure 4.2, a full tee section may be used with the top of the tee at the 100-year water surface. This alternative would route emergency overflows (if the overflow pipe were plugged) through the WQ facility rather than back up from the manhole.
- Special applications, such as roads, may require the use of a modified flow splitter. The baffle wall may be fitted with a notch and adjustable weir plate to proportion runoff volumes other than high flows.
- For ponding facilities, back water effects must be included in designing the height of the standpipe in the manhole.
- Ladder or step and handhold access must be provided. If the weir wall is higher than 36 inches, two ladders, one to either side of the wall, must be used.

Materials

- The splitter baffle may be installed in a Type 2 manhole or vault.
- The baffle wall must be made of reinforced concrete or another suitable material resistant to corrosion, and have a minimum 4-inch thickness. The minimum clearance between the top of the baffle wall and the bottom of the manhole cover must be 4 feet; otherwise, dual access points should be provided.
- All metal parts must be corrosion resistant. Examples of preferred materials include aluminum, stainless steel, and plastic. Zinc and galvanized materials are discouraged because of aquatic toxicity. Painted metal parts should not be used because of poor longevity.

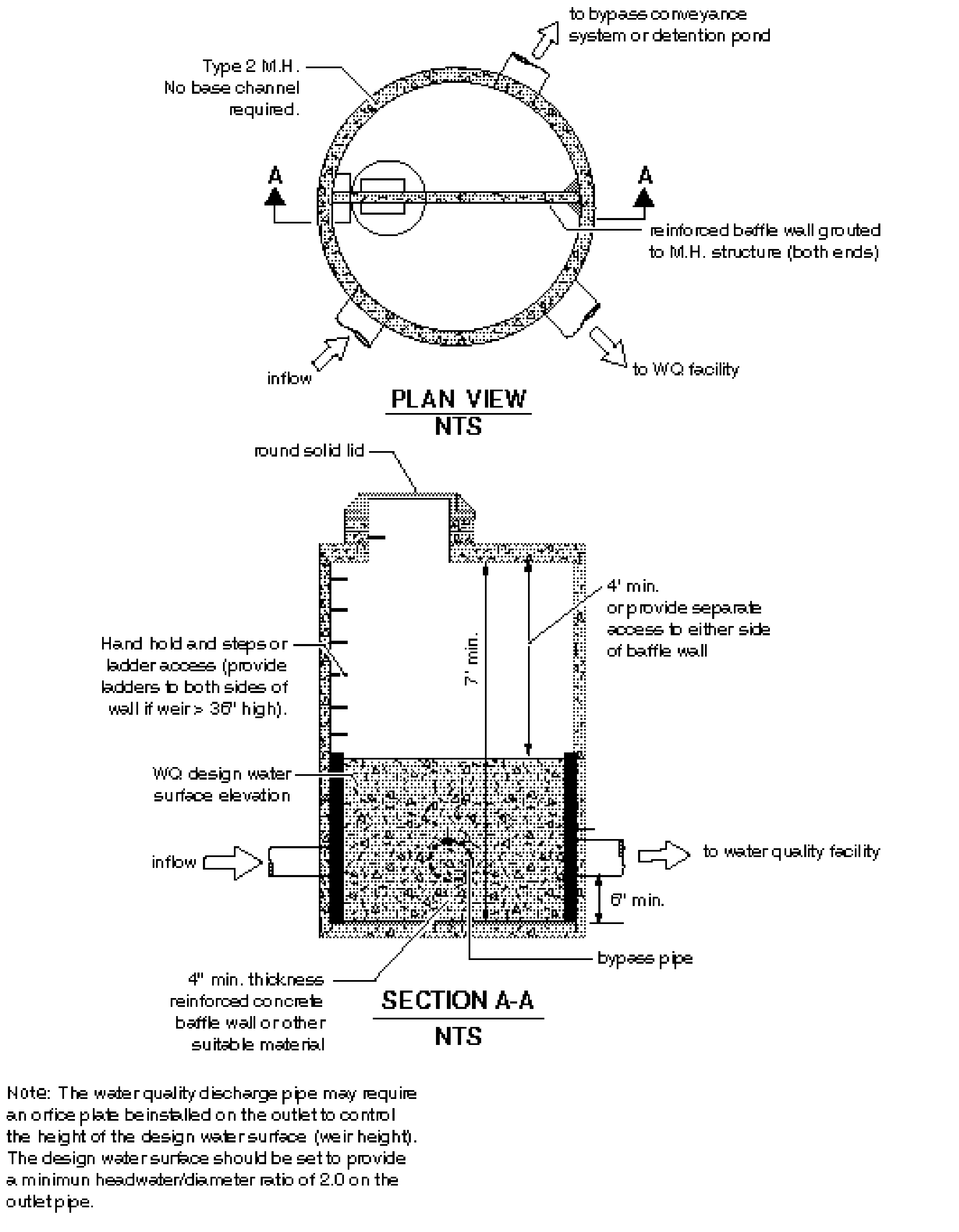
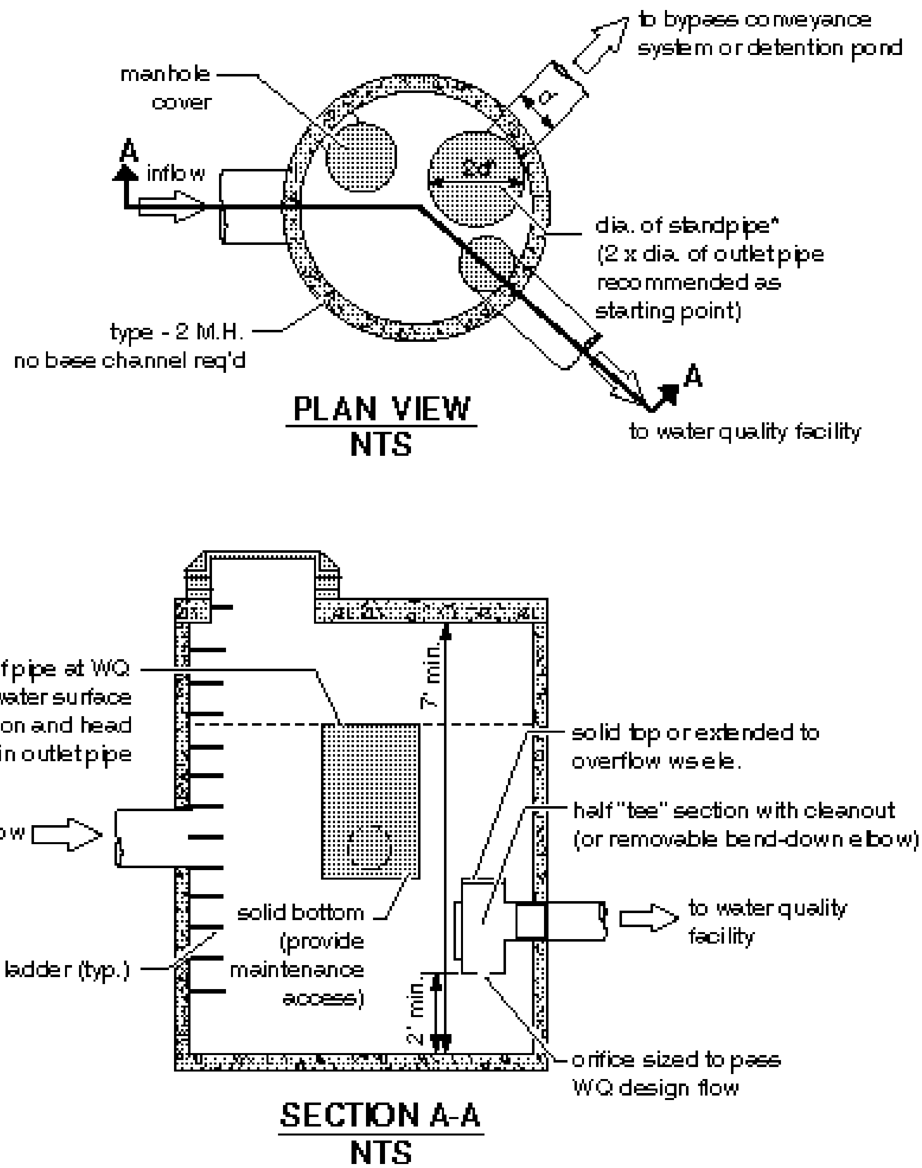


Figure 4.1 Flow Splitter, Option A



* **NOTE:** Diameter (d) of standpipe should be large enough to minimize head above W.Q. design W.S. and to keep W.Q. design flows from increasing more than 10% during 100-year flows.

Figure 4.2 Flow Splitter, Option B

4.5.2 Flow Spreading Options

Flow spreaders function to uniformly spread flows across the inflow portion of water quality facilities (e.g., sand filter, biofiltration swale, or filter strip). There are five flow spreader options presented in this section:

Option A – Anchored plate
Option B – Concrete sump box
Option C – Notched curb spreader
Option D – Through-curb ports
Option E – Interrupted curb

Options A through C can be used for spreading flows that are concentrated. Any one of these options can be used when spreading is required by the facility design criteria. Options A through C can also be used for unconcentrated flows, and in some cases must be used, such as to correct for moderate grade changes along a filter strip.

Options D and E are only for flows that are already unconcentrated and enter a filter strip or continuous inflow biofiltration swale. Other flow spreader options are possible with approval from the reviewing authority.

General Design Criteria

- Where flow enters the flow spreader through a pipe, it is recommended that the pipe be submerged to the extent practical to dissipate energy as much as possible.
- For higher inflows (greater than 5 cfs for the 100-yr storm), a Type 1 catch basin should be positioned in the spreader and the inflow pipe should enter the catch basin with flows exiting through the top grate. The top of the grate should be lower than the level spreader plate, or if a notched spreader is used, lower than the bottom of the v-notches.
- Table 4.5 provides general guidance for rock protection at outfalls.

Table 4.5 Rock Protection at Outfalls					
Discharge Velocity at Design Flow in feet per second (fps)	**Required Protection Minimum Dimensions**				
	Type	**Thickness**	**Width**	**Length**	**Height**
0 – 5	Rock lining[1]	1 foot	Diameter + 6 feet	8 feet *or* 4 x diameter, whichever is greater	Crown + 1 foot
5^+ - 10	Riprap[2]	2 feet	Diameter + 6 feet *or* 3 x diameter, whichever is greater	12 feet *or* 4 x diameter, whichever is greater	Crown + 1 foot
10^+ - 20	Gabion outfall	As required	As required	As required	Crown + 1 foot
20^+	Engineered energy dissipater required				

Footnotes:

[1] **Rock lining** shall be quarry spalls with gradation as follows:

Passing 8-inch square sieve:	100%
Passing 3-inch square sieve:	40 to 60% maximum
Passing ¾-inch square sieve:	0 to 10% maximum

[2] **Riprap** shall be reasonably well graded with gradation as follows:

Maximum stone size:	24 inches (nominal diameter)
Median stone size:	16 inches
Minimum stone size:	4 inches

Note: Riprap sizing governed by side slopes on outlet channel is assumed to be approximately 3:1.

Option A -- Anchored Plate (Figure 4.3)

- An anchored plate flow spreader must be preceded by a sump having a minimum depth of 8 inches and minimum width of 24 inches. If not otherwise stabilized, the sump area must be lined to reduce erosion and to provide energy dissipation.
- The top surface of the flow spreader plate must be level, projecting a minimum of 2 inches above the ground surface of the water quality facility, or V-notched with notches 6 to 10 inches on center and 1 to 6 inches deep (use shallower notches with closer spacing). Alternative designs may also be used.
- A flow spreader plate must extend horizontally beyond the bottom width of the facility to prevent water from eroding the side slope. The horizontal extent should be such that the bank is protected for all flows up to the 100-year flow or the maximum flow that will enter the Water Quality (WQ) facility.
- Flow spreader plates must be securely fixed in place.
- Flow spreader plates may be made of either wood, metal, fiberglass reinforced plastic, or other durable material. If wood, pressure treated 4 by 10-inch lumber or landscape timbers are acceptable.
- Anchor posts must be 4-inch square concrete, tubular stainless steel, or other material resistant to decay.

Option B -- Concrete Sump Box (Figure 4.4)

- The wall of the downstream side of a rectangular concrete sump box must extend a minimum of 2 inches above the treatment bed. This serves as a weir to spread the flows uniformly across the bed.
- The downstream wall of a sump box must have "wing walls" at both ends. Side walls and returns must be slightly higher than the weir so that erosion of the side slope is minimized.
- Concrete for a sump box can be either cast-in-place or precast, but the bottom of the sump must be reinforced with wire mesh for cast-in-place sumps.
- Sump boxes must be placed over bases that consists of 4 inches of crushed rock, 5/8-inch minus to help assure the sump remains level.

Option C -- Notched Curb Spreader (Figure 4.5)

Notched curb spreader sections must be made of extruded concrete laid side-by-side and level. Typically five "teeth" per four-foot section provide good spacing. The space between adjacent "teeth" forms a v-notch.

Option D -- Through-Curb Ports (Figure 4.6)

Unconcentrated flows from paved areas entering filter strips or continuous inflow biofiltration swales can use curb ports or interrupted curbs (Option E) to allow flows to enter the strip or swale. Curb ports use fabricated openings that allow concrete curbing to be poured or extruded while still providing an opening through the curb to admit water to the WQ facility.

Openings in the curb must be at regular intervals but at least every 6 feet (minimum). The width of each curb port opening must be a minimum of 11 inches. Approximately 15 percent or more of the curb section length should be in open ports, and no port should discharge more than about 10 percent of the flow.

Option E -- Interrupted Curb (No Figure)

Interrupted curbs are sections of curb placed to have gaps spaced at regular intervals along the total width (or length, depending on facility) of the treatment area. At a minimum, gaps must be every 6 feet to allow distribution of flows into the treatment facility before they become too concentrated. The opening must be a minimum of 11 inches. As a general rule, no opening should discharge more than 10 percent of the overall flow entering the facility.

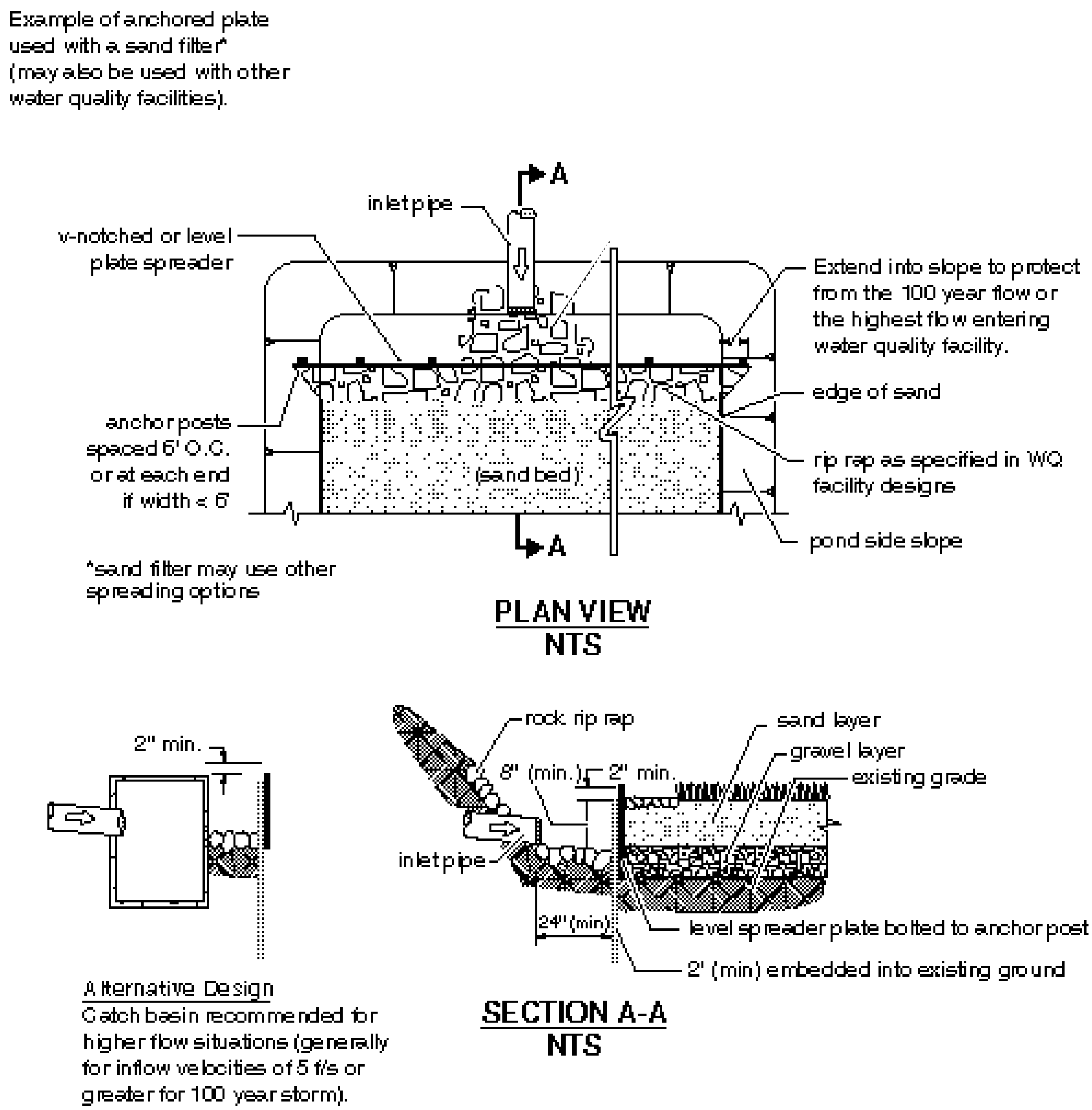


Figure 4.3 Flow Spreader Option A: Anchored Plate

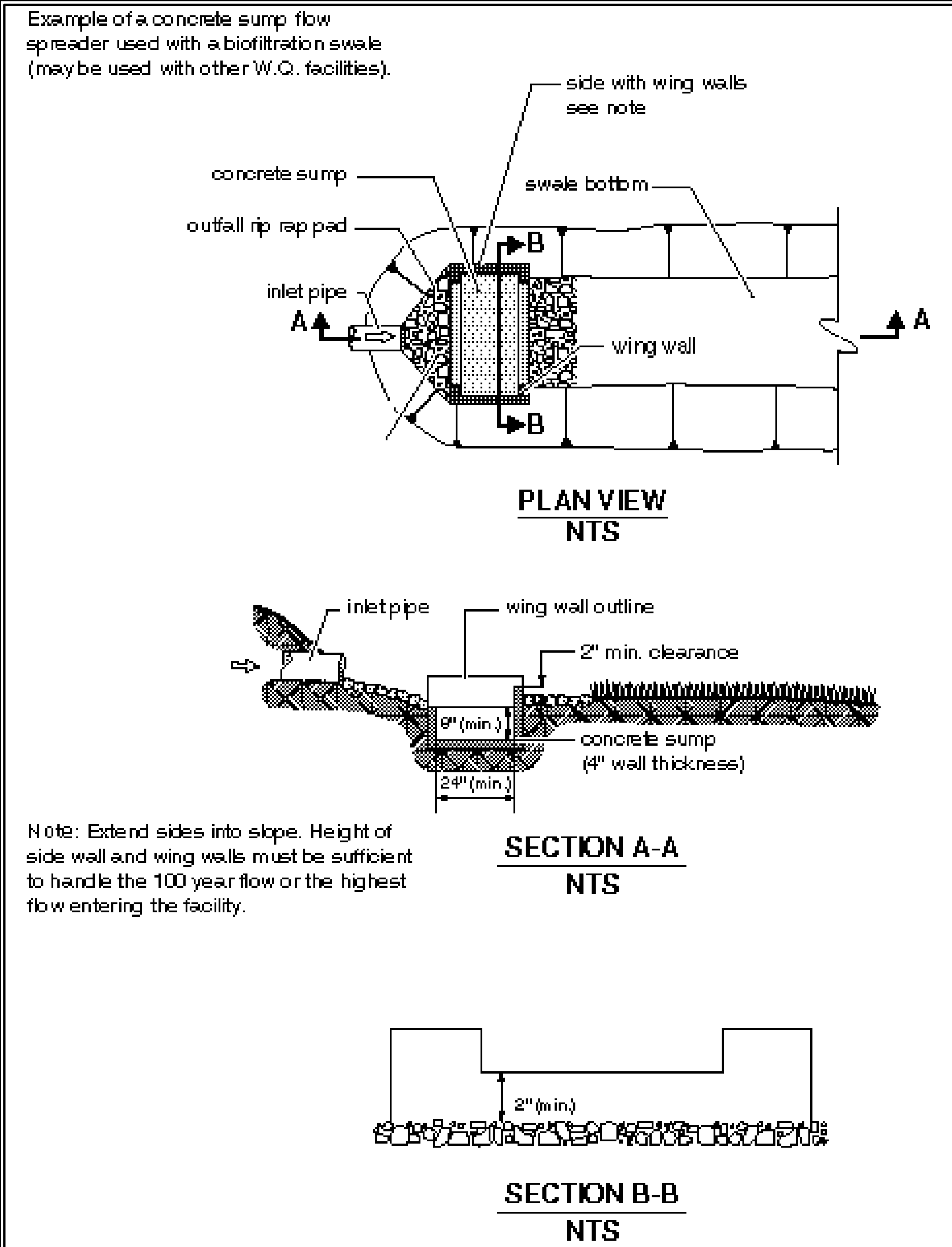


Figure 4.4 Flow Spreader Option B: Concrete Sump Box

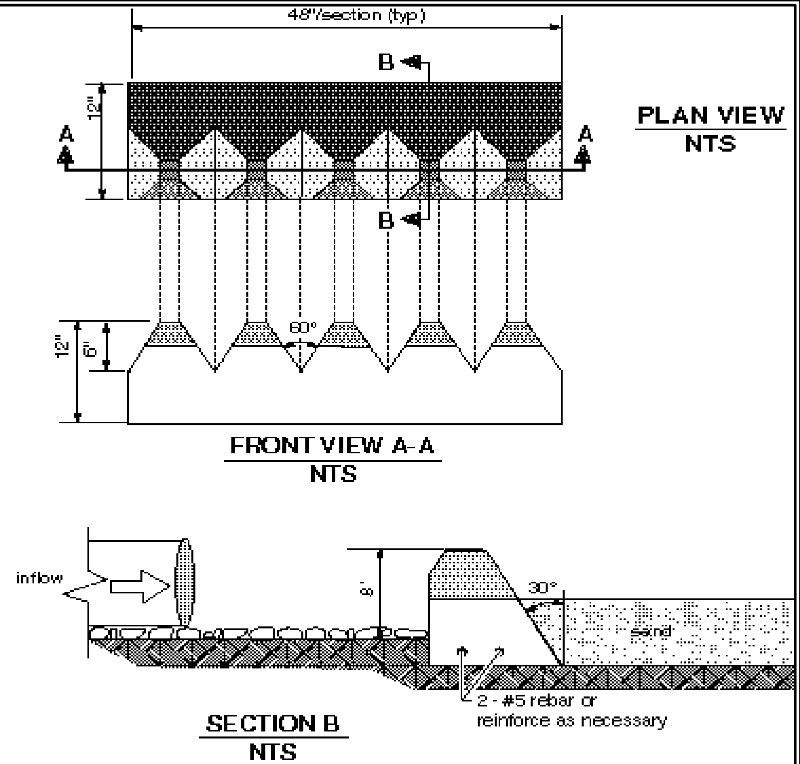


Figure 4.5 Flow Spreader Option C: Notched Curb Spreader

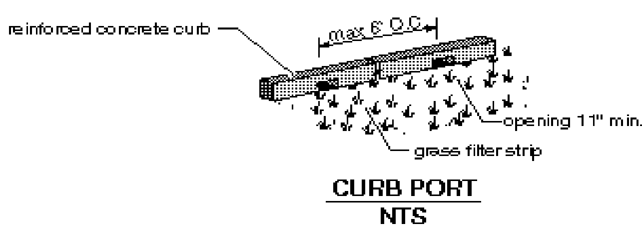


Figure 4.6 Flow Spreader Option D: Through-Curb Port

4.5.3 Outfall Systems

Properly designed outfalls are critical to reducing the chance of adverse impacts as the result of concentrated discharges from pipe systems and culverts, both onsite and downstream. Outfall systems include rock splash pads, flow dispersal trenches, gabion or other energy dissipaters, and tightline systems. A tightline system is typically a continuous length of pipe used to convey flows down a steep or sensitive slope with appropriate energy dissipation at the discharge end.

General Design Criteria

Provided below are general design criteria for both Outfall Features and Tightline Systems.

Outfall Features

At a minimum, all outfalls must be provided with a rock splash pad (see Figure 4.7) except as specified below and in Table 4.5:

- The flow dispersal trenches shown in Figures 4.8 and 4.9 should only be used when both criteria below are met:
  1. An outfall is necessary to disperse concentrated flows across uplands where no conveyance system exists and the natural (existing) discharge is unconcentrated; and
  2. The 100-year peak discharge rate is less than or equal to 0.5 cfs.
- For freshwater outfalls with a design velocity greater than 10 fps, a gabion dissipater or engineered energy dissipater may be required. There are many possible designs.
  Note The gabion outfall detail shown in Figure 4.10 is illustrative only. A design engineered to specific site conditions must be developed.
- Tightline systems may be needed to prevent aggravation or creation of a downstream erosion problem.
- In marine waters, rock splash pads and gabion structures are not recommended due to corrosion and destruction of the structure, particularly in high energy environments. Diffuser Tee structures, such as that depicted in Figure 4.11, are also not generally recommended in or above the intertidal zone. They may be acceptable in low bank or rock shoreline locations. Stilling basins or bubble-up structures are acceptable. Generally, tightlines trenched to extreme low water or dissipation of the discharge energy above the ordinary high water line are preferred. Outfalls below extreme low water may still need an energy dissipation device (e.g., a tee structure) to prevent nearby erosion.

- Engineered energy dissipaters, including stilling basins, drop pools, hydraulic jump basins, baffled aprons, and bucket aprons, are required for outfalls with design velocity greater than 20 fps. These should be designed using published or commonly known techniques found in such references as *Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipaters for Culverts and Channels*, published by the Federal Highway Administration of the United States Department of Transportation; *Open Channel Flow*, by V.T. Chow; *Hydraulic Design of Stilling Basins and Energy Dissipaters*, EM 25, Bureau of Reclamation (1978); and other publications, such as those prepared by the Soil Conservation Service (now Natural Resource Conservation Service).
- Alternate mechanisms may be used, such as bubble-up structures, that eventually drain and structures fitted with reinforced concrete posts. If any alternate mechanisms are to be considered, they should be designed using sound hydraulic principles and consideration of ease of construction and maintenance.

Tightline Systems

- Mechanisms that reduce velocity prior to discharge from an outfall are encouraged. Some of these are drop manholes and rapid expansion into pipes of much larger size. Other discharge end features may be used to dissipate the discharge energy. An example of an end feature is the use of a Diffuser Tee with holes in the front half, as shown in Figure 4.11.

  Note: stormwater outfalls submerged in a marine environment can be subject to plugging due to biological growth and shifting debris and sediments. Therefore, unless intensive maintenance is regularly performed, they may not meet their designed function.
- New pipe outfalls can provide an opportunity for low-cost fish habitat improvements. For example, an alcove of low-velocity water can be created by constructing the pipe outfall and associated energy dissipater back from the stream edge and digging a channel, over widened to the upstream side, from the outfall to the stream (as shown in Figure 4.12). Overwintering juvenile and migrating adult salmonids may use the alcove as shelter during high flows. Potential habitat improvements should be discussed with the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife biologist prior to inclusion in design.
- Bank stabilization, bioengineering and habitat features may be required for disturbed areas.
- Outfall structures should be located where they minimize impacts to fish, shellfish, and their habitats.
- One caution to note is that the in-stream sample gabion mattress energy dissipater may not be acceptable within the ordinary high water mark of fish-bearing waters or where gabions will be subject to

abrasion from upstream channel sediments. A four-sided gabion basket located outside the ordinary high water mark should be considered for these applications.

Note: A Hydraulic Project Approval (Chapter 77.55 RCW) may be required for any work within the ordinary high water mark. Other provisions of that RCW or the Hydraulics Code - Chapter 220-110 WAC may also apply.

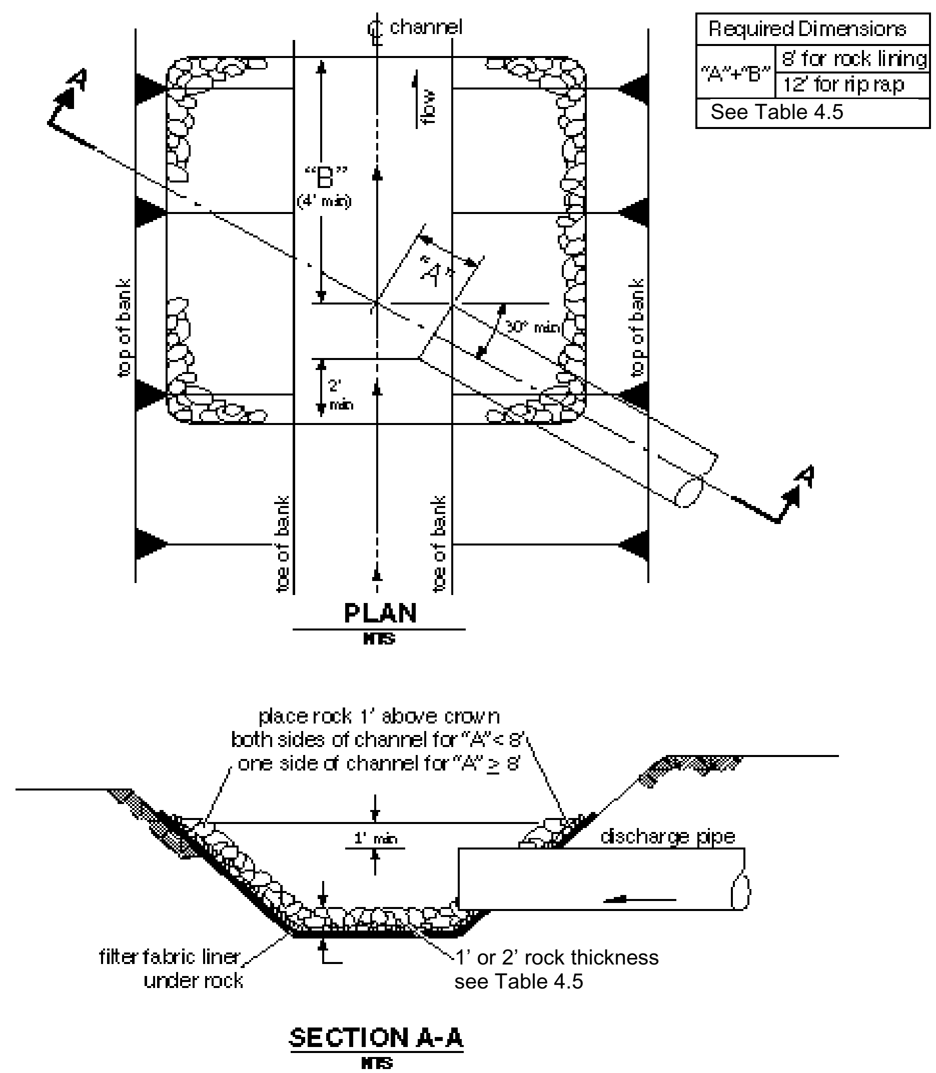


Figure 4.7 – Pipe/Culvert Outfall Discharge Protection

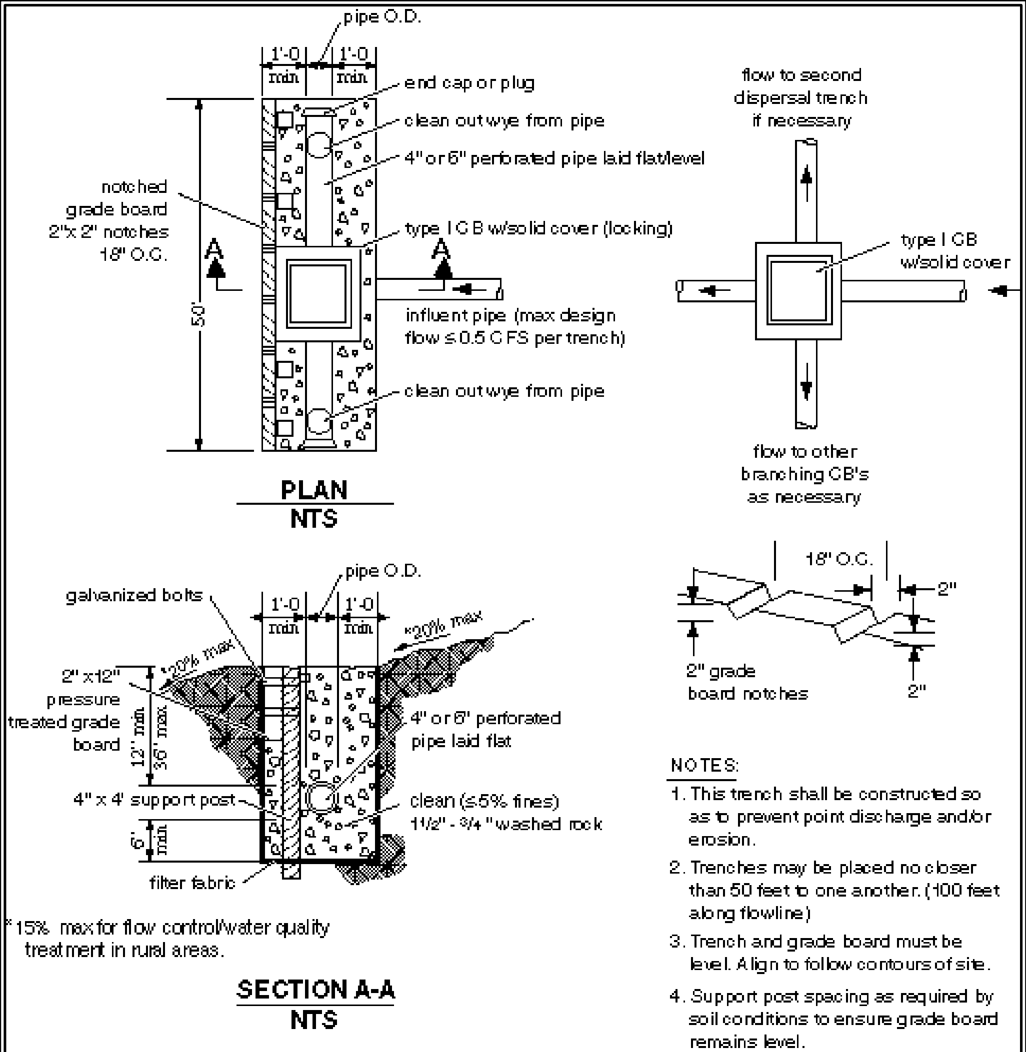
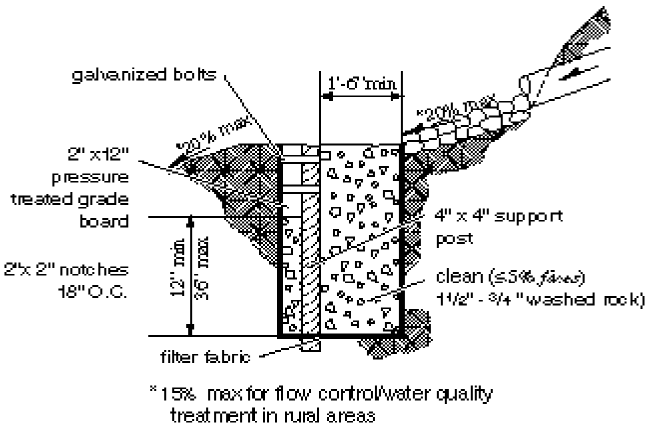


Figure 4.8 Flow Dispersal Trench



NOTES:

1. This trench shall be constructed so as to prevent point discharge and/or erosion.
2. Trenches may be placed no closer than 50 feet to one another. (100 feet along flowline)
3. Trench and grade board must be level. Align to follow contours of site.
4. Support post spacing as required by soil conditions to ensure grade board remains level.

SECTION A-A
NTS

Figure 4.9 Alternative Flow Dispersal Trench

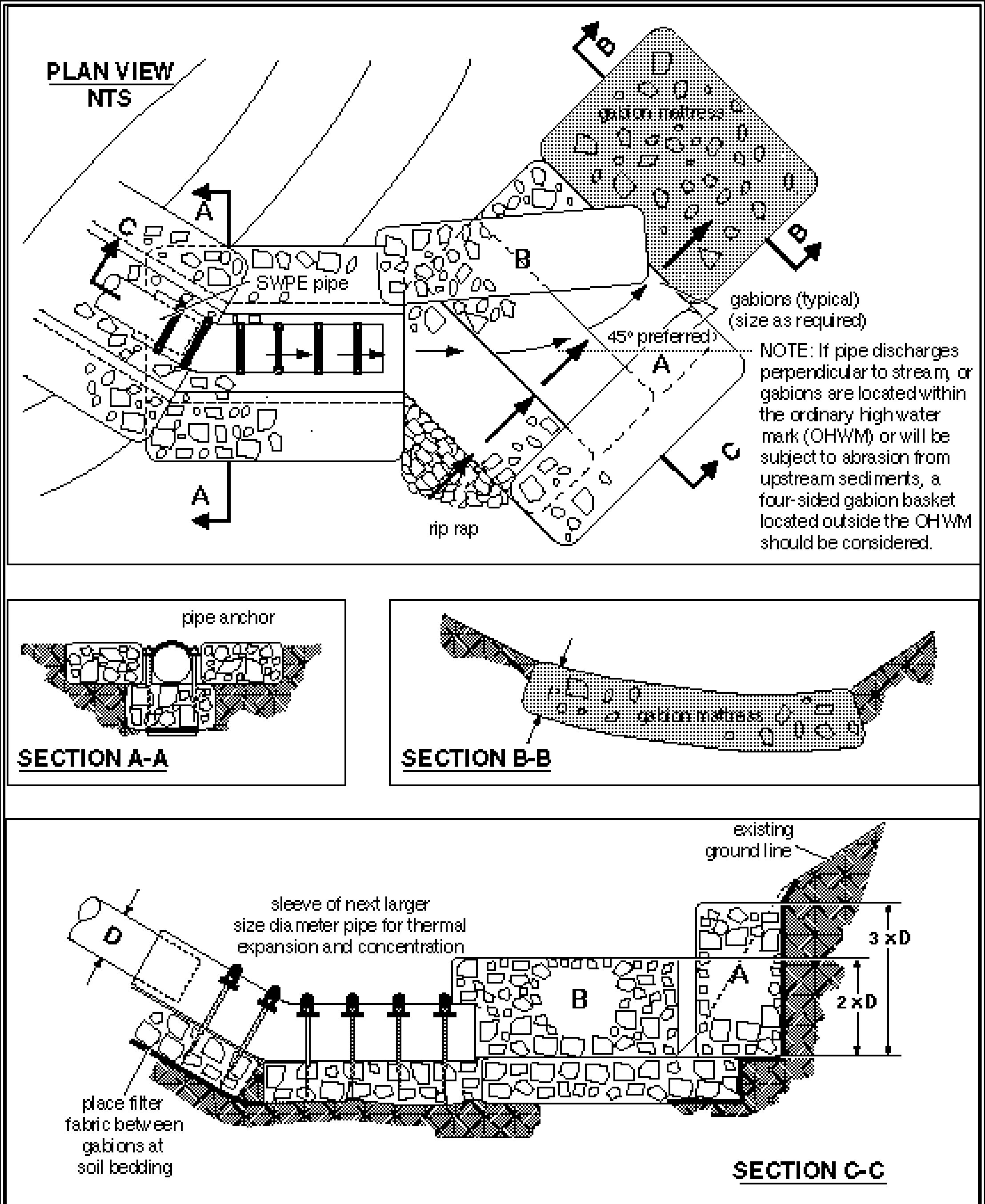


Figure 4.10 Gabion Outfall Detail

Tightline Systems

- Outfall tightlines may be installed in trenches with standard bedding on slopes up to 20%. In order to minimize disturbance to slopes greater than 20%, it is recommended that tightlines be placed at grade with proper pipe anchorage and support.
- Except as indicated above, tightlines or conveyances that traverse the marine intertidal zone and connect to outfalls must be buried to a depth sufficient to avoid exposure of the line during storm events or future changes in beach elevation. If non-native material is used to bed the tightline, such material shall be covered with at least 3 feet of native bed material or equivalent.
- High density polyethylene pipe (HDPP) tightlines must be designed to address the material limitations, particularly thermal expansion and contraction and pressure design, as specified by the manufacturer. The coefficient of thermal expansion and contraction for solid wall polyethylene pipe (SWPE) is on the order of 0.001 inch per foot per Fahrenheit degree. Sliding sleeve connections must be used to address this thermal expansion and contraction. These sleeve connections consist of a section of the appropriate length of the next larger size diameter of pipe into which the outfall pipe is fitted. These sleeve connections must be located as close to the discharge end of the outfall system as is practical.
- Due to the ability of HDPP tightlines to transmit flows of very high energy, special consideration for energy dissipation must be made. Details of a sample gabion mattress energy dissipater have been provided as Figure 4.10. Flows of very high energy will require a specifically engineered energy dissipater structure.

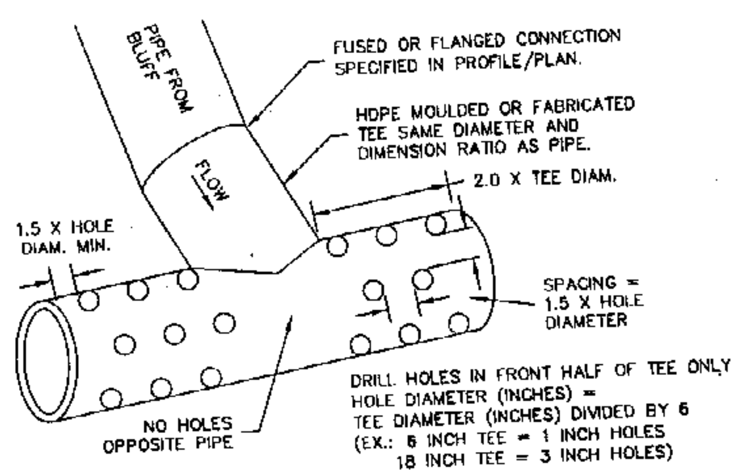


Figure 4.11 Diffuser TEE (an example of energy dissipating end feature)

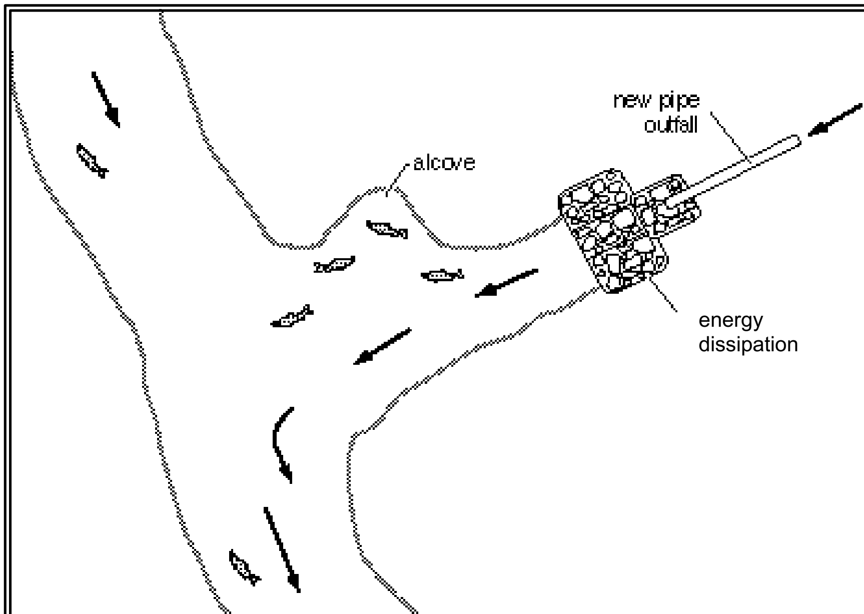


Figure 4.12 Fish Habitat Improvement at New Outfalls

4.6 Maintenance Standards for Drainage Facilities

The facility-specific maintenance standards contained in this section are intended to be conditions for determining if maintenance actions are required as identified through inspection. They are not intended to be measures of the facility's required condition at all times between inspections. In other words, exceedence of these conditions at any time between inspections and/or maintenance does not automatically constitute a violation of these standards. However, based upon inspection observations, the inspection and maintenance schedules shall be adjusted to minimize the length of time that a facility is in a condition that requires a maintenance action.

No. 1 – Detention Ponds

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
General	Trash & Debris	Any trash and debris which exceed 5 cubic feet per 1,000 square feet (this is about equal to the amount of trash it would take to fill up one standard size garbage can). In general, there should be no visual evidence of dumping. If less than threshold all trash and debris will be removed as part of next scheduled maintenance.	Trash and debris cleared from site.
	Poisonous Vegetation and noxious weeds	Any poisonous or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to maintenance personnel or the public. Any evidence of noxious weeds as defined by State or local regulations. (Apply requirements of adopted IPM policies for the use of herbicides).	No danger of poisonous vegetation where maintenance personnel or the public might normally be. (Coordinate with local health department) Complete eradication of noxious weeds may not be possible. Compliance with State or local eradication policies required
	Contaminants and Pollution	Any evidence of oil, gasoline, contaminants or other pollutants (Coordinate removal/cleanup with local water quality response agency).	No contaminants or pollutants present.
	Rodent Holes	Any evidence of rodent holes if facility is acting as a dam or berm, or any evidence of water piping through dam or berm via rodent holes.	Rodents destroyed and dam or berm repaired. (Coordinate with local health department; coordinate with Ecology Dam Safety Office if pond exceeds 10 acre-feet.)

No. 1 – Detention Ponds

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
	Beaver Dams	Dam results in change or function of the facility.	Facility is returned to design function. (Coordinate trapping of beavers and removal of dams with appropriate permitting agencies)
	Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted IPM policies
	Tree Growth and Hazard Trees	Tree growth does not allow maintenance access or interferes with maintenance activity (i.e., slope mowing, silt removal, vactoring, or equipment movements). If trees are not interfering with access or maintenance, do not remove If dead, diseased, or dying trees are identified (Use a certified Arborist to determine health of tree or removal requirements)	Trees do not hinder maintenance activities. Harvested trees should be recycled into mulch or other beneficial uses (e.g., alders for firewood). Remove hazard Trees
Side Slopes of Pond	Erosion	Eroded damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion. Any erosion observed on a compacted berm embankment.	Slopes should be stabilized using appropriate erosion control measure(s); e.g., rock reinforcement, planting of grass, compaction. If erosion is occurring on compacted berms a licensed civil engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.
Storage Area	Sediment	Accumulated sediment that exceeds 10% of the designed pond depth unless otherwise specified or affects inletting or outletting condition of the facility.	Sediment cleaned out to designed pond shape and depth; pond reseeded if necessary to control erosion.
	Liner (If Applicable)	Liner is visible and has more than three 1/4-inch holes in it.	Liner repaired or replaced. Liner is fully covered.

No. 1 – Detention Ponds

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Pond Berms (Dikes)	Settlements	Any part of berm which has settled 4 inches lower than the design elevation. If settlement is apparent, measure berm to determine amount of settlement. Settling can be an indication of more severe problems with the berm or outlet works. A licensed civil engineer should be consulted to determine the source of the settlement.	Dike is built back to the design elevation.
	Piping	Discernable water flow through pond berm. Ongoing erosion with potential for erosion to continue. (Recommend a Goethechnical engineer be called in to inspect and evaluate condition and recommend repair of condition.	Piping eliminated. Erosion potential resolved.
Emergency Overflow/ Spillway and Berms over 4 feet in height.	Tree Growth	Tree growth on emergency spillways creates blockage problems and may cause failure of the berm due to uncontrolled overtopping. Tree growth on berms over 4 feet in height may lead to piping through the berm which could lead to failure of the berm.	Trees should be removed. If root system is small (base less than 4 inches) the root system may be left in place. Otherwise the roots should be removed and the berm restored. A licensed civil engineer should be consulted for proper berm/spillway restoration.
	Piping	Discernable water flow through pond berm. Ongoing erosion with potential for erosion to continue. (Recommend a Goethechnical engineer be called in to inspect and evaluate condition and recommend repair of condition.	Piping eliminated. Erosion potential resolved.
Emergency Overflow/ Spillway	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area five square feet or larger, or any exposure of native soil at the top of out flow path of spillway. (Rip-rap on inside slopes need not be replaced.)	Rocks and pad depth are restored to design standards.
	Erosion	See "Side Slopes of Pond"	

No. 2 – Infiltration

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
General	Trash & Debris	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
	Poisonous/Noxious Vegetation	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
	Contaminants and Pollution	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
	Rodent Holes	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1)
Storage Area	Sediment	Water ponding in infiltration pond after rainfall ceases and appropriate time allowed for infiltration. (A percolation test pit or test of facility indicates facility is only working at 90% of its designed capabilities. If two inches or more sediment is present, remove).	Sediment is removed and/or facility is cleaned so that infiltration system works according to design.
Filter Bags (if applicable)	Filled with Sediment and Debris	Sediment and debris fill bag more than 1/2 full.	Filter bag is replaced or system is redesigned.
Rock Filters	Sediment and Debris	By visual inspection, little or no water flows through filter during heavy rain storms.	Gravel in rock filter is replaced.
Side Slopes of Pond	Erosion	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
Emergency Overflow Spillway and Berms over 4 feet in height.	Tree Growth	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
	Piping	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
Emergency Overflow Spillway	Rock Missing	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
	Erosion	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
Pre-settling Ponds and Vaults	Facility or sump filled with Sediment and/or debris	6" or designed sediment trap depth of sediment.	Sediment is removed.

No. 3 – Closed Detention Systems (Tanks/Vaults)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Storage Area	Plugged Air Vents	One-half of the cross section of a vent is blocked at any point or the vent is damaged.	Vents open and functioning.
	Debris and Sediment	Accumulated sediment depth exceeds 10% of the diameter of the storage area for 1/2 length of storage vault or any point depth exceeds 15% of diameter. (Example: 72-inch storage tank would require cleaning when sediment reaches depth of 7 inches for more than 1/2 length of tank.)	All sediment and debris removed from storage area.
	Joints Between Tank/Pipe Section	Any openings or voids allowing material to be transported into facility. (Will require engineering analysis to determine structural stability).	All joint between tank/pipe sections are sealed.
	Tank Pipe Bent Out of Shape	Any part of tank/pipe is bent out of shape more than 10% of its design shape. (Review required by engineer to determine structural stability).	Tank/pipe repaired or replaced to design.
	Vault Structure Includes Cracks in Wall, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than 1/2-inch and any evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determines that the vault is not structurally sound. Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or any evidence of soil particles entering the vault through the walls.	Vault replaced or repaired to design specifications and is structurally sound. No cracks more than 1/4-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
Manhole	Cover Not in Place	Cover is missing or only partially in place. Any open manhole requires maintenance.	Manhole is closed.
	Locking Mechanism Not Working	Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools. Bolts into frame have less than 1/2 inch of thread (may not apply to self-locking lids).	Mechanism opens with proper tools.
	Cover Difficult to Remove	One maintenance person cannot remove lid after applying normal lifting pressure. Intent is to keep cover from sealing off access to maintenance.	Cover can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person.
	Ladder Rungs Unsafe	Ladder is unsafe due to missing rungs, misalignment, not securely attached to structure wall, rust, or cracks.	Ladder meets design standards. Allows maintenance person safe access.
Catch Basins	See "Catch Basins" (No. 5)	See "Catch Basins" (No. 5).	See "Catch Basins" (No. 5).

No. 4 – Control Structure/Flow Restrictor

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash and Debris (Includes Sediment)	Material exceeds 25% of sump depth or 1 foot below orifice plate.	Control structure orifice is not blocked. All trash and debris removed.
	Structural Damage	Structure is not securely attached to manhole wall.	Structure securely attached to wall and outlet pipe.
		Structure is not in upright position (allow up to 10% from plumb).	Structure in correct position.
		Connections to outlet pipe are not watertight and show signs of rust.	Connections to outlet pipe are water tight; structure repaired or replaced and works as designed.
		Any holes--other than designed holes--in the structure.	Structure has no holes other than designed holes.
Cleanout Gate	Damaged or Missing	Cleanout gate is not watertight or is missing.	Gate is watertight and works as designed.
		Gate cannot be moved up and down by one maintenance person.	Gate moves up and down easily and is watertight.
		Chain/rod leading to gate is missing or damaged.	Chain is in place and works as designed.
		Gate is rusted over 50% of its surface area.	Gate is repaired or replaced to meet design standards.
Orifice Plate	Damaged or Missing	Control device is not working properly due to missing, out of place, or bent orifice plate.	Plate is in place and works as designed.
	Obstructions	Any trash, debris, sediment, or vegetation blocking the plate.	Plate is free of all obstructions and works as designed.
Overflow Pipe	Obstructions	Any trash or debris blocking (or having the potential of blocking) the overflow pipe.	Pipe is free of all obstructions and works as designed.
Manhole	See "Closed Detention Systems" (No. 3).	See "Closed Detention Systems" (No. 3).	See "Closed Detention Systems" (No. 3).
Catch Basin	See "Catch Basins" (No. 5).	See "Catch Basins" (No. 5).	See "Catch Basins" (No. 5).

No. 5 – Catch Basins

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is performed
General	Trash & Debris	Trash or debris which is located immediately in front of the catch basin opening or is blocking inletting capacity of the basin by more than 10%.	No Trash or debris located immediately in front of catch basin or on grate opening.
		Trash or debris (in the basin) that exceeds 60 percent of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of basin to invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin, but in no case less than a minimum of six inches clearance from the debris surface to the invert of the lowest pipe.	No trash or debris in the catch basin.
		Trash or debris in any inlet or outlet pipe blocking more than 1/3 of its height.	Inlet and outlet pipes free of trash or debris.
		Dead animals or vegetation that could generate odors that could cause complaints or dangerous gases (e.g., methane).	No dead animals or vegetation present within the catch basin.
	Sediment	Sediment (in the basin) that exceeds 60 percent of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of basin to invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin, but in no case less than a minimum of 6 inches clearance from the sediment surface to the invert of the lowest pipe.	No sediment in the catch basin
	Structure Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Top slab has holes larger than 2 square inches or cracks wider than 1/4 inch (Intent is to make sure no material is running into basin).	Top slab is free of holes and cracks.
		Frame not sitting flush on top slab, i.e., separation of more than 3/4 inch of the frame from the top slab. Frame not securely attached	Frame is sitting flush on the riser rings or top slab and firmly attached.
	Fractures or Cracks in Basin Walls/ Bottom	Maintenance person judges that structure is unsound.	Basin replaced or repaired to design standards.
		Grout fillet has separated or cracked wider than 1/2 inch and longer than 1 foot at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or any evidence of soil particles entering catch basin through cracks.	Pipe is regrouted and secure at basin wall.
	Settlement/ Misalignment	If failure of basin has created a safety, function, or design problem.	Basin replaced or repaired to design standards.
	Vegetation	Vegetation growing across and blocking more than 10% of the basin opening.	No vegetation blocking opening to basin.
		Vegetation growing in inlet/outlet pipe joints that is more than six inches tall and less than six inches apart.	No vegetation or root growth present.

No. 5 – Catch Basins

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is performed
	Contamination and Pollution	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	No pollution present.
Catch Basin Cover	Cover Not in Place	Cover is missing or only partially in place. Any open catch basin requires maintenance.	Catch basin cover is closed
	Locking Mechanism Not Working	Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools. Bolts into frame have less than 1/2 inch of thread.	Mechanism opens with proper tools.
	Cover Difficult to Remove	One maintenance person cannot remove lid after applying normal lifting pressure. (Intent is keep cover from sealing off access to maintenance.)	Cover can be removed by one maintenance person.
Ladder	Ladder Rungs Unsafe	Ladder is unsafe due to missing rungs, not securely attached to basin wall, misalignment, rust, cracks, or sharp edges.	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access.
Metal Grates (If Applicable)	Grate opening Unsafe	Grate with opening wider than 7/8 inch.	Grate opening meets design standards.
	Trash and Debris	Trash and debris that is blocking more than 20% of grate surface inletting capacity.	Grate free of trash and debris.
	Damaged or Missing.	Grate missing or broken member(s) of the grate.	Grate is in place and meets design standards.

No. 6 – Debris Barriers (e.g., Trash Racks)

Maintenance Components	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash and Debris	Trash or debris that is plugging more than 20% of the openings in the barrier.	Barrier cleared to design flow capacity.
Metal	Damaged/ Missing Bars.	Bars are bent out of shape more than 3 inches.	Bars in place with no bends more than 3/4 inch.
		Bars are missing or entire barrier missing.	Bars in place according to design.
		Bars are loose and rust is causing 50% deterioration to any part of barrier.	Barrier replaced or repaired to design standards.
	Inlet/Outlet Pipe	Debris barrier missing or not attached to pipe	Barrier firmly attached to pipe

No. 7 – Energy Dissipaters

Maintenance Components	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
External:			
Rock Pad	Missing or Moved Rock	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area five square feet or larger, or any exposure of native soil.	Rock pad replaced to design standards.
	Erosion	Soil erosion in or adjacent to rock pad.	Rock pad replaced to design standards.
Dispersion Trench	Pipe Plugged with Sediment	Accumulated sediment that exceeds 20% of the design depth.	Pipe cleaned/flushed so that it matches design.
	Not Discharging Water Properly	Visual evidence of water discharging at concentrated points along trench (normal condition is a "sheet flow" of water along trench). Intent is to prevent erosion damage.	Trench redesigned or rebuilt to standards.
	Perforations Plugged.	Over 1/2 of perforations in pipe are plugged with debris and sediment.	Perforated pipe cleaned or replaced.
	Water Flows Out Top of "Distributor" Catch Basin.	Maintenance person observes or receives credible report of water flowing out during any storm less than the design storm or its causing or appears likely to cause damage.	Facility rebuilt or redesigned to standards.
	Receiving Area Over-Saturated	Water in receiving area is causing or has potential of causing landslide problems.	No danger of landslides.
Internal:			
Manhole/Chamber	Worn or Damaged Post, Baffles, Side of Chamber	Structure dissipating flow deteriorates to 1/2 of original size or any concentrated worn spot exceeding one square foot which would make structure unsound.	Structure replaced to design standards.
	Other Defects	See "Catch Basins" (No. 5).	See "Catch Basins" (No. 5).

No. 8 – Typical Biofiltration Swale

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General	Sediment Accumulation on Grass	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches.	Remove sediment deposits on grass treatment area of the bio-swale. When finished, swale should be level from side to side and drain freely toward outlet. There should be no areas of standing water once inflow has ceased.
	Standing Water	When water stands in the swale between storms and does not drain freely.	Any of the following may apply: remove sediment or trash blockages, improve grade from head to foot of swale, remove clogged check dams, add underdrains or convert to a wet biofiltration swale.
	Flow spreader	Flow spreader uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed through entire swale width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire swale width.
	Constant Baseflow	When small quantities of water continually flow through the swale, even when it has been dry for weeks, and an eroded, muddy channel has formed in the swale bottom.	Add a low-flow pea-gravel drain the length of the swale or by-pass the baseflow around the swale.
	Poor Vegetation Coverage	When grass is sparse or bare or eroded patches occur in more than 10% of the swale bottom.	Determine why grass growth is poor and correct that condition. Re-plant with plugs of grass from the upper slope: plant in the swale bottom at 8-inch intervals. Or re-seed into loosened, fertile soil.
	Vegetation	When the grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10-inches); when nuisance weeds and other vegetation starts to take over.	Mow vegetation or remove nuisance vegetation so that flow not impeded. Grass should be mowed to a height of 3 to 4 inches. Remove grass clippings.
	Excessive Shading	Grass growth is poor because sunlight does not reach swale.	If possible, trim back over-hanging limbs and remove brushy vegetation on adjacent slopes.
	Inlet/Outlet	Inlet/outlet areas clogged with sediment and/or debris.	Remove material so that there is no clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet area.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in the bio-swale.	Remove trash and debris from bioswale.
	Erosion/Scouring	Eroded or scoured swale bottom due to flow channelization, or higher flows.	For ruts or bare areas less than 12 inches wide, repair the damaged area by filling with crushed gravel. If bare areas are large, generally greater than 12 inches wide, the swale should be re-graded and re-seeded. For smaller bare areas, overseed when bare spots are evident, or take plugs of grass from the upper slope and plant in the swale bottom at 8-inch intervals.

No. 9 – Wet Biofiltration Swale

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General	Sediment Accumulation	Sediment depth exceeds 2-inches in 10% of the swale treatment area.	Remove sediment deposits in treatment area.
	Water Depth	Water not retained to a depth of about 4 inches during the wet season.	Build up or repair outlet berm so that water is retained in the wet swale.
	Wetland Vegetation	Vegetation becomes sparse and does not provide adequate filtration, OR vegetation is crowded out by very dense clumps of cattail, which do not allow water to flow through the clumps.	Determine cause of lack of vigor of vegetation and correct. Replant as needed. For excessive cattail growth, cut cattail shoots back and compost off-site. Note: normally wetland vegetation does not need to be harvested unless die-back is causing oxygen depletion in downstream waters.
	Inlet/Outlet	Inlet/outlet area clogged with sediment and/or debris.	Remove clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet areas.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	Remove trash and debris from wet swale.
	Erosion/Scouring	Swale has eroded or scoured due to flow channelization, or higher flows.	Check design flows to assure swale is large enough to handle flows. By-pass excess flows or enlarge swale. Replant eroded areas with fibrous-rooted plants such as Juncus effusus (soft rush) in wet areas or snowberry (Symphoricarpos albus) in dryer areas.

No. 10 – Filter Strips

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General	Sediment Accumulation on Grass	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches.	Remove sediment deposits, re-level so slope is even and flows pass evenly through strip.
	Vegetation	When the grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10-inches); when nuisance weeds and other vegetation starts to take over.	Mow grass, control nuisance vegetation, such that flow not impeded. Grass should be mowed to a height between 3-4 inches.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated on the filter strip.	Remove trash and Debris from filter.
	Erosion/Scouring	Eroded or scoured areas due to flow channelization, or higher flows.	For ruts or bare areas less than 12 inches wide, repair the damaged area by filling with crushed gravel. The grass will creep in over the rock in time. If bare areas are large, generally greater than 12 inches wide, the filter strip should be re-graded and re-seeded. For smaller bare areas, overseed when bare spots are evident.
	Flow spreader	Flow spreader uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed through entire filter width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire filter width.

No. 11 – Wetponds

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Water level	First cell is empty, doesn't hold water.	Line the first cell to maintain at least 4 feet of water. Although the second cell may drain, the first cell must remain full to control turbulence of the incoming flow and reduce sediment resuspension.
	Trash and Debris	Accumulation that exceeds 1 CF per 1000-SF of pond area.	Trash and debris removed from pond.
	Inlet/Outlet Pipe	Inlet/Outlet pipe clogged with sediment and/or debris material.	No clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet piping.
	Sediment Accumulation in Pond Bottom	Sediment accumulations in pond bottom that exceeds the depth of sediment zone plus 6-inches, usually in the first cell.	Sediment removed from pond bottom.
	Oil Sheen on Water	Prevalent and visible oil sheen.	Oil removed from water using oil-absorbent pads or vactor truck. Source of oil located and corrected. If chronic low levels of oil persist, plant wetland plants such as Juncus effusus (soft rush) which can uptake small concentrations of oil.
	Erosion	Erosion of the pond's side slopes and/or scouring of the pond bottom, that exceeds 6-inches, or where continued erosion is prevalent.	Slopes stabilized using proper erosion control measures and repair methods.
	Settlement of Pond Dike/Berm	Any part of these components that has settled 4-inches or lower than the design elevation, or inspector determines dike/berm is unsound.	Dike/berm is repaired to specifications.
	Internal Berm	Berm dividing cells should be level.	Berm surface is leveled so that water flows evenly over entire length of berm.
	Overflow Spillway	Rock is missing and soil is exposed at top of spillway or outside slope.	Rocks replaced to specifications.

No. 12 – Wetvaults

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash/Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in vault, pipe or inlet/outlet (includes floatables and non-floatables).	Remove trash and debris from vault.
	Sediment Accumulation in Vault	Sediment accumulation in vault bottom exceeds the depth of the sediment zone plus 6-inches.	Remove sediment from vault.
	Damaged Pipes	Inlet/outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired and/or replaced.
	Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened or removed, especially by one person.	Pipe repaired or replaced to proper working specifications.
	Ventilation	Ventilation area blocked or plugged.	Blocking material removed or cleared from ventilation area. A specified % of the vault surface area must provide ventilation to the vault interior (see design specifications).
	Vault Structure Damage - Includes Cracks in Walls Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than 1/4-inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
	Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection staff.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
	Access Ladder Damage	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not attached to structure wall, missing rungs, has cracks and/or misaligned. Confined space warning sign missing.	Ladder replaced or repaired to specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel. Replace sign warning of confined space entry requirements. Ladder and entry notification complies with OSHA standards.

No. 13 – Sand Filters (above ground/open)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Above Ground (open sand filter)	Sediment Accumulation on top layer	Sediment depth exceeds 1/2-inch.	No sediment deposit on grass layer of sand filter that would impede permeability of the filter section.
	Trash and Debris Accumulations	Trash and debris accumulated on sand filter bed.	Trash and debris removed from sand filter bed.
	Sediment/ Debris in Clean-Outs	When the clean-outs become full or partially plugged with sediment and/or debris.	Sediment removed from clean-outs.
	Sand Filter Media	Drawdown of water through the sand filter media takes longer than 24-hours, and/or flow through the overflow pipes occurs frequently.	Top several inches of sand are scraped. May require replacement of entire sand filter depth depending on extent of plugging (a sieve analysis is helpful to determine if the lower sand has too high a proportion of fine material).
	Prolonged Flows	Sand is saturated for prolonged periods of time (several weeks) and does not dry out between storms due to continuous base flow or prolonged flows from detention facilities.	Low, continuous flows are limited to a small portion of the facility by using a low wooden divider or slightly depressed sand surface.
	Short Circuiting	When flows become concentrated over one section of the sand filter rather than dispersed.	Flow and percolation of water through sand filter is uniform and dispersed across the entire filter area.
	Erosion Damage to Slopes	Erosion over 2-inches deep where cause of damage is prevalent or potential for continued erosion is evident.	Slopes stabilized using proper erosion control measures.
	Rock Pad Missing or Out of Place	Soil beneath the rock is visible.	Rock pad replaced or rebuilt to design specifications.
	Flow Spreader	Flow spreader uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed across sand filter.	Spreader leveled and cleaned so that flows are spread evenly over sand filter.
	Damaged Pipes	Any part of the piping that is crushed or deformed more than 20% or any other failure to the piping.	Pipe repaired or replaced.

No. 14 –Sand Filters (below ground/enclosed)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Below Ground Vault.	Sediment Accumulation on Sand Media Section	Sediment depth exceeds 1/2-inch.	No sediment deposits on sand filter section that which would impede permeability of the filter section.
	Sediment Accumulation in Pre-Settling Portion of Vault	Sediment accumulation in vault bottom exceeds the depth of the sediment zone plus 6-inches.	No sediment deposits in first chamber of vault.
	Trash/Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in vault, or pipe inlet/outlet, floatables and non-floatables.	Trash and debris removed from vault and inlet/outlet piping.
	Sediment in Drain Pipes/Cleanouts	When drain pipes, cleanouts become full with sediment and/or debris.	Sediment and debris removed.
	Short Circuiting	When seepage/flow occurs along the vault walls and corners. Sand eroding near inflow area.	Sand filter media section re-laid and compacted along perimeter of vault to form a semi-seal. Erosion protection added to dissipate force of incoming flow and curtail erosion.
	Damaged Pipes	Inlet or outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired and/or replaced.
	Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened, corrosion/deformation of cover. Maintenance person cannot remove cover using normal lifting pressure.	Cover repaired to proper working specifications or replaced.
	Ventilation	Ventilation area blocked or plugged	Blocking material removed or cleared from ventilation area. A specified % of the vault surface area must provide ventilation to the vault interior (see design specifications).
	Vault Structure Damaged; Includes Cracks in Walls, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab.	Cracks wider than 1/2-inch or evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than 1/4-inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
	Baffles/Internal walls	Baffles or walls corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.

No. 14 –Sand Filters (below ground/enclosed)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
	Access Ladder Damaged	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired to specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.

No. 15 – Stormfilter™ (leaf compost filter)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Below Ground Vault	Sediment Accumulation on Media.	Sediment depth exceeds 0.25-inches.	No sediment deposits which would impede permeability of the compost media.
	Sediment Accumulation in Vault	Sediment depth exceeds 6-inches in first chamber.	No sediment deposits in vault bottom of first chamber.
	Trash/Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated on compost filter bed.	Trash and debris removed from the compost filter bed.
	Sediment in Drain Pipes/Clean-Outs	When drain pipes, clean-outs, become full with sediment and/or debris.	Sediment and debris removed.
	Damaged Pipes	Any part of the pipes that are crushed or damaged due to corrosion and/or settlement.	Pipe repaired and/or replaced.
	Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened; one person cannot open the cover using normal lifting pressure, corrosion/deformation of cover.	Cover repaired to proper working specifications or replaced.
	Vault Structure Includes Cracks in Wall, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than 1/2-inch or evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than 1/4-inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
	Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking warping, and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
	Access Ladder Damaged	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired and meets specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.
Below Ground Cartridge Type	Compost Media	Drawdown of water through the media takes longer than 1 hour, and/or overflow occurs frequently.	Media cartridges replaced.
	Short Circuiting	Flows do not properly enter filter cartridges.	Filter cartridges replaced.

No. 16 – Baffle Oil/Water Separators (API Type)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Monitoring	Inspection of discharge water for obvious signs of poor water quality.	Effluent discharge from vault should be clear with out thick visible sheen.
	Sediment Accumulation	Sediment depth in bottom of vault exceeds 6-inches in depth.	No sediment deposits on vault bottom that would impede flow through the vault and reduce separation efficiency.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulation in vault, or pipe inlet/outlet, floatables and non-floatables.	Trash and debris removed from vault, and inlet/outlet piping.
	Oil Accumulation	Oil accumulations that exceed 1-inch, at the surface of the water.	Extract oil from vault by vactoring. Disposal in accordance with state and local rules and regulations.
	Damaged Pipes	Inlet or outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired or replaced.
	Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened, corrosion/deformation of cover.	Cover repaired to proper working specifications or replaced.
	Vault Structure Damage - Includes Cracks in Walls Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	See "Catch Basins" (No. 5)	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than 1/4-inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
	Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
	Access Ladder Damaged	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired and meets specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.

No. 17 – Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separators

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Monitoring	Inspection of discharge water for obvious signs of poor water quality.	Effluent discharge from vault should be clear with no thick visible sheen.
	Sediment Accumulation	Sediment depth in bottom of vault exceeds 6-inches in depth and/or visible signs of sediment on plates.	No sediment deposits on vault bottom and plate media, which would impede flow through the vault and reduce separation efficiency.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in vault, or pipe inlet/outlet, floatables and non-floatables.	Trash and debris removed from vault, and inlet/outlet piping.
	Oil Accumulation	Oil accumulation that exceeds 1-inch at the water surface.	Oil is extracted from vault using vactoring methods. Coalescing plates are cleaned by thoroughly rinsing and flushing. Should be no visible oil depth on water.
	Damaged Coalescing Plates	Plate media broken, deformed, cracked and/or showing signs of failure.	A portion of the media pack or the entire plate pack is replaced depending on severity of failure.
	Damaged Pipes	Inlet or outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired and or replaced.
	Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
	Vault Structure Damage - Includes Cracks in Walls, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than 1/2-inch or evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than 1/4-inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
	Access Ladder Damaged	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired and meets specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.

No. 18 – Catchbasin Inserts

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Sediment Accumulation	When sediment forms a cap over the insert media of the insert and/or unit.	No sediment cap on the insert media and its unit.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulates on insert unit creating a blockage/restriction.	Trash and debris removed from insert unit. Runoff freely flows into catch basin.
	Media Insert Not Removing Oil	Effluent water from media insert has a visible sheen.	Effluent water from media insert is free of oils and has no visible sheen.
	Media Insert Water Saturated	Catch basin insert is saturated with water and no longer has the capacity to absorb.	Remove and replace media insert
	Media Insert-Oil Saturated	Media oil saturated due to petroleum spill that drains into catch basin.	Remove and replace media insert.
	Media Insert Use Beyond Normal Product Life	Media has been used beyond the typical average life of media insert product.	Remove and replace media at regular intervals, depending on insert product.

Chapter 5 - On-Site Stormwater Management

Note: Figures 5.1 through 5.5 are courtesy of King County
Figures 5.6 and 5.7 from Ecology 1992 Manual
Figures 5.8 through 5.14 are courtesy of Washington Concrete and Aggregate Association

5.1 Purpose

This Chapter presents the methods for analysis and design of on-site stormwater management Best Management Practices (BMPs). Many of these BMPs, although being used elsewhere, are new locally. Efforts are underway to further develop these "low impact development" concepts in Western Washington. Ecology will update these BMPs when local standards are established.

5.2 Application

The On-Site Stormwater Management BMPs presented in this Chapter have application to treatment situations specified in Volume V, Chapter 3.

On-site BMPs focus on minimization of impervious surface area, the use of infiltration, and dispersion through on-site vegetation for stormwater runoff flow control and treatment.

Most of the BMPs serve to control runoff flow rate as well as to provide runoff treatment. Non-pollution generating surfaces, such as rooftops and patios, may also use the infiltration BMPs contained in Volume 3, Section 3.1, which provide flow control only. Pollution-generating surfaces, such as driveways, small parking lots, and landscaping, must use on-site BMPs to provide some water quality treatment.

5.3 Best Management Practices for On-Site Stormwater Management

Included are the following specific On-Site Stormwater Management BMPs discussed in this Chapter:

Section 5.3.1 - Dispersion and Soil Quality BMPs (Required for Manual Equivalency)

BMP T5.10 Downspout Dispersion
BMP T5.11 Concentrated Flow Dispersion
BMP T5.12 Sheet Flow Dispersion
BMP T5.13 Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth

Section 5.3.2 - Site Design BMPs

BMP T5.20 Preserving Natural Vegetation
BMP T5.21 Better Site Design

Section 5.3.3 – Other Practices

BMP T5.30 Full Dispersion
BMP T5.31 Vegetated Rooftops
BMP T5.32 Cisterns
BMP T5.33 Concave Vegetated Surface
BMP T5.34 Multiple Small Basins
BMP T5.35 Engineered Soil/Landscape Systems
BMP T5.36 Soil Compaction Protection and Mitigation

Section 5.3.4 - Permeable/Porous Pavements

BMP T5.40 Porous Pavement
BMP T5.41 Porous Pavers
BMP T5.42 Permeable Interlocking Concrete Pavement

Projects shall employ these BMPs to infiltrate, disperse, and retain stormwater runoff on site to the maximum extent practicable without causing flooding or erosion impacts. Sites that can fully infiltrate (see Volume III, Chapter 3) or fully disperse (see BMP T5.30) are not required to provide runoff treatment or flow control facilities. Full dispersion credit is limited to sites with a maximum of 10% impervious area that is dispersed through 65% of the site maintained in natural vegetation.

Impervious surfaces that are not fully dispersed should be partially dispersed to the maximum extent practicable and then hydrologically modeled. If the model predicts that there will be a 0.1 cfs or greater increase in the 100-year return frequency flow, or if certain thresholds of impervious surfaces or converted pervious surfaces are exceeded within a threshold discharge area (see Volume 1, Table 2.2), then a flow control facility is required. Also, a treatment facility is required if the thresholds in Table 2.1 of Volume 1 are exceeded. Residential roofs that are dispersed through at least 50 feet of native vegetation may be modeled as grass. Other impervious surfaces that are partially dispersed will not be given flow credit. Modular grid pavements will be allowed a flow credit. Porous concrete and asphalt will not be allowed a flow credit at this time due to the uncertainty of long-term viability.

5.3.1 Dispersion and Soil Quality BMPs (Required for Manual Equivalency)

The following BMPs pertain to dispersion and soil quality applications.

BMP T5.10 Downspout Dispersion

Purpose and Definition

Downspout dispersion BMPs are splashblocks or gravel-filled trenches that serve to spread roof runoff over vegetated pervious areas. Dispersion attenuates peak flows by slowing entry of the runoff into the conveyance system, allows for some infiltration, and provides some water quality benefits.

Applications and Limitations

- Downspout dispersion is required on all subdivision single family lots which meet one of the following criteria:
    1. Lots greater than or equal to 22,000 square feet where downspout infiltration is not being provided according to the requirements in Volume III, Chapter 3.
    2. Lots smaller than 22,000 square feet where soils are not suitable for downspout infiltration as determined in Volume III, Chapter 3 and where the design criteria below can be met.
- All other projects required to apply Roof Downspout BMPs must provide downspout dispersion if downspout infiltration is not feasible or applicable as determined in Volume III, Chapter 3, and if the design criteria below can be met.

General Design Guidelines

- Dispersion trenches designed as shown in the Figures 5.1 and 5.2 shall be used for all downspout dispersion applications except where splashblocks are allowed below. See Figure 5.3 for a typical splashblock.
- Splashblocks may be used for downspouts discharging to a vegetated flowpath at least 50 feet in length as measured from the downspout to the downstream property line, structure, sensitive steep slope, stream, wetland, or other impervious surface. Sensitive area buffers may count toward flowpath lengths. The vegetated flowpath must be covered with well-established lawn or pasture, landscaping with well-established groundcover, or native vegetation with natural groundcover. The groundcover shall be dense enough to help disperse and infiltrate flows and to prevent erosion.
- If the vegetated flowpath (measured as defined above) is less than 25 feet on a subdivision single-family lot, a perforated stub-out connection may be used in lieu of downspout dispersion (See Volume III, Chapter 3). A perforated stub-out may also be used where implementation of downspout dispersion might cause erosion or flooding problems, either on site or on adjacent lots. This provision might be appropriate, for example, for lots constructed on steep hills

where downspout discharge could be cumulative and might pose a potential hazard for lower lying lots, or where dispersed flows could create problems for adjacent offsite lots. This provision does not apply to situations where lots are flat and onsite downspout dispersal would result in saturated yards.

Note: For all other types of projects, the use of a perforated stub-out in lieu of downspout dispersion shall be as determined by the Local Plan Approval Authority.

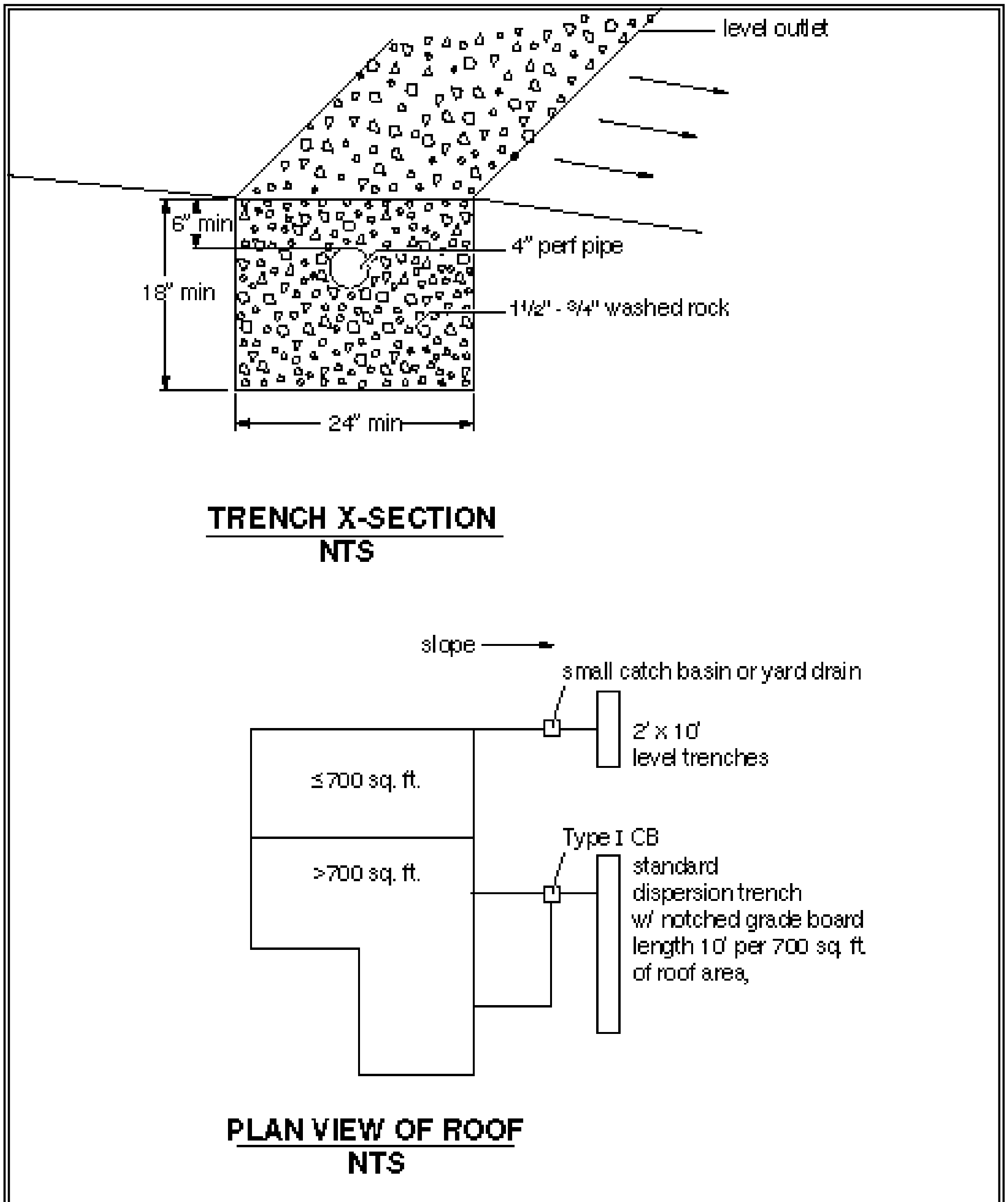


Figure 5.1 Typical Dispersion Trench

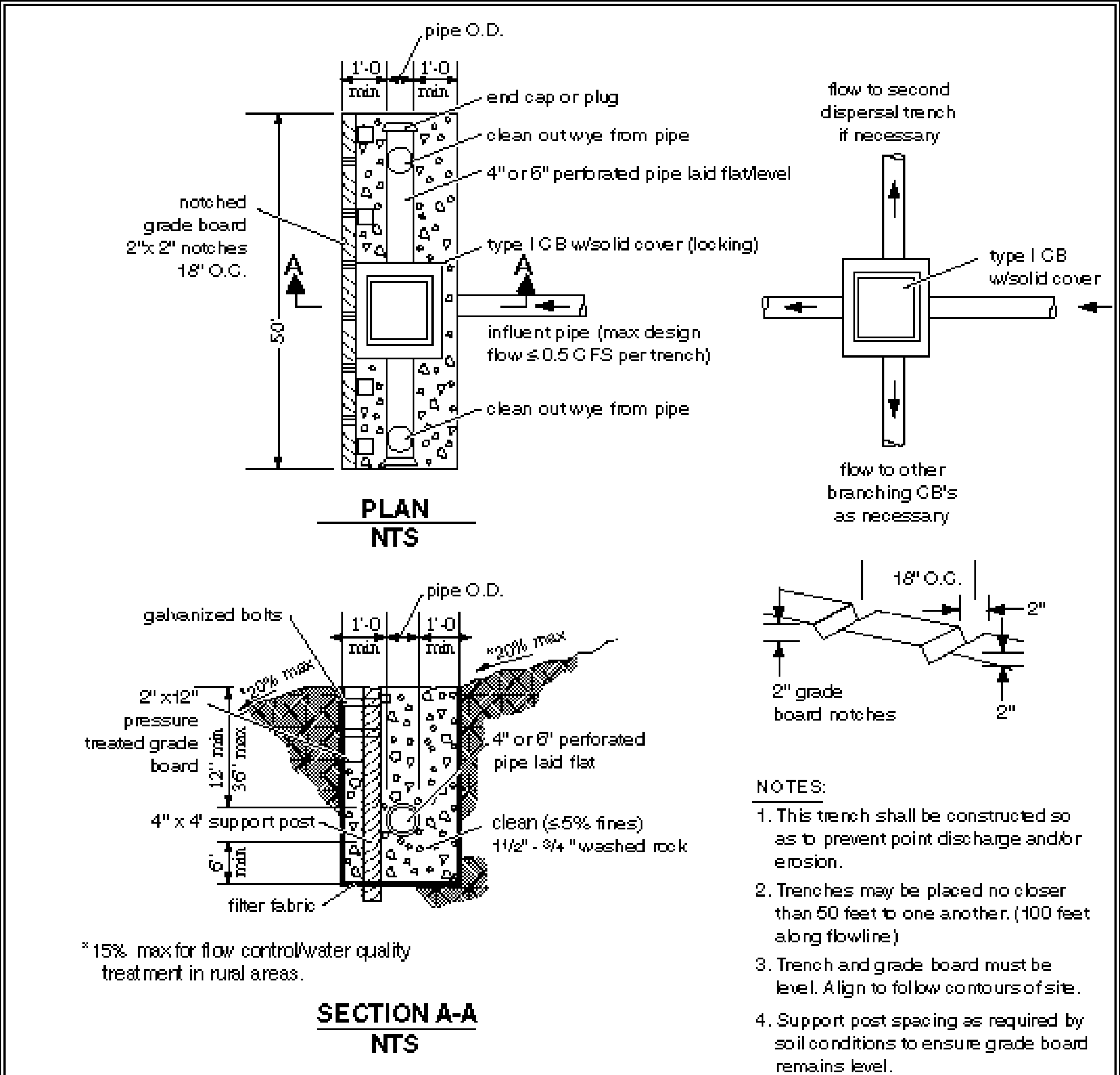


Figure 5.2 Standard Dispersion Trench with Notched Grade Board

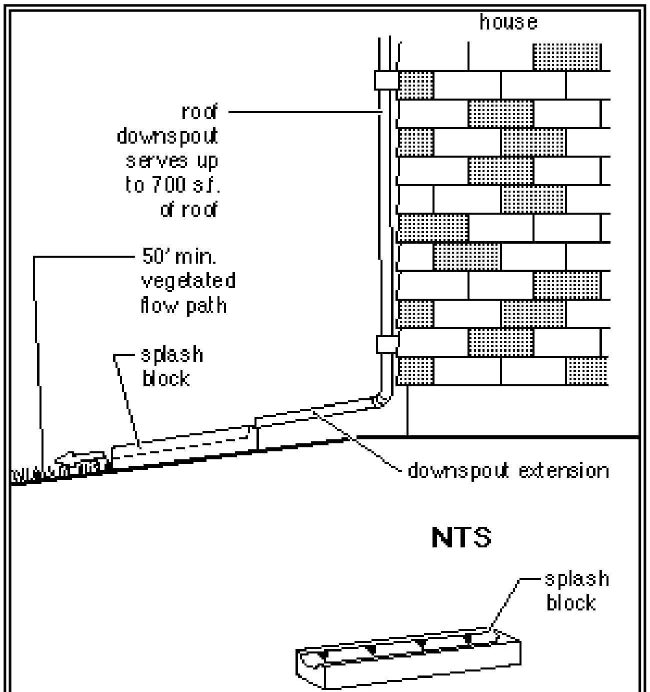


Figure 5.3 Typical Downspout Splashblock Dispersion

Additional Design Criteria For Dispersion Trenches

- A vegetated flowpath of at least 25 feet in length must be maintained between the outlet of the trench and any property line, structure, stream, wetland, or impervious surface. A vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet in length must be maintained between the outlet of the trench and any steep slope. Sensitive area buffers may count towards flowpath lengths.
- Trenches serving up to 700 square feet of roof area may be simple 10-foot-long by 2-foot wide gravel filled trenches as shown on Figure 5-1. For roof areas larger than 700 square feet, a dispersion trench with notched grade board as shown in Figure 5-2 may be used as approved by the Local Plan Approval Authority. The total length of this design must provide at least 10 feet of trench per 700 square feet of roof area and not exceed 50 feet.
- A setback of at least 5 feet must be maintained between any edge of the trench and any structure or property line.
- No erosion or flooding of downstream properties may result.
- Runoff discharged towards landslide hazard areas must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist. The discharge point

may not be placed on or above slopes greater than 20% or above erosion hazard areas without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist and jurisdiction approval.

- For sites with septic systems, the discharge point must be downgradient of the drainfield primary and reserve areas. This requirement can be waived by the jurisdiction's permit review staff if site topography will clearly prohibit flows from intersecting the drainfield.

Additional Design Criteria For Splashblocks

In general, if the ground is sloped away from the foundation, and there is adequate vegetation and area for effective dispersion, splashblocks will adequately disperse storm runoff. If the ground is fairly level, if the structure includes a basement, or if foundation drains are proposed, splashblocks with downspout extensions may be a better choice because the discharge point is moved away from the foundation. Downspout extensions can include piping to a splashblock/discharge point a considerable distance from the downspout, as long as the runoff can travel through a well-vegetated area as described below.

The following conditions must be met to use splashblocks:

- A vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet must be maintained between the discharge point and any property line, structure, steep slope, stream, wetland, lake, or other impervious surface. Sensitive area buffers may count toward flowpath lengths.
- A maximum of 700 square feet of roof area may drain to each splashblock.
- A splashblock or a pad of crushed rock (2 feet wide by 3 feet long by 6 inches deep) shall be placed at each downspout discharge point.
- No erosion or flooding of downstream properties may result.
- Runoff discharged towards landslide hazard areas must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist. Splashblocks may not be placed on or above slopes greater than 20% or above erosion hazard areas without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist and approval by the Local Plan Approval Authority.
- For sites with septic systems, the discharge point must be downslope of the primary and reserve drainfield areas. This requirement can be waived by the Local Plan Approval Authority if site topography clearly prohibits flows from intersecting the drainfield.

BMP T5.11 Concentrated Flow Dispersion

Purpose and Definition

Dispersion of concentrated flows from driveways or other pavement through a vegetated pervious area attenuates peak flows by slowing entry of the runoff into the conveyance system, allows for some infiltration, and provides some water quality benefits. See Figure 5.4.

Applications and Limitations

- Any situation where concentrated flow can be dispersed through vegetation.
- Dispersion for driveways will generally only be effective for single-family residences on large lots and in rural short plats. Lots proposed by short plats in urban areas will generally be too small to provide effective dispersion of driveway runoff.
- Figure 5.4 shows two possible ways of spreading flows from steep driveways.

Design Guidelines

- A vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet should be maintained between the discharge point and any property line, structure, steep slope, stream, lake, wetland, lake, or other impervious surface.
- A maximum of 700 square feet of impervious area may drain to each dispersion BMP.
- A pad of crushed rock (2 feet wide by 3 feet long by 6 inches deep) shall be placed at each discharge point.
- No erosion or flooding of downstream properties may result.
- Runoff discharged towards landslide hazard areas must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist. The discharge point shall not be placed on or above slopes greater than 20% or above erosion hazard areas without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist and approval by the Local Plan Approval Authority.
- For sites with septic systems, the discharge point should be downgradient of the drainfield primary and reserve areas. This requirement may be waived by the Local Plan Approval Authority if site topography clearly prohibits flows from intersecting the drainfield.

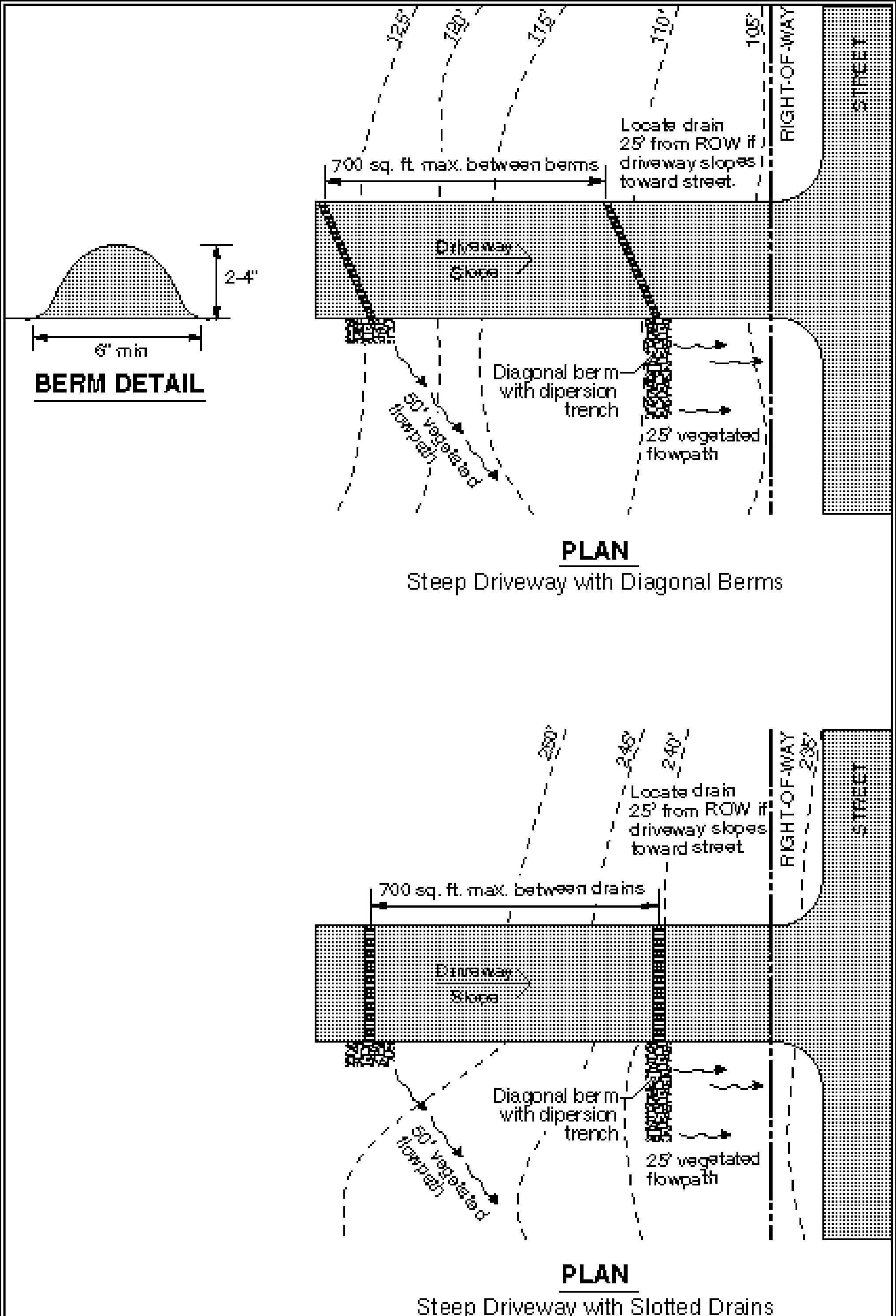


Figure 5.4 Typical Concentrated Flow Dispersion for Steep Driveways

BMP T5.12 Sheet Flow Dispersion

Purpose and Definition

Sheet flow dispersion is the simplest method of runoff control. This BMP can be used for any impervious or pervious surface that is graded so as to avoid concentrating flows. Because flows are already dispersed as they leave the surface, they need only traverse a narrow band of adjacent vegetation for effective attenuation and treatment.

Applications and Limitations

Flat or moderately sloping (<15% slope) impervious surfaces such as driveways, sport courts, patios, and roofs without gutters; sloping cleared areas that are comprised of bare soil, non-native landscaping, lawn, and/or pasture; or any situation where concentration of flows can be avoided.

Design Guidelines

- See Figure 5.5 for details for driveways.
- A 2-foot-wide transition zone to discourage channeling should be provided between the edge of the driveway pavement and the downslope vegetation, or under building eaves. This may be an extension of subgrade material (crushed rock), modular pavement, drain rock, or other material acceptable to the Local Plan Approval Authority.
- A vegetated buffer width of 10 feet of vegetation must be provided for up to 20 feet of width of paved or impervious surface. An additional 5 feet of width must be added for each addition 20 feet of width or fraction thereof.
- A vegetated buffer width of 25 feet of vegetation must be provided for up to 150 feet of contributing cleared area (i.e., bare soil, non-native landscaping, lawn, and/or pasture). Slopes within the 25-foot minimum flowpath through vegetation should be no steeper than 8 percent. If this criterion cannot be met due to site constraints, the 25-foot flowpath length must be increased 1.5 feet for each percent increase in slope above 8%.
- No erosion or flooding of downstream properties may result.
- Runoff discharge toward landslide hazard areas must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or a qualified geologist. The discharge point may not be placed on or above slopes greater than 20% or above erosion hazard areas without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist and approval by the Local Plan Approval Authority.
- For sites with septic systems, the discharge point must be downgradient of the drainfield primary and reserve areas. This requirement may be waived by the Local Plan Approval Authority if site topography clearly prohibits flows from intersecting the drainfield.

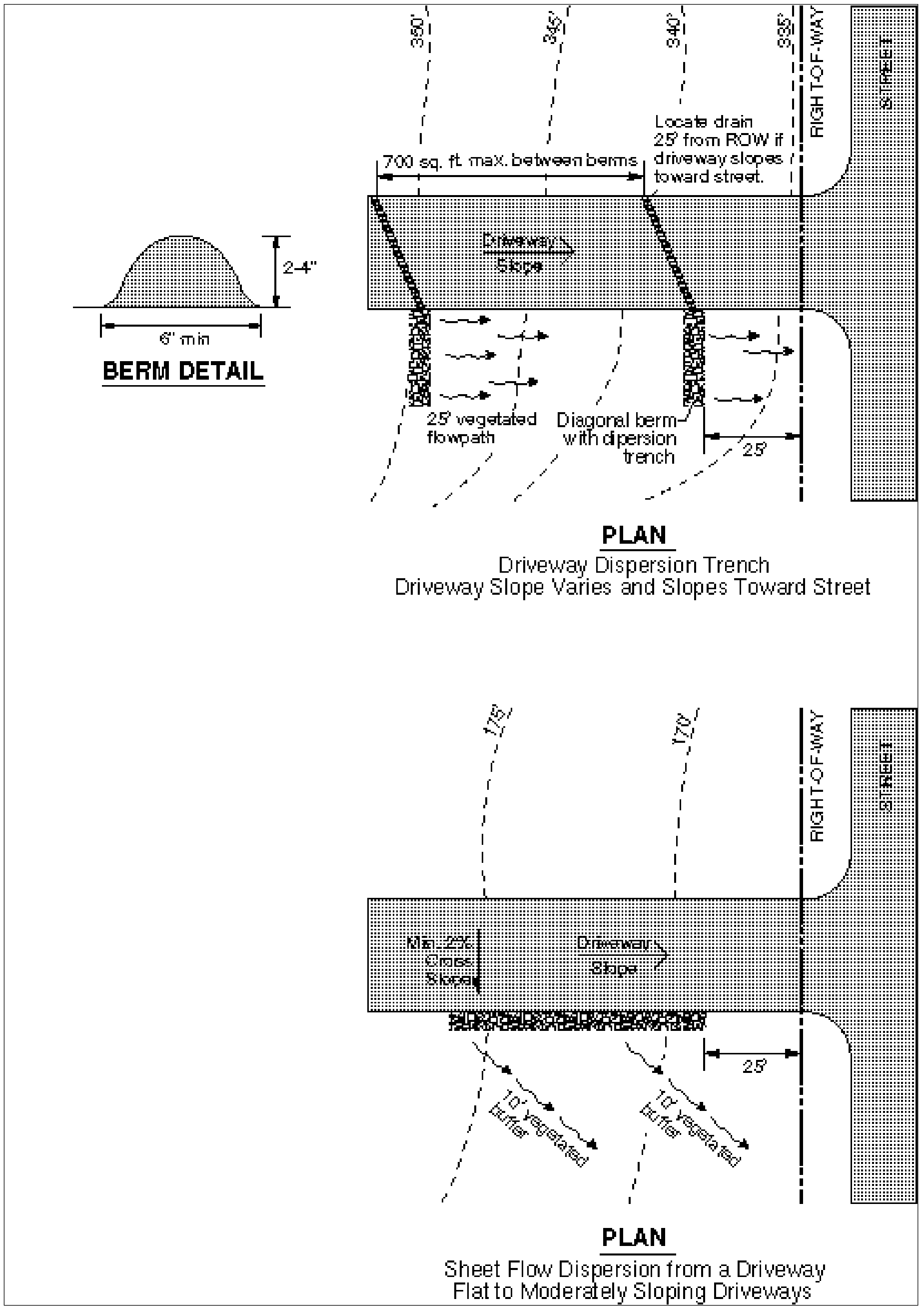


Figure 5.5 Sheet Flow Dispersion for Driveways

BMP T5.13 Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth

Purpose and Definition

Naturally occurring (undisturbed) soil and vegetation provide important stormwater functions including: water infiltration; nutrient, sediment, and pollutant adsorption; sediment and pollutant biofiltration; water interflow storage and transmission; and pollutant decomposition. These functions are largely lost when development strips away native soil and vegetation and replaces it with minimal topsoil and sod. Not only are these important stormwater functions lost, but such landscapes themselves become pollution- generating pervious surfaces due to increased use of pesticides, fertilizers and other landscaping and household/industrial chemicals, the concentration of pet wastes, and pollutants that accompany roadside litter.

Establishing soil quality and depth regains greater stormwater functions in the post development landscape, provides increased treatment of pollutants and sediments that result from development and habitation, and minimizes the need for some landscaping chemicals, thus reducing pollution through prevention.

Applications and Limitations

Establishing a minimum soil quality and depth is not the same as preservation of naturally occurring soil and vegetation. It also does not maximize the stormwater functions that could be attained through greater soil depth and more specialized formulations as presented in BMP T5.35, Engineered Soil/Landscape Systems. However, establishing a minimum soil quality and depth will provide improved on-site management of stormwater flow and water quality.

Soil organic matter can be attained through numerous materials such as compost, composted woody material, biosolids, and forest product residuals. It is important that the materials used to meet the soil quality and depth BMP be appropriate and beneficial to the plant cover to be established. Likewise, it is important that imported topsoils improve soil conditions and do not have an excessive percent of clay fines.

Design Guidelines

- Soil retention. The duff layer and native topsoil should be retained in an undisturbed state to the maximum extent practicable. In any areas requiring grading remove and stockpile the duff layer and topsoil on site in a designated, controlled area, not adjacent to public resources and critical areas, to be reapplied to other portions of the site where feasible.

- Soil quality. All areas subject to clearing and grading that have not been covered by impervious surface, incorporated into a drainage facility or engineered as structural fill or slope shall, at project completion, demonstrate the following:

1. Retention or enhancement of the moisture infiltration rate and soil moisture holding capacity of the original undisturbed soil native to the site. Areas which have been compacted or have removed some or all of the duff layer or underlying top soil shall be amended to mitigate for lost moisture infiltration and moisture holding capacity; and
2. A topsoil layer with a minimum organic matter content of ten percent dry weight and a pH from 6.0 to 8.0 or matching the pH of the original undisturbed soil. The topsoil layer shall have a minimum depth of eight inches except where tree roots limit the depth of incorporation of amendments needed to meet the criteria. Subsoils below the topsoil layer should be scarified at least 4 inches with some incorporation of the upper material to avoid stratified layers, where feasible.

- These criteria can be met by using on-site native topsoil, incorporating amendments into on-site soil, or importing blended topsoil. If blended topsoil is imported, then fines should be limited to twenty-five percent passing through a 200 sieve.
- The resulting soil should be conducive to the type of vegetation to be established.

Maintenance

- Soil quality and depth should be established toward the end of construction and once established, should be protected from compaction, such as from large machinery use, and from erosion.
- Soil should be planted and mulched after installation.
- Plant debris or its equivalent should be left on the soil surface to replenish organic matter.
- It should be possible to reduce use of irrigation, fertilizers, herbicides and pesticides. These activities should be adjusted where possible, rather than continuing to implement formerly established practices.

5.3.2 Site Design BMPs

The two BMPs in this section are general practices for design and maintenance at the site.

BMP T5.20 Preserving Natural Vegetation

Purpose And Definition

Preserving natural vegetation on-site to the maximum extent practicable will minimize the impacts of development on stormwater runoff. Preferably 65 percent or more of the development site should be protected for the purposes of retaining or enhancing existing forest cover and preserving wetlands and stream corridors.

Applications and Limitations

New development often takes place on tracts of forested land. In fact, building sites are often selected because of the presence of mature trees. However, unless sufficient care is taken and planning done, in the interval between buying the property and completing construction much of this resource is likely to be destroyed. The property owner is ultimately responsible for protecting as many trees as possible, with their understory and groundcover. This responsibility is usually exercised by agents, the planners, designers and contractors. It takes 20 to 30 years for newly planted trees to provide the benefits for which trees are so highly valued.

Forest and native growth areas allow rainwater to naturally percolate into the soil, recharging ground water for summer stream flows and reducing surface water runoff that creates erosion and flooding. Conifers can hold up to about 50 percent of all rain that falls during a storm. Twenty to 30 percent of this rain may never reach the ground but evaporates or is taken up by the tree. Forested and native growth areas also may be effective as stormwater buffers around smaller developments.

On lots that are one acre or greater, preservation of 65 percent or more of the site in natural vegetation will allow the use of full dispersion techniques presented in BMP T5.30. Sites that can fully disperse are not required to provide runoff treatment or flow control facilities.

Design Guidelines

- The preserved area should be situated to minimize the clearing of existing forest cover, to maximize the preservation of wetlands, and to buffer stream corridors.
- The preserved area should be placed in a separate tract or protected through recorded easements for individual lots.

- If feasible, the preserved area should be located downslope from the building sites, since flow control and water quality are enhanced by flow dispersion through duff, undisturbed soils, and native vegetation.
- The preserved area should be shown on all property maps and should be clearly marked during clearing and construction on the site.

Maintenance

- Vegetation and trees should not be removed from the natural growth retention area, except for approved timber harvest activities and the removal of dangerous and diseased trees.

BMP T5.21 Better Site Design

Purpose and Definition

Fundamental hydrological concepts and stormwater management concepts can be applied at the site design phase that are:

- more integrated with natural topography,
- reinforce the hydrologic cycle,
- more aesthetically pleasing, and
- often less expensive to build.

A few site planning principles help to locate development on the least sensitive portions of a site and accommodate residential land use while mitigating its impact on stormwater quality.

Design Guidelines

- **Define Development Envelope and Protected Areas -** The first step in site planning is to define the development envelope. This is done by identifying protected areas, setbacks, easements and other site features, and by consulting applicable local standards and requirements. Site features to be protected may include important existing trees, steep slopes, erosive soils, riparian areas, or wetlands.

  By keeping the development envelope compact, environmental impacts can be minimized, construction costs can be reduced, and many of the site's most attractive landscape features can be retained. In some cases, economics or other factors may not allow avoidance of all sensitive areas. In these cases, care can be taken to mitigate the impacts of development through site work and other landscape treatments.

- **Minimize Directly Connected Impervious Areas -** Impervious areas directly connected to the storm drain system are the greatest contributors to urban nonpoint source pollution. Any impervious surface that drains into a catch basin or other conveyance structure is a "directly connected impervious surface." As stormwater runoff flows across parking lots, roadways, and other paved areas, the oil, sediment, metals, and other pollutants are collected and concentrated. If this runoff is collected by a drainage structure and carried directly along impervious gutters or in sealed underground pipes, it has no opportunity for filtering by plant material or infiltration into the soil. It also increases in velocity and amount, causing increased peak-flows in the winter and decreased base-flows in the summer.

A basic site design principle for stormwater management is to minimize these directly connected impervious areas. This can be done by limiting overall impervious land coverage or by infiltrating and/or dispersing runoff from these impervious areas.

- **Maximize Permeability -** Within the development envelope, many opportunities are available to maximize the permeability of new construction. These include minimizing impervious areas, paving with permeable materials, clustering buildings, and reducing the land coverage of buildings by smaller footprints. All of these strategies make more land available for infiltration and dispersion through natural vegetation.

  Clustered driveways, small visitor parking bays and other strategies can also minimize the impact of transportation-related surfaces while still providing adequate access.

  Once site coverage is minimized through clustering and careful planning, pavement surfaces can be selected for permeability. A patio of brick-on-sand, for example, is more permeable than a large concrete slab. Engineered soil/landscape systems are permeable ground covers suitable for a wide variety of uses. Permeable/porous pavements can be used in place of traditional concrete or asphalt pavements in many low traffic applications.

  Maximizing permeability at every possible opportunity requires the integration of many small strategies. These strategies will be reflected at all levels of a project, from site planning to materials selection. In addition to the environmental and aesthetic benefits, a high-permeability site plan may allow the reduction or elimination of expensive runoff underground conveyance systems, flow control and treatment facilities, yielding significant savings in development costs.

- **Build Narrower Streets -** More than any other single element, street design has a powerful impact on stormwater quantity and quality. In residential development, streets and other transportation-related structures typically can comprise between 60 and 70 percent of the total impervious area, and, unlike rooftops, streets are almost always directly connected to the stormwater conveyance system.

  The combination of large, directly connected impervious areas, together with the pollutants generated by automobiles, makes the street network a principal contributor to stormwater pollution in residential areas.

  Street design is usually mandated by local municipal standards. These standards have been developed to facilitate efficient automobile traffic and maximize parking. Most require large impervious land coverage. In recent years, new street standards have been gaining acceptance that meet the access requirements of local residential streets while reducing impervious land coverage. These standards generally create a new class of street that is narrower than the current local street standard, called an "access" street. An access street is intended only to provide access to a limited number of residences.

Because street design is the greatest factor in a residential development's impact on stormwater quality, it is important that designers, municipalities and developers employ street standards that reduce impervious land coverage.

- **Maximize Choices for Mobility -** Given the costs of automobile use, both in land area consumed and pollutants generated, maximizing choices for mobility is a basic principle for environmentally responsible site design. By designing residential developments to promote alternatives to automobile use, a primary source of stormwater pollution can be mitigated.

  Bicycle lanes and paths, secure bicycle parking at community centers and shops, direct, safe pedestrian connections, and transit facilities are all site-planning elements that maximize choices for mobility.

- **Use Drainage as a Design Element -** Unlike conveyance storm drain systems that hide water beneath the surface and work independently of surface topography, a drainage system for stormwater infiltration or dispersion can work with natural land forms and land uses to become a major design element of a site plan.

  By applying stormwater management techniques early in the site plan development, the drainage system can suggest pathway alignments, optimum locations for parks and play areas, and potential building sites. In this way, the drainage system helps to generate urban form, giving the development an integral, more aesthetically pleasing relationship to the natural features of the site. Not only does the integrated site plan complement the land, it can also save on development costs by minimizing earthwork and expensive drainage features.

Resource Material

Start at the Source. Residential Site Planning & Design Guidance Manual for Stormwater Quality Protection. Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association. January 1997.

Site Planning for Urban Stream Protection. Center for Watershed Protection. December, 1995.

Better Site Design: A Handbook for Changing Development Rules in Your Community. Center for Watershed Protection. August 1998.

http:\\www.stormwatercenter.net

5.3.3 Other Practices

The BMPs described in this section are other general practices for on-site treatment of stormwater.

BMP T5.30 Full Dispersion

Purpose and Definition

This BMP allows for "fully dispersing" runoff from impervious surfaces and cleared areas of development sites that protect at least 65% of the site (or a threshold discharge area on the site) in a forest or native condition.

Applications and Limitations

- Rural single family residential developments should use these dispersion BMPs wherever possible to minimize effective impervious surface to less than 10% of the development site.
- Other types of development that retain 65% of the site (or a threshold discharge area on the site) in a forested or native condition may also use these BMPs to avoid triggering the flow control facility requirement.

.

Design Guidelines

- **Roof Downspouts**

  Roof surfaces that comply with the downspout infiltration requirements in Volume III, Chapter 3, are considered to be "fully dispersed" (i.e., zero percent effective imperviousness). All other roof surfaces are considered to be "fully dispersed" (i.e., at or approaching zero percent effective imperviousness) only if they are within a threshold discharge area that is or will be more than 65% forested (or native vegetative cover) and less than 10% impervious (total), AND if they comply with the downspout dispersion requirements of BMP T5.10, and have vegetated flow paths through native vegetation exceeding 100 feet.

- **Driveway Dispersion**

  Driveway surfaces are considered to be "fully dispersed" if they are within a threshold discharge area that is or will be more than 65% forested (or native vegetative cover) and less than 10% impervious (total), AND if they comply with the driveway dispersion BMPs – BMP 5.11 and BMP T5.12 - and have flow paths through native vegetation exceeding 100 feet. This also holds true for any driveway surfaces that comply with the roadway dispersion BMPs described below.

- **Roadway Dispersion BMPs**

Roadway surfaces are considered to be "fully dispersed" if they are within a threshold discharge area that is or will be more than 65% forested (or native vegetative cover) and less than 10% impervious (total), AND if they comply with the following dispersion requirements:

1. Roadway runoff dispersion is allowed only on rural neighborhood collectors and local access streets. To the extent feasible, driveways should be dispersed to the same standards as roadways to ensure adequate water quality protection of downstream resources.
2. The road section shall be designed to minimize collection and concentration of roadway runoff. Sheet flow over roadway fill slopes (i.e., where roadway subgrade is above adjacent right-of-way) should be used wherever possible to avoid concentration.
3. When it is necessary to collect and concentrate runoff from the roadway and adjacent upstream areas (e.g., in a ditch on a cut slope), concentrated flows shall be incrementally discharged from the ditch via cross culverts or at the ends of cut sections. These incremental discharges of newly concentrated flows shall not exceed 0.5 cfs at any one discharge point from a ditch for the 100-year runoff event. Where flows at a particular ditch discharge point were already concentrated under existing site conditions (e.g., in a natural channel that crosses the roadway alignment), the 0.5-cfs limit would be in addition to the existing concentrated peak flows.
4. Ditch discharge points with up to 0.2 cfs discharge for the peak 100-year flow shall use rock pads or dispersion trenches to disperse flows. Ditch discharge points with between 0.2 and 0.5 cfs discharge for the 100-year peak flow shall use only dispersion trenches to disperse flows.
5. Dispersion trenches shall be designed to accept surface flows (free discharge) from a pipe, culvert, or ditch end, shall be aligned perpendicular to the flowpath, and shall be minimum 2 feet by 2 feet in section, 50 feet in length, filled with ¾-inch to 1½-inch washed rock, and provided with a level notched grade board (see Figure 5.2). Manifolds may be used to split flows up to 2 cfs discharge for the 100-year peak flow between up to 4 trenches. Dispersion trenches shall have a minimum spacing of 50 feet.
6. After being dispersed with rock pads or trenches, flows from ditch discharge points must traverse a minimum of 100 feet of undisturbed native vegetation before leaving the project site, or

entering an existing onsite channel carrying existing concentrated flows across the road alignment.

Note: In order to provide the 100-foot flowpath length to an existing channel, some roadway runoff may unavoidably enter the channel undispersed. Also note that water quality treatment may be waived for roadway runoff dispersed through 100 feet of undisturbed native vegetation.

7. Flowpaths from adjacent discharge points must not intersect within the 100-foot flowpath lengths, and dispersed flow from a discharge point must not be intercepted by another discharge point. To enhance the flow control and water quality effects of dispersion, the flowpath shall not exceed 15% slope, and shall be located within designated open space.

   Note: Runoff may be conveyed to an area meeting these flowpath criteria.

8. Ditch discharge points shall be located a minimum of 100 feet upgradient of steep slopes (i.e., slopes steeper than 40%), wetlands, and streams.
9. Where the Local Plan Approval Authority determines there is a potential for significant adverse impacts downstream (e.g., erosive steep slopes or existing downstream drainage problems), dispersion of roadway runoff may not be allowed, or other measures may be required.

- **Cleared Area Dispersion BMPs**

The runoff from cleared areas that are comprised of bare soil, non-native landscaping, lawn, and/or pasture is considered to be "fully dispersed" if it is dispersed through at least 25 feet of native vegetation in accordance with the following criteria:

1. The contributing flowpath of cleared area being dispersed must be no more than 150 feet, AND
2. Slopes within the 25-foot minimum flowpath through native vegetation should be no steeper than 8%. If this criterion can not be met due to site constraints, the 25-foot flowpath length must be increased 1.5 feet for each percent increase in slope above 8%.

BMP T5.31 Vegetated Rooftops (Green Roofs)

Purpose and Definition

Vegetated rooftops, also know as green roofs or eco-roofs, are veneers of living vegetation that are installed on top of conventional roofs. A green roof is an extension of the existing roof, which involves a special root repelling membrane, a drainage system, a lightweight growing medium, and plants.

Applications and Limitations

Vegetated rooftops offer a practical method of managing runoff in densely developed urban neighborhoods and can be engineered to achieve specific stormwater runoff control objectives.

In North America, the benefits of green roof technologies are poorly understood and the market remains immature, despite the efforts of several industry leaders. In Europe however, these technologies have become very well established. Local building officials should be consulted early in the planning stage about building code requirements or prohibitions for vegetated rooftops.

Design Guidelines

Vegetated rooftops achieve runoff control by mimicking a variety of hydrologic processes that are associated with open space. These include:

- Interception of rainfall by foliage
- Direct runoff
- Infiltration
- Percolation
- Shallow subterranean flow (i.e., analogous to shallow ground water flow)
- Root zone moisture uptake and subsequent evapotranspiration

In a vegetated roof cover, all of these functions occur in a thin layer, typically 10 to 20 cm in depth. Through careful design, these hydrologic processes can be modulated to achieve specific outcomes. Vegetated roof covers can be considered as falling into three categories. These are:

1. Single layer system with free drainage.
2. Multi-layer system with a freely-drained basal drainage layer.
3. Multi-layer system, incorporating restricted drainage that causes a free water surface to form inside the drainage layer (integral storage).

It is important to properly specify the hydraulic properties of materials used in constructing vegetated roof covers. Both the growth media and the drainage layer play an important role in controlling runoff. Growth media properties, including saturated hydraulic conductivity, porosity, and moisture retention exert influence when the cover is dry. When the cover has been soaked by antecedent rainfall, the transmissivity of the drainage layer is more important.

It is important to consider practical limitations as well as hydraulic considerations. Hydraulic conductivity of growth media should not be less than 0.03 cm/min to prevent anaerobic conditions from becoming established. Designs that incorporate less transmissive drainage layers will be associated with the transient build-up of hydrostatic pressure over some areas of the waterproofing membrane. This may not be desirable, especially in retrofit situations.

Allowable load capacities of roofs may also constrain the depth of cover.

Resource Material

Miller, C. and Grantley Pyke. Methodology for the Design of Vegetated Roof Covers, Proceedings of the 1999 International Water Resources Engineering Conference, Seattle, Washington.

BMP T5.32 Cisterns

Purpose and Definition

A cistern is a vessel that allows storage and use of roof runoff. Cisterns may be either an above ground vessel with a manually operated valve or permanently open outlet or a below ground vessel with a pump. Cisterns should provide at least 1,000 gallons of storage to have any significant hydrologic effect.

Applications and Limitations

If the cistern has an operable valve, the valve can be closed to store stormwater for irrigation use or infiltration between storms. This system requires continual monitoring by the resident or grounds crew, but provides greater flexibility in water storage and metering. If a cistern is provided with an operable valve and water is stored inside for long periods, the cistern must be covered to prevent mosquitoes from breeding.

A cistern system with a permanently open outlet can also provide for metering stormwater runoff. If the cistern outlet is significantly smaller than the size of the downspout inlet (e.g. ¼ or ½ inch diameter), runoff will build up inside the cistern during storms, and will empty out slowly after peak intensities subside.

Cisterns require active management and maintenance by all future property owners in order to provide any long-term benefit.

Design Guidelines

- Cisterns can be incorporated into the aesthetics of the building and garden. Japanese, Mediterranean and American southwest architecture provide many examples of attractive cisterns made of a variety of materials.
- If a cistern holds more than 6 inches depth of water, it should be covered securely or have a top opening of 4 inches or less to prevent small children from gaining access to the standing water.
- The cistern should be designed and maintained to minimize clogging by leaves and other debris.
- Design information is available from the University of Florida Cooperative Extension Service at http://edis.ifas.ufl.edu.

BMP T5.33 Concave Vegetated Surfaces

Purpose and Definition

A landscape surface is graded to have a slightly concave slope to collect stormwater and promote infiltration.

Applications and Limitations

Landscape surfaces are conventionally graded to have a slight convex slope, causing water to run off a central high point into a surrounding drainage system. If a landscape surface is graded to have a slightly concave slope, it will hold water. Conventional practice in a concave vegetated surface is to place an area drain or catch basin at the center to collect stormwater. If the drain is placed not in the central low spot, but at the high edge, just below the adjacent pavements, then the concave surface will hold water until it reaches the level of the catch basin. In locations where a surface drainage system is used, a check dam can serve as an alternative to the overflow drain, allowing the water to overflow from the concave vegetated surface into a swale system.

Design Guidelines

Concave vegetated surfaces need not be very deep to make a significant contribution to overall surface storage capacity and stormwater quality. For example, a square lawn area 50 feet on a side, sloping 2 percent towards the center will create a low point 6 inches below the outside rim. This 6-inch slope over 25 feet of distance is barely noticeable, and is similar to standard grading practice for lawn areas. This 50-foot x 50-foot x 6-inch deep lawn area creates a storage capacity of 413 cubic feet. If adjacent impervious surfaces, such as sidewalks, rooftops, and roads are designed to sheet flow into this concave lawn, their runoff can gradually infiltrate into the soil.

If a series of concave vegetated surfaces are designed and located to collect and hold runoff from small storms, most pollutants and stormwater can be controlled on-site. Catch basins located at the edge of the concave vegetated surfaces can collect runoff from larger storms.

Effectiveness can be enhanced by the presence of a properly functioning soil system. This requires appropriate soil depth and composition to ensure both short-term and long-term filtration effectiveness. Substantial filtration, retention, and pollution control can occur if soil depths of 8 inches or more are present. Soils should be designed per BMP T5.13, Post-Construction Soil Quality And Depth.

BMP T5.34 Multiple Small Basins

Purpose and Definition

Multiple small infiltration basins or wetponds are designed on site.

Applications and Limitations

Multiple small basins can provide a great deal of water storage and infiltration capacity. These small basins can fit into the parkway planting strips. If connected by culverts under walks and driveways, they can create a continuous linear infiltration system. Infiltration basins can be placed under wood decks, in parking lot planter islands, and at roof downspouts. Outdoor patios or seating areas can be sunken a few steps, paved with a permeable pavement such as flagstone or gravel, and designed to hold a few inches of water collected from surrounding rooftops or paved areas for a few hours after a rain.

Rain gardens can be planned and integrated into both new and existing developments. A rain garden combines shrubs, grasses, trees and plants in depressions (about 6 inches deep) that allow water to pool after a rain event. The plants in the rain garden absorb the water and remove nutrients for a very low cost.

These examples of small basins can store water for a brief periods, allowing it to infiltrate into the soil, slowing its release into the drainage network, and filtering pollutants.

Effectiveness can be enhanced by the presence of a properly functioning soil system. This requires appropriate soil depth and composition to ensure both short-term and long-term filtration effectiveness. Substantial filtration, retention, and pollution control can occur if soil depths of 8 inches or more are present. Soils should be designed per BMP T5.13, Post-Construction Soil Quality And Depth

BMP T5.35 Engineered Soil/Landscape Systems

Purpose and Definition

The engineered soil/landscape system is a self-sustaining soil and plant system that simultaneously supports plant growth, soil microbes, water infiltration, nutrient and pollutant adsorption, sediment and pollutant biofiltration, water interflow, and pollutant decomposition.

Applications and Limitations

Installing an engineered soil/landscape system is not the same as preservation of natural vegetation. However, it can provide improvements to both the post-development plant and soil systems and help them function more effectively. This provides a soil/landscape system with adequate depth, permeability, and organic matter to sustain itself by creating a sustainable nutrient cycle.

Amending existing landscapes and turf systems to improve depth, permeability, and percent organic matter can substantially improve the disease and drought resistance of the vegetation and reduce fertilizer demand. Organic matter is the least water-soluble form of nutrient that can be added to the soil. Composted organic matter generally releases only between 2 and 10 percent of its total nitrogen annually, and this release corresponds closely to many plant growth cycles. If natural plant debris and mulch are returned to the soil this system can continue regenerating natural nutrients indefinitely.

Landscaped areas are frequently used to treat and infiltrate runoff from adjacent impervious areas. They are also used in treatment BMPs for removal of pollutants, control of peak flows, and control of erosion. However, the standard modeling approach for hydrologic analysis and flow control prescribes that designers use only marginal values for lawns and landscaping. The best runoff performance allowed for lawns and landscapes is less than that of pasture, grasslands, and woods. Providing an engineered soil/landscape system allows the designer to use the landscape as a flow control system.

Design Guidelines

Provide an engineered soil/landscape system that has the following characteristics:

- Protected from compaction and erosion.
- A plant system (landscape design) to support a sustained soil quality.
- A soil depth that is equivalent to pasture and grassland in runoff curve numbers.

- Permeability characteristics of not less than 6.0, 2.0, 0.6, and less than 0.6 inches/hour for hydrologic soil groups A, B, C, and D, respectively (per ASTM D 3385).
- Minimum percent organic matter of 12, 14, 16, and 18 percent for hydrologic soil groups A, B, C, and D, respectively (per ASTM D 2974).

Maintenance

The system should be protected from compaction and erosion. Compaction should be prevented using BMP T5.36.

- The system should be planted or mulched after installation.
- Plant debris or its equivalent should be left on the soil surface.
- Pesticides and herbicides should be used infrequently or not at all.
- Fertilizer, if used, should be applied in the form of organic matter, organic-based, or in a slow-release, non-water soluble form.

BMP T5.36 Soil Compaction Protection and Mitigation

Purpose and Definition

Landscaped areas are frequently used to treat and infiltrate runoff from adjacent impervious areas. They are also used in treatment BMPs for removal of pollutants, control of peak flows, and control of erosion. Compaction and permeability are directly related. As landscapes mature, they often become more compact due to loss of organic matter, climate- and pathogen-related stress on landscape plantings, foot traffic, vehicle/mower pressures, turf thatching, and similar activities.

Provide protection from compaction through the use of amendments. These include, but are not limited to, organic matter, coarse sand, pumice, granulated rubber, and similar soil components. Also provide protection from compaction through appropriate landscape plant selection and placement, and by defining foot traffic and vehicle pathways.

Design Guidelines

- Compost (WSDOT standard specification 8-02, section 8-12.2 with supplement 02021.FR8) can be used to increase organic matter to the 12 to 18 percent range.
- Coarse sand and pumice can be added to improve permeability. Clay soils may respond differently than other soils. For clay soils, the organic matter should be added first, and then sand or pumice added as a final ingredient to prevent the creation of an impermeable, cement-like matrix.
- Lawns can be aerated and then top-dressed with appropriate amendments to improve permeability.
- Granulated (crumb) rubber has successfully been incorporated into lawns, golf courses (EPA Publication 530-F-97-043), and athletic fields to improve permeability and resistance to compaction where the surface has constant and heavy use.
- Landscapes that are designed to prevent excessive foot traffic and vehicle/mower compression can better retain their permeability.
- Landscapes should have well-defined pathways that are designed to withstand frequent or excessive foot traffic and vehicle compression.

5.3.4 Permeable/Porous Pavements

The BMPs described in this section relate to the use of porous and permeable concrete and asphalt.

BMP T5.40 Porous Concrete and Porous Asphalt

Purpose and Definition

Porous concrete, also known as “no fines concrete,” is a special type of concrete that allows stormwater to pass through it, thereby reducing the runoff from a site. In addition, porous concrete provides runoff treatment through filtration and allows for ground water recharge.

Porous concrete or “No Fines Concrete Paving” is a structural, open textured pervious concrete paving surface consisting of standard Portland cement, fly ash, locally available open graded coarse aggregate, admixtures, fibers, and potable water. When properly handled and installed, porous concrete has a high percentage of void space (approximately 17% - 22%) which allows rapid percolation of stormwater through the pavement. Figure 5.6 illustrates a porous concrete paving section.

Porous asphaltic paving material consists of an open graded coarse aggregate cemented together by asphalt cement into a coherent mass, with sufficient interconnected voids to provide a high rate of permeability to water. Figure 5.7 illustrates a porous asphalt paving section.

Applications and Limitations

At the time of publication of this manual, use of Porous Asphalt and Porous Concrete do not qualify for flow control credits. The Permeable pavement buttons in the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) should not be used for these applications.

Porous concrete and asphalt pavements are a replacement for conventional asphalt pavement or other hard paving surfaces provided that the grades, subsoil drainage characteristics and ground water table conditions are suitable for its use:

- Not recommended on slopes greater than 5 percent and best with slopes as flat as possible
- The minimum infiltration rate in the subsoils should be 0.25 inches per hour. Infiltration rates less than 2.4 inches per hour and a cation exchange capacity of 5 milliequivalents CEC/100 grams dry soil or greater) will provide water quality treatment in the subsoils.

- Minimum depth to bedrock and seasonally high water table should be 3 feet.

Possible areas for use of this paving material include:

- Commercial, public, and municipal parking lots, including perimeter and overflow parking areas;
- Parking aprons, taxiways, and runway shoulders at airports;
- Vehicle access areas, including roadway shoulders, medians, fire lanes, on-street parking areas, emergency stopping lanes, and vehicle cross-overs on divided highways;
- Low-speed residential roads;
- Residential driveways, patios, sidewalks, and sport courts;
- Sidewalks, bicycle trails, golf cart paths, community trail/pedestrian path systems, or any pedestrian accessible paved area,
- Areas where additional drainage capabilities are desired with improved structural capacity such as soccer fields, open space areas, or drainage fields; and
- Fill or underlayment for precast, modular paver, or grid systems.

This BMP functions as an infiltration and retention area that can accommodate pedestrians, light and heavy load parking areas, is applicable in most impervious applications in both residential and commercial applications. This combination of functions offers the following benefits:

- Allows site precipitation to reach the root systems for plants and vegetation;
- Mimics natural soils filtration throughout the pavement depth, underlying subbase drainage filter and native soils for improved groundwater quality;
- Reduction of surface water runoff temperatures;
- Increased recharge of groundwater;
- Allows for natural infiltration characteristics of native are soils;
- Elimination of typical random cracking patterns commonly found in improperly jointed concrete;
- Year round construction ability; and
- Use of locally available aggregates.

Handling and placement practices for porous concrete are different from conventional concrete placement. Placement should be completed by contractors with experience in placing porous concrete. In the absence of experience in placement, contractors should be required to view instructional porous concrete construction videos.

If perimeter, narrow, or integral porous concrete strips are to be used in conjunction with "hard" pavements, drainage curtains should be provided to prevent water migration under adjacent paved areas. Consideration should also be given to areas immediately adjacent to porous concrete edges to minimize spill over of soils or other easily dislodged fine particles.

Pervious pavements should not be used in high vehicle traffic areas. Further, Some building codes may not allow for the installation of porous pavement.

Design Criteria

- Drainage time for the design storm: minimum is 12 hours, maximum is 72 hours, recommended is 24 hours.
- Run-on to the pavement from off-site areas is not allowed.
- On-site soils should be tested for porosity, permeability, and cation exchange capacity. These properties should be considered when designing the subbase layer.
- Subgrade soils should be uniformly compacted and prepared in accordance with other pavement design considerations.
- The gradation required to obtain a porous concrete pavement is of the "open" graded or coarse type. Generally 5/8" or 3/8"inch minus crushed materials are preferred. Readily available aggregates should be considered as not all gradations are locally available. Recycled aggregates are encouraged for open graded subbase materials.
- Local guidelines relating to specifying and constructing and suggested design procedures for use of pervious concrete is available through the Washington Aggregates & Concrete Association, 399 114th Ave. NE, Bellevue, WA 98004 (or through the website at www.washingtonconcrete.org). These suggested guidelines will assist material suppliers, contractors, specifying agencies and design professionals in the proper procedures used to place porous concrete.

Operation and Maintenance

- Routine maintenance involves removal of debris that is too coarse to be washed through the pavement system. Vacuuming pavement is required to remove particulates that are fine enough to be carried into the pavement but too large to pass through, thus clogging the void space. Porous pavements require no more repair maintenance than conventional pavements, so maintenance problems can generally be reduced to better "housekeeping" practices on the part of area residents and more efficient street cleaning procedures in municipalities.

- Pervious pavements may have a tendency to clog if improperly maintained. Maintenance procedures include standard vacuum trucks, street sweepers, leaf blowers, and other practices to remove or prevent leaves, needles, or other foliage from collecting in parking areas and streets. Should clogging occur, it is usually limited to spot areas. Remedies include localized vacuuming and power washing and, in severe cases, the clogged area may be removed and replaced.
- Clogging can be prevented by waiting until all other phases of construction are complete; covering and protecting until all landscaping, topsoil import, or hydroseeding are complete; avoiding areas where any pervious pavement would not be successful; and by regular inspection and preventive maintenance practices.
- If spills occur, they should be immediately vacuumed up followed by a pressure wash or other appropriate rinse procedure. This treatment will restore permeability to almost prespill levels (95 percent).

Resource Material

Virginia State Water Control Board, Best Management Practices Handbook: Urban, Planning Bulletin 321, Richmond, Virginia, 1979.

Thelen, E. and L.F. Howe, Porous Pavement, The Franklin Institute Press, Philadelphia. PA, 1978.

Thelen, E. et al., Investigation of Porous Pavements for Urban Runoff Control, prepared by the Franklin Institute Research Laboratories for the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, NTIS PB-227-5, Springfield, VA, 1972.

Smith, R.W., J.M. Rice and S.R. Spelman, Design of Open Graded Asphalt Friction Courses, Federal Highway Administration, U.S. Department of Transportation, FHWA-RD-74-2, 1974.

United States Environmental Protection Agency, Storm Water Technology Fact Sheet, Porous Pavement, EPA 832-F-99-023, September 1999.

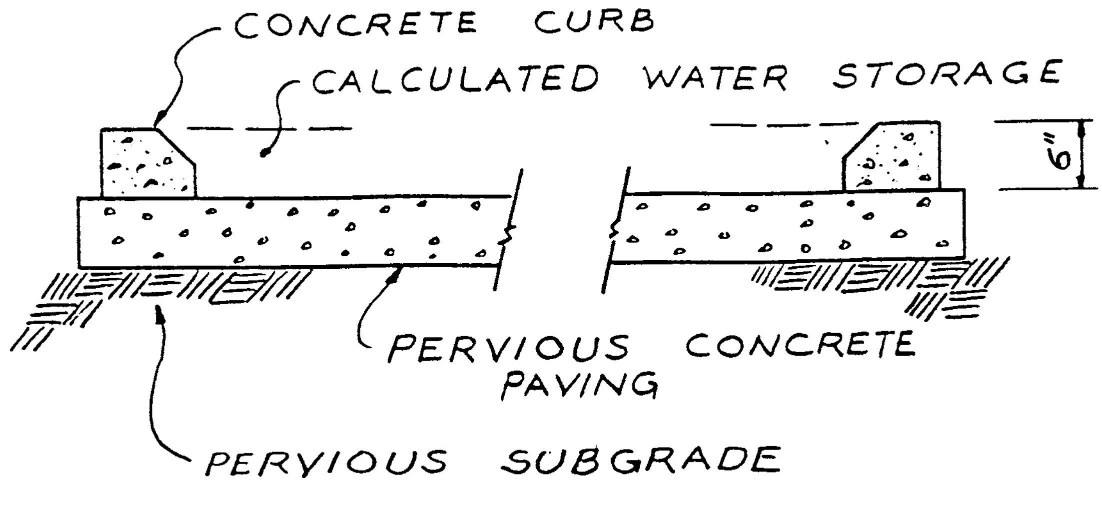


Figure 5.6 Porous Concrete Pavement Typical Section

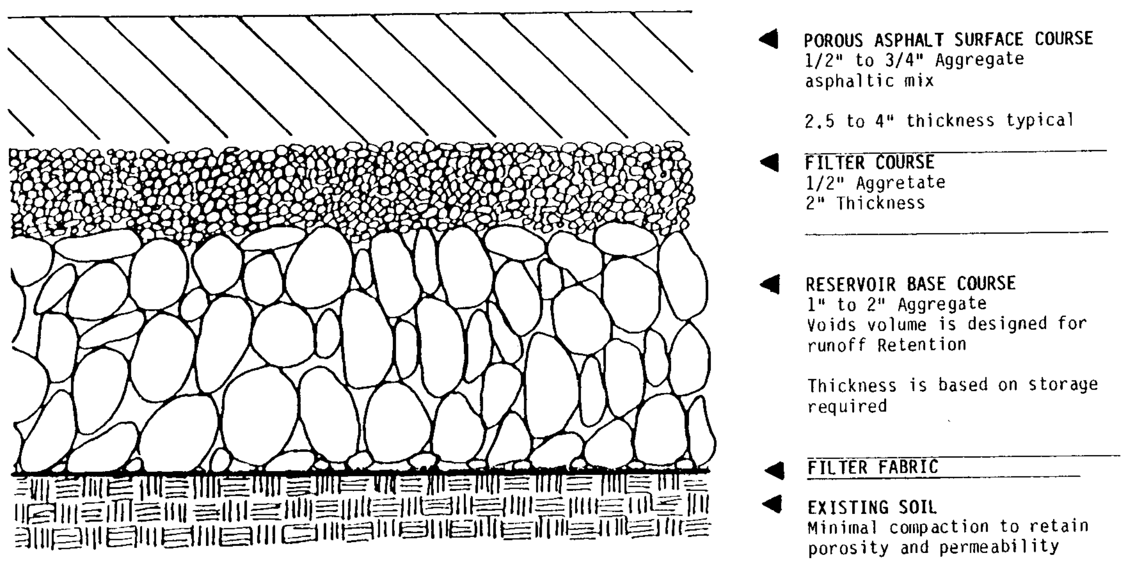


Figure 5.7 Porous Asphalt Pavement Typical Section

BMP T5.41 Porous Pavers

Purpose and Definition

The various porous paver materials available commercially can be separated into the following categories:

- Flexible plastic cellular confinement systems. Examples include Geoweb, Grasspave 2 and Gravelpave 2, and GRASSYTM PAVERS.
- Molded plastic materials. Examples include Geoblock and Checkerblock.
- Interlocking concrete blocks. Examples include UNI Eco-stone and Turfstone. See BMP T5.42 for further information on these systems.
- Cast-in-place concrete blocks. These are made with reusable forms to create voids needed for planting grass. They can be reinforced with welded wire mesh to prevent differential settlement. Grasscrete is an example of this technology.

Application and Limitations

Use of porous pavers qualifies for flow control credits in the WWHM if the area is not underlain by a collection system that routes subsurface drainage to the surface collection system. See the users manual for the WWHM.

Appropriate soil conditions and the protection of ground water are among the important considerations that may limit the use of this BMP.

Modular pavement is applicable where pavement is desirable or required for low-volume traffic areas. This practice is most applicable for new construction, but it can be used in existing developments to expand a parking area or even to replace existing pavement if that is a cost-effective measure, or for aesthetic reasons.

Possible areas for use of these paving materials include:

- Parking aprons, taxiways, blast pads, and runway shoulders at airports (heavier loads may demand the use of reinforced grid systems).
- Emergency stopping and parking lanes and vehicle crossovers on divided highways.
- On-street parking aprons in residential neighborhoods.
- Recreational vehicle camping area parking pads.
- Private roads, easement service roads and fire lanes.
- Industrial storage yards and loading zones (heavier loads may demand the use of reinforced grid systems).
- Driveways for residential and light commercial use.
- Bike paths, walkways, patios and swimming pool aprons.

Design Criteria

Modular pavement systems vary considerably in configuration. Categories include:

- Pre-Cast Concrete Grids -- Concrete paving units incorporating void areas are usually precast in a concrete products plant and trucked to a job site for placement on the ground. However, for large jobs these units can be formed and cast at the site. There are two types of grid pavers:

    1. Lattice Pavers -- generally flat and grid-like in surface configuration.
    2. Castellated Pavers -- distinguished by a more complex surface configuration characterized by crenels and merlons that are exposed when pervious materials are added. These units show a higher percentage of grass surface.

- Modular Unit Pavers -- Smaller pavers which may be clay bricks, granite sets, or cast concrete of various shapes. These pavers are monolithic units which do not have void areas incorporated into their configuration. They are installed on the ground to be covered with pervious material placed in the gaps between the units.

Construction Criteria

All installations of modular pavement should be designed and constructed according to the manufacturer's specifications. To be consistent with other forms of treatment, stored water must be percolated prior to the time limit specified for other on-site retention systems. However, facilities using vegetative cover in combination with pavers must be capable of disposing of stored waters within time limits necessary to avoid damage to the ground cover (24 to 36 hours for most grasses). Parking areas should avoid extensive ponding for periods exceeding more than an hour or two.

Operation and Maintenance

Where turf is incorporated into these installations, normal turf maintenance -- watering, fertilizing and mowing -- will be necessary. Mowing is seldom required in areas of frequent traffic. It is documented that the hard surfaces in these installations require very little maintenance. However, fertilizers, pesticides and other chemicals may have adverse effects on concrete products. The use of such chemicals should be restricted as much as possible.

BMP T5.42 Permeable Interlocking Concrete Pavement

Description

Permeable interlocking concrete pavement (PICP) combines high load-bearing strength with surface permeability through narrow jointing and a built-in pattern of openings. The openings are filled with aggregate and the pavers are typically placed on an open-graded aggregate base for storing runoff. Interlocking concrete pavements are typically constructed as flexible pavements on compacted soil subgrade and compacted aggregate base. The pavers are then placed on a thin layer of bedding sand, compacted, sand swept into the joints, and the units compacted again. When compacted the pavers interlock, transferring vertical loads from vehicles to surrounding pavers by shear forces through the joint sand. The sand in the joints enables applied loads to be spread in a manner similar to asphalt, reducing the stresses on the base and subgrade. PICP has patterns with openings or drainage holes for rainfall to enter, while maintaining high side-to-side contact among units for stability under vehicular loads (Figure 5.8).

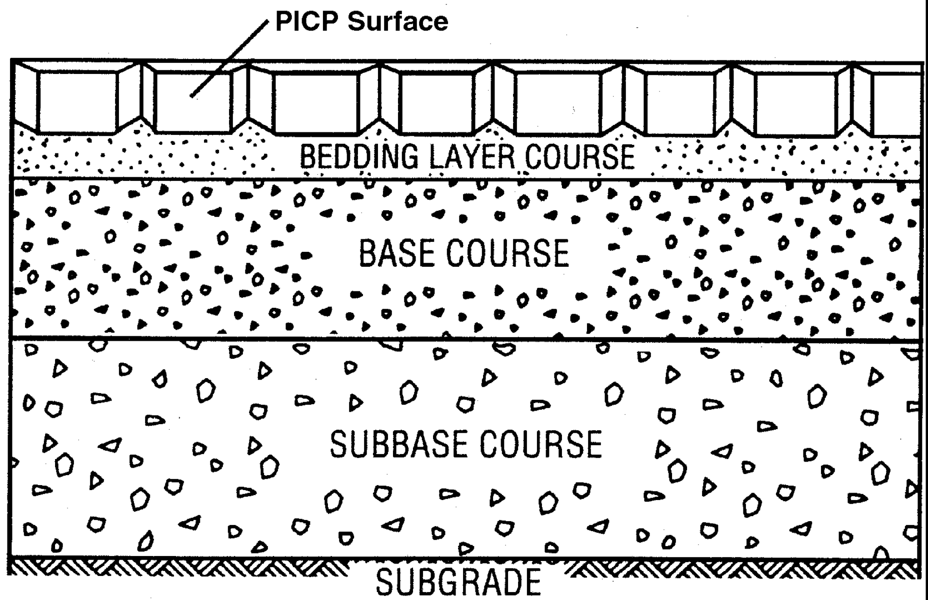


Figure 5.8 Components of a Permeable Interlocking Concrete Pavement

Applications and Limitations

Typical applications include:

- Vehicular access (residential driveways, service driveways, roadway shoulders, crossovers, and medians, fire lanes and utility access)
- Parking areas
- Bicycle trails
- Golf course (cart paths, cart parking)

- Pedestrian access (approaches to monuments, statues, and foundations, areas for outdoor special events, picnic areas and highway waysides, pathways and trails, sidewalks, pedestrian plazas)
- Equestrian trails
- Roof plaza and parking decks

This BMP functions as an infiltration and retention area that can accommodate pedestrians, and vehicular parking and traffic. This combination of functions offers the following benefits:

- Filtration through the base and soil for improvement of water quality
- Reduction of runoff temperature
- Increased recharge of groundwater
- Reduction of overall project development costs due to reduction in storm sewers and drainage appurtenances
- Elimination of cracking normal to conventional asphalt and concrete pavements
- Accommodation of year-round construction
- Pavement can be opened and closed without using jackhammers, using less construction equipment, and reusing the same pavers ("reinstatement").

PICP is not recommended for the following circumstances:

- When the depth from the bottom of the base to the high level of the water table is less than 4 feet, or when there is insufficient depth of soil to offer adequate filtering and treatment of water pollutants.
- Over solid rock without a loose rock layer above it.
- Over aquifers where there is insufficient depth of soil to filter the pollutants before entering the groundwater. These can include karst, fissured, or cleft aquifers.
- Over fill soils that can become unstable when saturated.

Should any of these conditions apply, an alternative design may incorporate "no infiltration" by using an impermeable liner to capture, store, and release runoff from the base. If infiltration is not provided and the total of new and/or replaced impervious surface is greater than 10,000 square feet, the underdrain must discharge through a flow control facility in compliance with Volume 1 of this manual. In this case, the permeable pavement credit in the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) should not be used. If infiltration is not provided and the underdrain is commingled with untreated runoff from other pollution-generating surfaces in the conveyance system, the treatment facility for the project must be sized to include the flow from the PICP. In this case, the reduced curve numbers in Chapter 2 of Volume III for permeable pavement should not be used for sizing a treatment BMP. If the flow from the underdrain can be kept separate from untreated runoff from other pollution-generating impervious, it may be discharged without further treatment.

Other considerations:

- Total catchment area draining into the permeable pavement cannot be greater than 15 acres.
- The pavement should be upslope from building foundations, and the foundations should have piped drainage at the footers.
- Land surrounding and draining into the pavement cannot exceed 20 percent slope.

General Design Criteria

A qualified and experienced geotechnical or civil engineer must complete the design of a PICP project. Zollinger et al (1998) and ICPI Tech Spec No. 4, Structural Design of Interlocking Concrete Pavement for Roads and Parking Lots provide detailed information on designing PICP. Dr. Shackel developed the Lockpave Pro computer program to assist in the structural design of interlocking concrete block pavements for a variety of applications. The structural design aspects of PICP are included in the program, as well as a hydraulic design program based on SWMM, the EPA's Stormwater Management Model.

Key performance factors include:

- Width of joints (0.08 - 0.12 in) between blocks and proper placement of the jointing sand.
- Use of edge restraints to facilitate development of shear between concrete blocks
- Minimal roughness in the initial construction of the longitudinal profile.
- Uniformity of the bedding layer (maintaining a thickness of 1-1.5 in) and proper compaction of pavers. Improperly designed and placed bed layers may result in premature rutting.
- Quality of materials (gradation, shape, etc.) should be as uniform as possible.
- Incorporate into design the proper balance between void ratio and gradation limits, and material stability and strength to simultaneously meet both the drainage and structural requirements of the design.

Pavement cross-section design options (Figures 5.9 through 5.13):

- Full or partial infiltration – A design for full infiltration uses an open-graded base with aggregate-filled joints for maximum infiltration and storage of stormwater. The water infiltrates directly into the base and through the soil. Partial infiltration does not rely completely on infiltration through the soil to dispose all of the captured runoff. Some of the water may infiltrate into the soil and the remainder drained by pipes. In this latter case, the permeable pavement credit in the WWHM should not be turned on.

- No infiltration – No infiltration is desirable when the soil has low permeability and low strength, or there are other site limitations. An impermeable layer may be used if the pollutant loads are expected to exceed the capacity of the soil and base to treat them. A liner may also be used if the depth to bedrock or to the water table is only a few feet (3 feet). By storing water for a time in the base and then slowly releasing it through pipes, the design behaves like an underground detention pond. In other cases, the soil of the sub-base may be stabilized to render improved support for vehicular loads. This practice reduces infiltration into the soil to nearly zero. The “no infiltration” option requires the use of geotextile and bedding between the pavers and the open-graded base. In this case, no credit for reduction in flow should be taken in the WWHM. The area is modeled as an impervious surface.
- A common error in designing PICP is assuming that the amount or percent of open surface is equal to the percentage of perviousness. The perviousness and amount of infiltration is dependent on the infiltration rate of the joint filling material, bedding layer, and base materials, not the percentage of the open-surface area. A key consideration is the design permeability of the entire pavement cross section, including the soil subgrade. Because of short-term variations in antecedent conditions and long-term reduction in infiltration capacity, a long-term infiltration rate of 10 percent of the initial rate should be used in design.

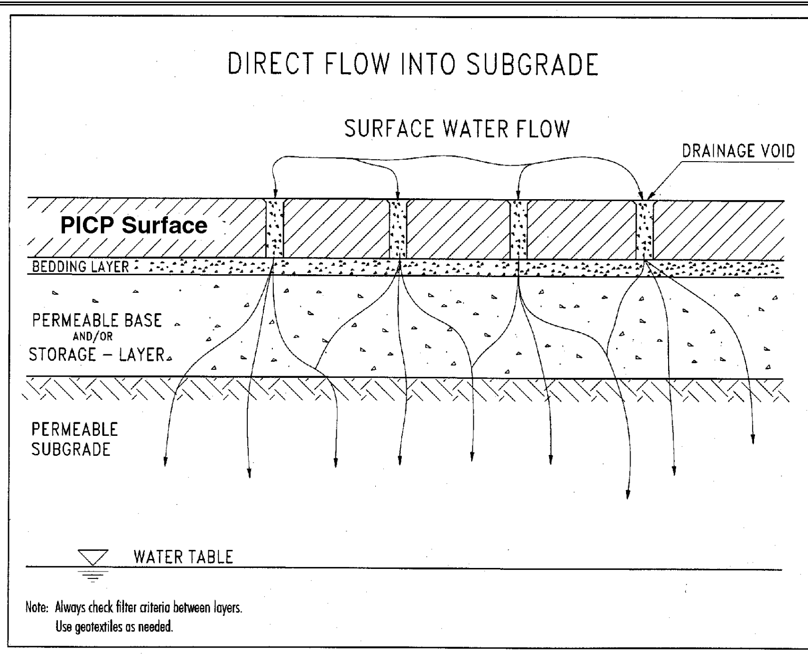


Figure 5.9 Direct Flow into Subgrade

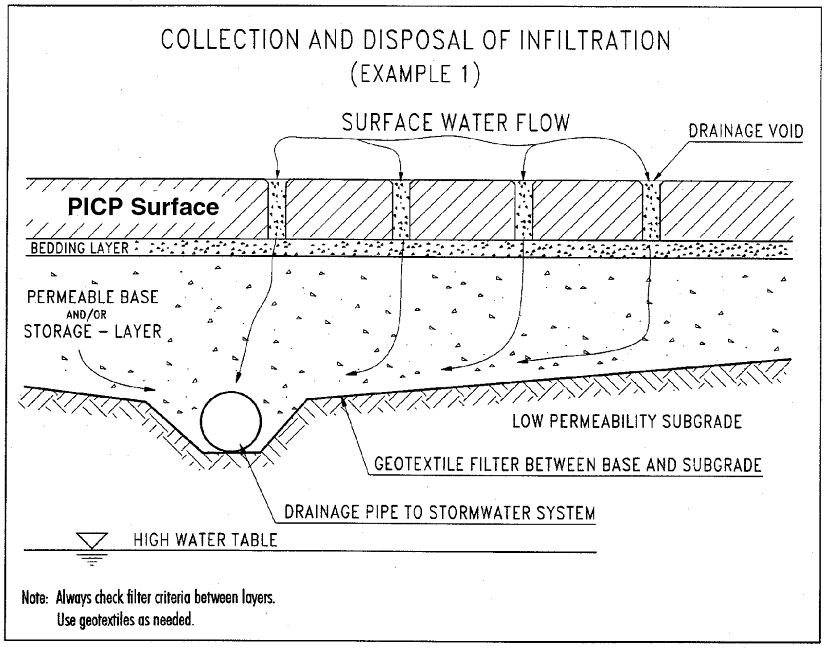


Figure 5.10 Collection and Disposal of Infiltration (Example 1)

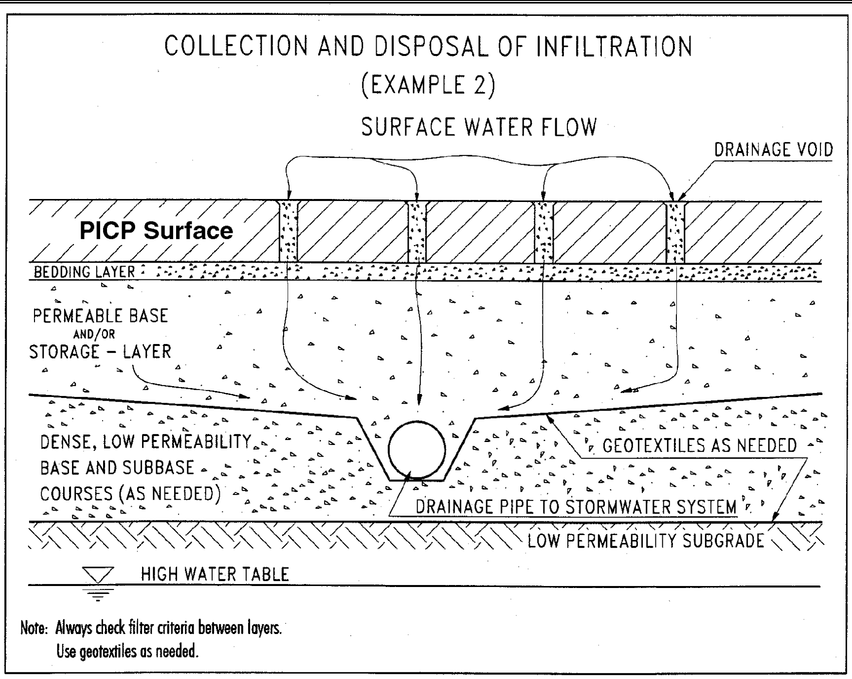


Figure 5.11 Collection and Disposal of Infiltration (Example 2)

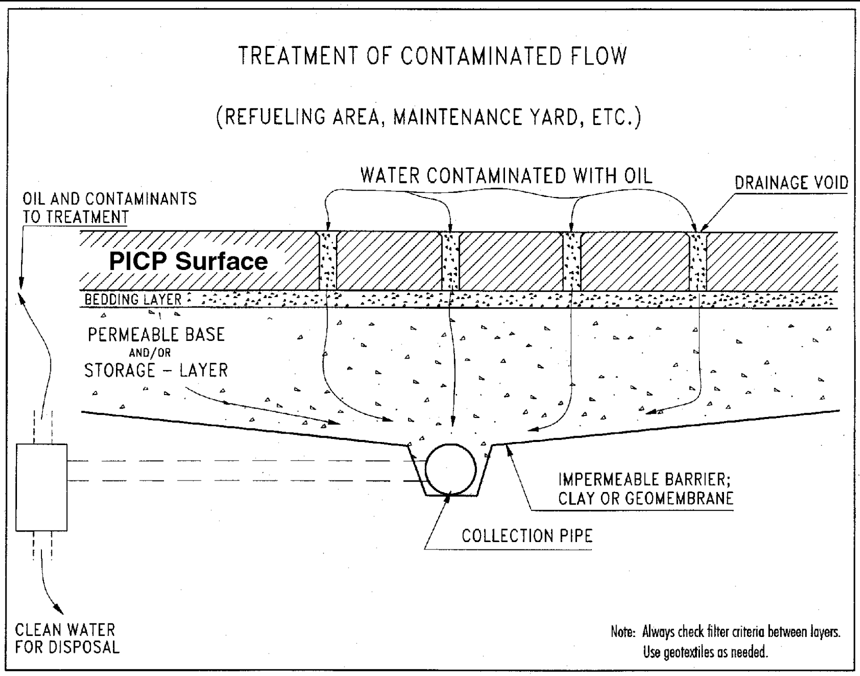


Figure 5.12 Treatment of Contaminated Flow

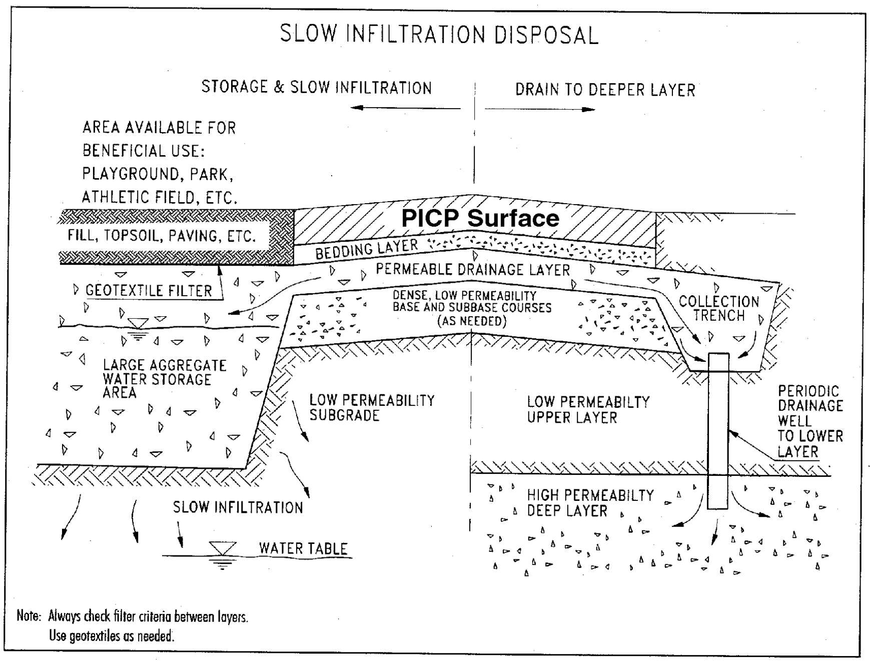


Figure 5.13 Slow Infiltration Disposal

Additional Design Considerations

- The hydrological performance of PICP should be factored into managing runoff within a larger catchment or watershed. As previously mentioned, Dr. Shackel's Lockpave Pro software includes a hydraulic design program based on SWMM, titled PC-SWMM for Permeable Pavements. PC-SWMM provides a step by step accounting (conservation of mass) of water movement through the permeable pavement installation, including surface detention, overland flow, infiltration, subsurface storage, and subsurface drainage. If this program is included within a SWMM model that gains Ecology approval as an alternative continuous runoff model, it may be used to estimate the flow benefits of PICP.
- More sophisticated methods for calculating infiltration and exfiltration with a free-draining base or partial exfiltration by drainage pipes, and no infiltration with an impermeable liner and drainpipes are listed in the reference section.

Surface Runoff volumes. A surface drainage system should be designed to remove surface water within certain time limits and physical constraints. The rate of runoff is influenced by the intensity and duration of rainfall, the type and moisture condition of the base and soil at the time of rainfall, the slope of the surface, the permeability of fill material in drainage voids on the pavement surface, and the drainage voids in the pavement surface itself. Acceptable methods for calculating runoff volumes for treatment and/or flow control purposes are discussed in Volume III of the Stormwater Manual.

Protection against flooding from extreme storm events: Drainage pipes may be built into the open-graded base to handle overflow conditions from extreme rainfall. If this is done, the permeable pavement credit in the WWHM should not be turned on. An added measure of protection could include an overflow area or drainage swale designed to handle overflows from an adjacent pervious parking lot.

Design for water quality: The type of soil subgrade affects the pollution reduction capabilities of infiltration areas. Unfortunately, many clay soils that are effective pollutant filters do not have sufficiently high infiltration rates or bearing capacity when saturated, and cannot be used under infiltration areas subject to vehicular loads. However, a layer of sand could be placed under the open-graded base to filter and treat pollutants prior to their release into a stream or storm sewer. This would be especially effective with soils that have little treatment capacity. A sand filtering system could also be implemented for filtering runoff from adjacent impervious surfaces.

Collection Systems

- A collection system may be necessary for collecting water from the drainage layer and conveying it to suitable outlets for further treatment or release. If this is done, the permeable pavement credit option the WWHM should not be turned on. Factors in designing the collection system include the collection system drainage capacity, the location and depth of the collectors and their outlets, the type of collection system to be utilized, and filter protection to provide sufficient drainage capacity and to prevent flushing of the drainage aggregate into the collection system.
- Types of edge drains include the traditional perforated or slotted pipe underdrains, prefabricated geocomposite fin drains, geotextile-wrapped underdrains, and geotextile-socked perforated pipes. See Figure 5.14.

The selection of the type of collection system depends on soil conditions at the site, the function of the collection system (i.e., to be temporary storage or to be a medium for water to pass through), construction feasibility, and economic considerations. Local geotextile suppliers can provide more information on subdrainage designs.

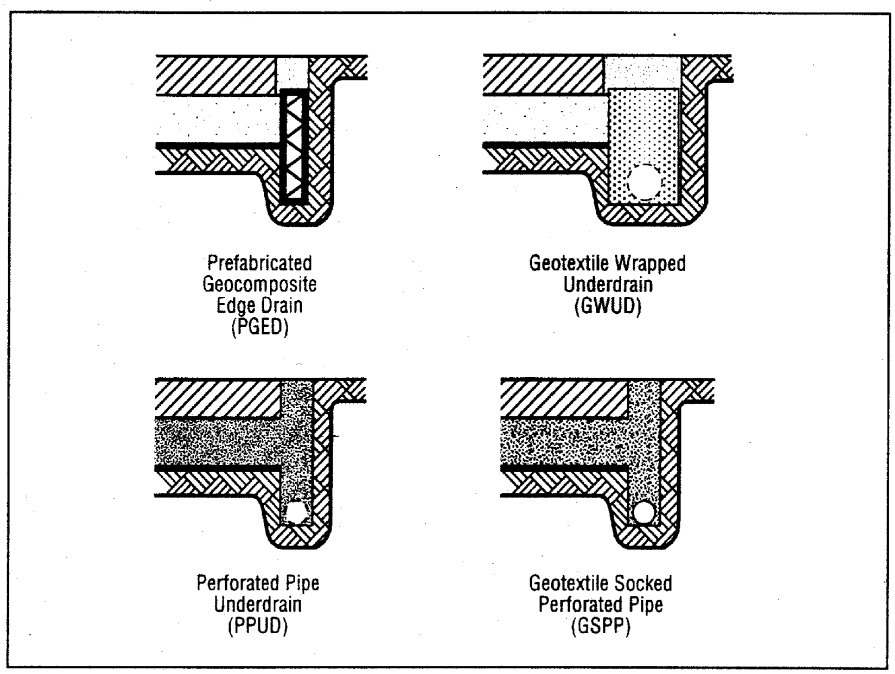


Figure 5.14 Various Types Of Subdrainage Systems Using Geotextiles

Construction Criteria

Experienced contractors who hold a current Basic Level Certificate in the ICPI Contractor Certification Program must perform installation. Contractors holding this certification have been instructed and tested on knowledge of interlocking concrete pavement construction. Construction guidelines are provided in ICPI Tech Spec 2, Construction of Interlocking Concrete Pavements, ICPI Tech Spec No. 9, Guide Specification for the Construction of Interlocking Concrete Pavement, ICPI Tech Spec 10, Application Guide for Interlocking Concrete Pavements, and Zollinger et al. (1998).

PICP typically consists of a soil subgrade, an aggregate base, bedding sand, concrete pavers, edge restraints, and drainage. Geotextiles are sometimes used under the base, over fine, moist subgrade soils to extend the life of the base and reduce the likelihood of deformation.

Preventing and diverting sediment from entering the base and pavement surface during construction must be the highest priority. Preventing muddy construction equipment from entering the area, installing silt fences, and using temporary drainage swales to divert runoff away from the site make a significant difference in keeping the pavement infiltrating well. Practices intended to prevent clogging should be included in the construction drawings and specifications.

Existing pedestrian paths should be studied and defined before a parking lot or plaza is constructed. Vehicle lands, parking spaces, and pedestrian paths as well as spaces for handicapped persons can be delineated with solid concrete pavers.

Soils, Geotextile and Drain Pipes

- Prior to placing the base, the soil subgrade should be compacted to at least 95 percent of standard Proctor density (per ASTM D 698) for pedestrian areas and to a minimum of 95 percent modified Proctor density (per ASTM D 1557) for vehicular applications. Compaction will reduce infiltration rates but is necessary in most applications for increased structural stability. Some soils may not achieve these recommended minimum levels of density. These soils may have a low bearing capacity or be continually wet. If they are under a base that will receive constant vehicular traffic, the soils may need to be stabilized or have drainage designed to remove excess water.
- Geotextiles are used in all permeable pavement applications. Specifications and minimum physical requirements for geotextiles suited to separation and drainage can be found in the reference section. For vehicular applications, high-quality fabric should be specified that resists the puncturing by coarse, angular aggregate from compaction during construction and from repeated wheel loads during its service life.

- Bases should have their sides and bottoms wrapped in geotextile. For open-graded bases, there should be a 12-inch length placed over the compacted No. 8 aggregate along the perimeter. Geotextile should be used between bedding sand and the No. 8 aggregate base to prevent loss of bedding sand into the surface of the larger No. 8 material.
- . Partial or no infiltration designs require pipes to handle storage and outflow from design storms and those from overflow conditions.

Open-Graded Aggregate Bases

- A test section is required for monitoring the aggregate during compaction to determine the settlement of the pavement section. After application of the geotextile, No. 57 base material should be spread in 4- to 6-inch lifts and compacted with a vibratory roller at approximately 1,200 times per minute. At least 4 passes should be made with a minimum 10-ton steel drum roller. The crushed stone should be kept moist during compaction, but water should be kept from wetting the soil subgrade.
- When the base has been compacted, a 3-inch thick layer of leveling course (moist No. 8 crushed stone) is applied to the top surface and pressed into the top of the No. 57 with at least 4 passes of a 10 ton vibratory roller. The No. 8 should be moist in order to facilitate movement into the No. 57.
- After the No. 8 is compacted a 3/4 to 1-in thick layer is loosened evenly across its surface. The pavers are placed on this loosened layer and compacted with a plate compactor. For concrete units 3 1/8 to 4-inch thick, the plate compactor should exert a minimum 5,000 lbf at 75 to 90 Hz. For thicker concrete units, the compactor should exert at least 6,800 lbf.
- The joints or openings are filled with No. 8 material and the paving units are compacted again. Excess stone is removed by sweeping.
- The concrete pavers should be applied immediately after the base and leveling layers have been placed in order to prevent or reduce the chance of construction equipment passing over the base and contaminating it with sediment. Equipment drivers should avoid rapid acceleration, hard braking, or sharp turning on the compacted drainage layer.

Stabilized Bases

- Open-graded bases may be stabilized with asphalt prior to placement. It should be used on the No. 57 layer and not on the No. 8 layer. The use of asphalt will likely reduce the storage capacity of the base, but stabilization may be necessary in weak soils—those subject to frost heave or under high loads.

- To maintain high void space, only enough asphalt to coat the aggregate is required. This is usually 2 to 2 ½ percent asphalt by weight of the aggregate. The asphalt grade should be AC20 or higher.
- Asphalt-stabilized base will need to be compacted at temperatures lower than normal for asphalt pavement. In most cases, the asphalt should cool to less than 200° F before starting compaction.

  Edge restraints: ICPI Tech Spec 3, Edge Restraints for Interlocking Concrete Pavements provides guidance on selection of edge restraints for pavement construction with dense-bases. Recommended edge restraints for permeable interlocking concrete pavements on an open-graded base are cast-in-place and precast concrete. Manufacturers of edge restraints fastened by metal spikes should be consulted as to the suitability of their edge restraint systems on open-graded bases subject to pedestrian or vehicular traffic.

  Bedding sand: As with all interlocking pavements, the gradation of the bedding sand should conform to ASTM C 33 or CSA A23.1. Limestone screenings or stone dust must never be used. The thickness of the bedding sand should be between 1 and 1 1/2 inches and screened to a consistent thickness.

Paver Installation

- PICP concrete pavers are typically installed level to maximize infiltration. Installation can be done by hand or with mechanical equipment. Mechanized installation may be a cost-efficient means to install the units and will reduce the installation time. ICPI Tech Spec 11, Mechanized Installation of Interlocking Concrete Pavements provides detailed information on mechanical installation.
- Like solid pavers, permeable pavers are vibrated into the bedded material with a high frequency (75-90 Hz), low-amplitude plate compactor. The machine should have a minimum centrifugal compaction force of at least 5,000 lbf for settling units 3 1/8 to 4 inches thick. Thicker units will require equipment capable of at least 6,800 lbf. Units should be cut to fill any spaces along the edges prior to compaction. All installed units should be compacted into the bedding sand or No. 8 aggregate and joints filled with the appropriate material at the end of the day.
- The pavers are again compacted.

Operation and Maintenance

Infiltration areas can become clogged with sediment over time, thereby decreasing storage capacity and slowing their infiltration rate. The rate of sedimentation depends on the amount of traffic and other sources that wash sediment into the joints, base, and soil. Since the pavement is detaining runoff with sediments, there may be a need to remove and replace the base material when the infiltration is reduced to where the pavement is no longer performing its job in storing and exfiltrating water.

Economics may prevent this extent of hydrological rehabilitation to the pavement. The best way to ensure enduring infiltration is to prevent sediment from entering the pavement. A well-designed and maintained pavement can be expected to last from 15 to 25 years. Depending on drainage performance, the base may need to be excavated, sediment removed, and clean aggregate reinstated with the same concrete pavers.

The lifetime of the pavement can be extended by pre-treating runoff that originates off site, such as runoff originating from adjacent impervious surfaces. Filter areas or small basins used to capture sediment in urban runoff will reduce the potential for clogging of the PICP. They will also substantially extend the number of years before removal and replacement with clean sand and aggregate are necessary. The length of years added to the infiltrative performance of the pavement may be worth the additional space and initial expenditure.

Permeability has been successfully restored in some PICP projects using conventional street-sweeper equipment with vacuums, water, and brushes.

All PICP should have an observation well to monitor the amount of sediment in the water held in the base. The well is typically a 4- to 6-inch diameter capped pipe that can be uncovered and water samples drawn from time to time.

Snow can be plowed from pavers as with as other pavement. If a unit cracks from soil or base settlement, it should be removed and replaced. Likewise, the same units can be reinstated after repairs to the base, drainpipes, liners, or to underground utilities.

Resource Material

The following references provide detailed information on the technical design and construction of PICP.

AASHTO-AGC-ARTBA Joint Committee. 1990. Guide Specifications and Test Procedures for Geotextiles. Task Force 25 Report. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington DC.

American Association for State Highway and Transportation Officials. 1993a. Designation T-215, Standard Methodology of Test for Permeability of Granular Soils (Constant Head). In Standard Specifications for Transportation Material and Methods of Sampling and Testing, 16th Edition, Part II Tests, Washington, DC.

American Association for State Highway and Transportation Officials. 1993b. Standard Method of Test for the Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 5.5-lb [2.5 kg] Rammer and a 12 in [305 mm] Drop, AASHTO Designation T-99. *In* Standard Specifications for Transportation Material and Methods of Sampling and Testing, 16th Edition, Part II Tests. American Association for State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

American Association for State Highway and Transportation Officials. 1993c. Standard Method of Test for the Relations of Soils Using a 10-lb Rammer and an 18-in Drop, AASHTO Designation T-180. *In* Standard Specifications for Transportation Material and Methods of Sampling and Testing, 16th Edition, Part II Tests, American Association for State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, DC.

American Association for State Highway and Transportation Officials. 1993d. AASHTO Designation T-193. *In* Standard Specifications for Transportation Material and Methods of Sampling and Testing, 16th Edition, Part II Tests, Washington, DC.

American Society for Testing and Materials. 1996. ASTM C 33, Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates. *In* Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol. 04.02. Coshohocken, Pennsylvania.

American Society for Testing and Materials. 1998. ASTM D 698, Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft^3(600 kN-m/m^3)). *In* Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol. 04.08. American Society for Testing and Materials, Conshohocken, Pennsylvania.

American Society for Testing and Materials. 1991. ASTM C 936, Standard Specification for Solid Concrete Interlocking Paving Units. *In* Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol. 04.05., Conshohocken, Pennsylvania.

American Society for Testing and Materials. 1998. ASTM D 1557, Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort. *In* Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol. 04.08, Conshohocken, Pennsylvania.

American Society for Testing and Materials. 1998. ASTM D 1883, Standard Test Method for CBR (California Bearing Ratio) of Laboratory-Compacted Soil. *In* Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol. 04.08, Conshohocken, Pennsylvania.

American Society for Testing Materials. 1998. ASTM D 2434, Standard Test Methodology for Permeability of Granular Soils. *In* Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol. 04.08, Conshohocken, Pennsylvania.

American Society for Testing and Materials. 1998. ASTM D 2487, Standard Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System). *In* Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol. 04.08. American Society for Testing and Materials, Conshohocken, Pennsylvania.

American Society for Testing and Materials. 1995. ASTM D 2940, Standard Specification for Graded Aggregate Material for Bases or Subbases for Highway or Airports. *In* Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol. 04.03. American Society for Testing and Materials, Conshohocken, Pennsylvania.

Asphalt Institute. 1993. Soils Manual for the Design of Asphalt Pavement Structures, MS-10. Fifth Edition, Lexington, Kentucky.

Asphalt Institute. 1989. The Asphalt Handbook. MS-4, Lexington, Kentucky.

Barksdale, R.D., editor. 1991. The Aggregate Handbook, National Stone Association, Washington, DC.

Canadian Standards Association. 1990. CSA A23.1-M90, Concrete Materials and Methods of Concrete Construction. Canadian Standards Association, Rexdale, Ontario.

Canadian Standards Association. 1995. A231.2-95, Precast Concrete Pavers. Rexdale, Ontario, 1995.

Canadian Standards Association. 1999. A231.1-99, Precast Concrete Paving Slabs. Rexdale, Ontario.

Cao, S.L., Poduska, D. and D.G. Zollinger. 1998. Drainage Design and Rutting Performance Guidelines for Permeable Pavement. Texas A & M University, College Station, Texas.

Cedergren, H.R. 1987. Drainage of Highway and Airfield Pavements. Krieger Publishing Company, Malabar, Florida.

Claytor, R.A., and T.R. Schueler. 1996. Design of Storm water Filtering Systems. Center for Watershed Protection, Silver Spring, Maryland.

Debo, T.N., and A.J. Reese. 1995. Municipal Storm Water Management. Lewis Publishers. CBC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

Ferguson, B.K. 1994. Stormwater Infiltration. Lewis Publishers. CBC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

Goforth, G.F., Danuas, E.V. and J.B. Rawhide. 1983. Stormwater Hydrological Characteristics of Porous and Conventional Paving Systems. Municipal Environmental Research Laboratory, Office of Research and Development. US Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, Ohio.

Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute. 1995a. ICPI Tech Spec 1, Glossary of Terms used in the Production, Design, Construction and Testing of Interlocking Concrete Pavement. Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute, Washington DC.

Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute. 1999. ICPI Tech Spec 2, Construction of Interlocking Concrete Pavements. Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute, Washington DC.

Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute. 1995b. ICPI Tech Spec 3, Edge Restraints for Interlocking Concrete Pavement. Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute, Washington DC.

Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute. 1995c. ICPI Tech Spec 4, Structural Design of Interlocking Pavements for Roads and Parking Lots. Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute, Washington DC.

Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute. 1996. ICPI Tech Spec 6, Reinstatement of Interlocking Concrete Pavements. Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute, Washington DC.

Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute. 1999b. ICPI Tech Spec 9, Guide Specification for the Construction of Interlocking Concrete Pavement. Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute, Washington DC.

Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute. 1998.a ICPI Tech Spec 10, Application Guide for Interlocking Concrete Pavements. Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute, Washington DC.

Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute. 1998b. ICPI Tech Spec 11, Mechanical Installation of Interlocking Concrete Pavements. Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute, Washington DC.

KPFF Consulting Engineers. 2000. Eco-Stone Permeable Pavement System Hydraulic Analysis (DRAFT). Project No. 99493. Prepared for Mutual Materials, Seattle, Washington.

Rollings, R.S. and M.P. Rollings. 1999. SF-Rima: A Permeable Paving Stone System. SF Concrete Technologies, Mississauga, Ontario.

Rollings, R.S. and M.P. Rollings. 1993. Design Considerations for the Uni Eco-Stone Concrete Paver. Uni-Group USA, Palm Beach Gardens, Florida.

Shackel, B. 1999. Lockpave Pro 2000, Structural Design of Interlocking Concrete Block Pavements Software Program. Uni-Group USA, Palm Beach, Florida.

Zollinger, D.G., Cao, S.L., and D. Poduska. 1998. Drainage Design and Performance Guidelines for Uni Eco-Stone Permeable Pavement. The Department of Civil Engineering, Texas A & M University. Uni-Group, U.S.A., Palm Springs, Florida.

Chapter 6 - Pretreatment

6.1 Purpose

This chapter presents the methods that may be used to provide pretreatment prior to basic or enhanced runoff treatment facilities. Pretreatment must be provided in the following applications:

- for sand and media filtration and infiltration BMPs to protect them from excessive siltation and debris
- where the basic treatment facility or the receiving water may be adversely affected by non-targeted pollutants (e.g., oil), or may by overwhelmed by a heavy load of targeted pollutants (e.g., suspended solids).

6.2 Application

Presettling basins are a typical pretreatment BMP used to remove suspended solids. All of the basic runoff treatment facilities may also be used for pretreatment to reduce suspended solids. Catchbasin inserts may be appropriate in some circumstances to provide oil or TSS control, depending on the type of insert. Some of the manufactured storm drain structures presented in Chapter 12 may also be used for pretreatment for oil or TSS reduction.

A detention pond sized to meet the flow control standard in Volume I may also be used to provide pretreatment for suspended solids removal.

6.3 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Pretreatment

This Chapter has only one BMP - BMP T6.10 for presettling basins.

BMP T6.10 Presettling Basin

Purpose and Definition

A Presettling Basin provides pretreatment of runoff in order to remove suspended solids, which can impact other runoff treatment BMPs.

Application and Limitations

Runoff treated by a Presettling Basin may not be discharged directly to a receiving water; it must be further treated by a basic or enhanced runoff treatment BMP.

Design Criteria

1. A presettling basin shall be designed with a wetpool. The treatment volume shall be at least 30 percent of the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event.
2. If the runoff in the Presettling Basin will be in direct contact with the soil, it must be lined per the liner requirement in Section 4.4.
3. The Presettling Basin shall conform to the following:
    a) The length-to-width ratio shall be at least 3:1. Berms or baffles may be used to lengthen the flowpath.
    b) The minimum depth shall be 4 feet; the maximum depth shall be 6 feet.
4. Inlets and outlets shall be designed to minimize velocity and reduce turbulence. Inlet and outlet structures should be located at extreme ends of the basin in order to maximize particle-settling opportunities.

Site Constraints and Setbacks

Site constraints are any manmade restrictions such as property lines, easements, structures, etc. that impose constraints on development. Constraints may also be imposed from natural features such as requirements of the local government's Sensitive Areas Ordinance and Rules. These should also be reviewed for specific application to the proposed development.

All facilities shall be a minimum of 20 feet from any structure, property line, and any vegetative buffer required by the local government.

All facilities shall be 100 feet from any septic tank/drainfield (except wet vaults shall be a minimum of 20 feet).

All facilities shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any steep (greater than 15 percent) slope. A geotechnical report must address the potential impact of a wet pond on a steep slope.

Embankments that impound water must comply with the Washington State Dam Safety Regulations (Chapter 173-175 WAC). If the impoundment has a storage capacity (including both water and sediment storage volumes) greater than 10 acre-feet (435,600 cubic feet or 3.26 million gallons) above natural ground level, then dam safety design and review are required by the Department of Ecology. See Volume III for more detail.

Chapter 7 - Infiltration and Bio-infiltration Treatment Facilities

7.1 Purpose

This Chapter provides site suitability, design, and maintenance criteria for infiltration treatment systems. Infiltration treatment Best Management Practices (BMPs) serve the dual purpose of removing pollutants (TSS, heavy metals, phosphates, and organics) from stormwater and recharging aquifers.

A stormwater infiltration treatment facility is an impoundment, typically a basin, trench, or bio-infiltration swale whose underlying soil removes pollutants from stormwater. The infiltration BMPs described in this chapter include:

BMP T7.10 Infiltration basins
BMP T7.20 Infiltration trenches
BMP T7.30 Bio-infiltration swales

Infiltration treatment soils must contain sufficient organic matter and/or clays to sorb, decompose, and/or filter stormwater pollutants. Pollutant/soil contact time, soil sorptive capacity, and soil aerobic conditions are important design considerations.

The earlier sections of this Chapter provide information regarding site criteria, infiltration rates, site suitability, and guidance of a general nature for all of these BMPs. Later in the Chapter, detailed additional design criteria and considerations are provided for each specific BMP.

7.2 Application

These infiltration and bio-infiltration treatment measures are capable of achieving the performance objectives cited in Chapter 3 for specific treatment menus. In general, these treatment techniques can capture and remove or reduce the target pollutants to levels that:

- Will not adversely affect public health or beneficial uses of surface and ground water resources, and
- Will not cause a violation of ground water quality standards

Infiltration treatment systems are typically installed:

- As off-line systems, or on-line for small drainages
- As a polishing treatment for street/highway runoff after pretreatment for TSS and oil
- As part of a treatment train
- As retrofits at sites with limited land areas, such as residential lots, commercial areas, parking lots, and open space areas.
- With appropriate pretreatment for oil and silt control to prevent clogging. Appropriate pretreatment devices include a pre-settling basin, wet pond/vault, biofilter, constructed wetland, media filter, and oil/water separator.

An infiltration basin is preferred, where applicable, and where a trench or bio-infiltration swale cannot be sufficiently maintained.

7.3 General Considerations

Discussed below are several considerations common to infiltration and bio-infiltration treatment.

7.3.1 Site Characterization Criteria

One of the first steps in siting and designing infiltration treatment facilities is to conduct a characterization study. Information gathered during initial geotechnical investigations can be used for the site characterization. Some of the key data and issues to be characterized includes the following:

Surface Features Characterization:

- Topography within 500 feet of the proposed facility.
- Anticipated site use (street/highway, residential, commercial, high-use site).
- Location of water supply wells within 500 feet of proposed facility.
- Location of ground water protection areas and/or 1, 5 and 10 year time of travel zones for municipal well protection areas.
- A description of local site geology, including soil or rock units likely to be encountered, the groundwater regime, and geologic history of the site.

Subsurface Characterization

- Subsurface explorations (test holes or test pits) to a depth below the base of the infiltration facility of at least 5 times the maximum design depth of ponded water proposed for the infiltration facility,

- Continuous sampling (representative samples from each soil type and/or unit within the infiltration receptor) to a depth below the base of the infiltration facility of 2.5 times the maximum design ponded water depth, but not less than 6 feet.
  - For basins, at least one test pit or test hole per 5,000 ft^2 of basin infiltrating surface (in no case less than two per basin).
  - For trenches, at least one test pit or test hole per 50 feet of trench length (in no case less than two per trench).

    Note: The depth and number of test holes or test pits, and samples should be increased, if in the judgment of a licensed engineer with geotechnical expertise (P.E.), or other licensed professional acceptable to the local jurisdiction, the conditions are highly variable and such increases are necessary to accurately estimate the performance of the infiltration system. The exploration program may also be decreased if, in the opinion of the licensed engineer or other professional, the conditions are relatively uniform and the borings/test pits omitted will not influence the design or successful operation of the facility. In high water table sites the subsurface exploration sampling need not be conducted lower than two (2) feet below the ground water table.

- Prepare detailed logs for each test pit or test hole and a map showing the location of the test pits or test holes. Logs must include at a minimum, depth of pit or hole, soil descriptions, depth to water, presence of stratification.

  Note: Logs must substantiate whether stratification does or does not exist. The licensed professional may consider additional methods of analysis to substantiate the presence of stratification that will significantly impact the design of the infiltration facility.

Infiltration Rate Determination

Determine the representative infiltration rate of the unsaturated vadose zone based on field infiltration tests and/or grain size/texture determinations. Field infiltration rates can be determined using the Pilot Infiltration Test (see PIT-Appendix V-B). Such site testing should be considered to verify infiltration rate estimates based on soil size distribution and/or texture. Infiltration rates may also be estimated based on soil grain-size distributions from test pits or test hole samples. This may be particularly useful where a sufficient source of water does not exist to conduct a pilot infiltration test. As a minimum, one soil grain-size analysis per soil stratum in each test hole shall be performed within 2.5 times the maximum design water depth, but not less than 6 feet.

The infiltration rate is needed for routing and sizing purposes and for classifying the soil for treatment adequacy.

Soil Testing

Soil Characterization for each soil unit (soils of the same texture, color, density, compaction, consolidation and permeability) encountered should include:

- Grain-size distribution (ASTM D422 or equivalent AASHTO specification)
- Textural class (USDA) (See Figure 7.1)
- Percent clay content (include type of clay, if known)
- Cation exchange capacity (CEC) and organic matter content for each soil type and strata. Where distinct changes in soil properties occur, to a depth below the base of the facility of at least 2.5 times the maximum design water depth, but not less than 6 feet. Consider if soils are already contaminated, thus diminishing pollutant sorptive capacity.
- For soils with low CEC and organic content, deeper characterization of soils may be warranted (refer to Section 7.3.3 Site Suitability Criteria)
- Color/mottling
- Variations and nature of stratification

Infiltration Receptor

Infiltration receptor (unsaturated and saturated soil receiving the stormwater) characterization should include:

- Installation of ground water monitoring wells. Use at least three per infiltration facility, or three hydraulically connected surface and ground water features. This will establish a three-dimensional relationship for the ground water table, unless the highest ground water level is known to be at least 50 feet below the proposed infiltration facility. The monitoring wells will:
  - monitor the seasonal ground water levels at the site during at least one wet season, and,
  - consider the potential for both unconfined and confined aquifers, or confining units, at the site that may influence the proposed infiltration facility as well as the groundwater gradient. Other approaches to determine ground water levels at the proposed site could be considered if pre-approved by the local government jurisdiction, and,
  - determine the ambient ground water quality, if that is a concern.
- An estimate of the volumetric water holding capacity of the infiltration receptor soil. This is the soil layer below the infiltration facility and above the seasonal high-water mark, bedrock, hardpan, or other low

permeability layer. This analysis should be conducted at a conservatively high infiltration rate based on vadose zone porosity, and the water quality runoff volume to be infiltrated. This, along with an analysis of ground water movement, will be useful in determining if there are volumetric limitations that would adversely affect drawdown.

- Depth to ground water table and to bedrock/impermeable layers
- Seasonal variation of ground water table based on well water levels and observed mottling
- Existing ground water flow direction and gradient
- Lateral extent of infiltration receptor
- Horizontal hydraulic conductivity of the saturated zone to assess the aquifer's ability to laterally transport the infiltrated water.
- Impact of the infiltration rate and volume at the project site on ground water mounding, flow direction, and water table; and the discharge point or area of the infiltrating water. A ground water mounding analysis should be conducted at all sites where the depth to seasonal ground water table or low permeability stratum is less than 15 feet and the runoff to the infiltration facility is from more than one acre. The site professional can consider conducting an aquifer test, or slug test and the type of ground water mounding analysis necessary at the site.

  Note: A detailed soils and hydrogeologic investigation should be conducted if potential pollutant impacts to ground water are a concern, or if the applicant is proposing to infiltrate in areas underlain by till or other impermeable layers. (Suggested references: "Implementation Guidance for the Ground Water Quality Standards", Department of Ecology, publication 96-2, 1996, and, "Washington State Water Quality Guide," Natural Resources Conservation Service, W. 316 Boone Ave, Spokane, WA 99201-2348).

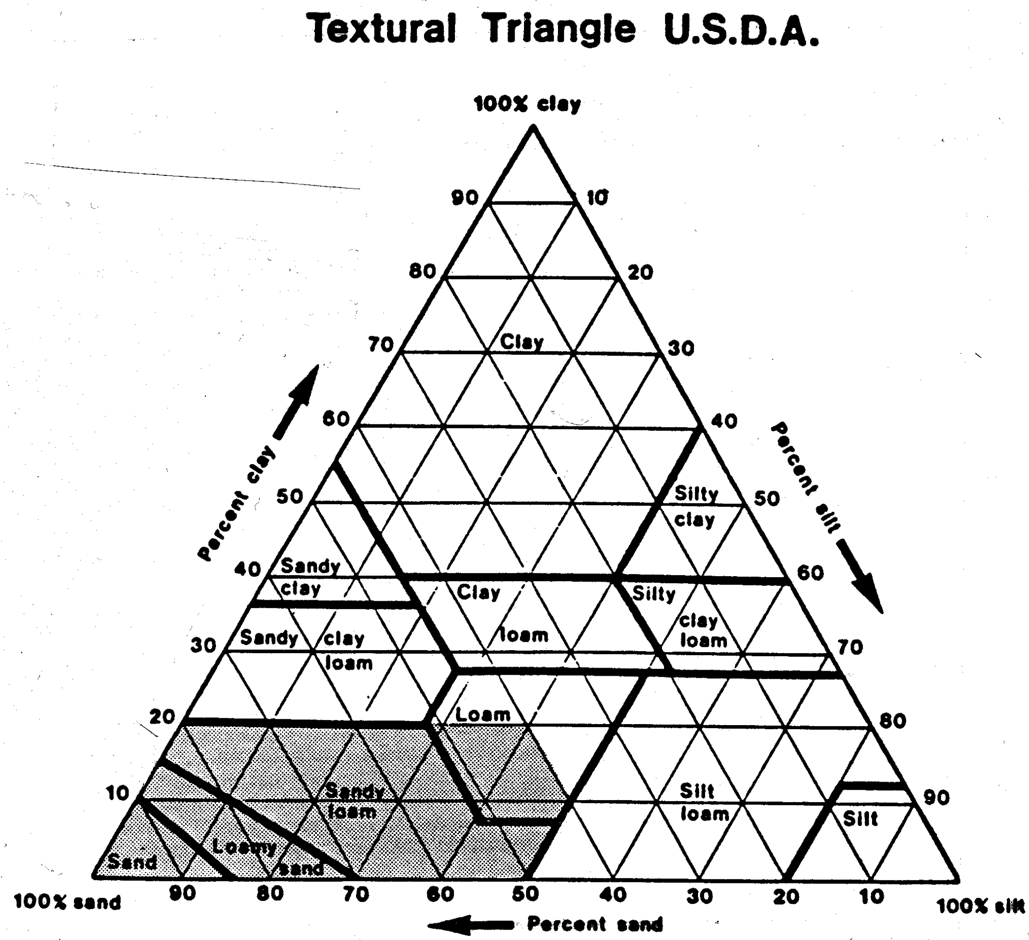


Figure 7.1 USDA Textural Triangle
Note: Shaded area applicable for design of infiltration BMPs

Source: USDA (reproduced with permission)

7.3.2 Design Infiltration Rate Determination

Infiltration rates for treatment can be determined using either a correlation to grain size distribution from soil samples, textural analysis, or by in-situ field measurements. Short-term infiltration rates up to 2.4 in./hr represent soils that typically have sufficient treatment properties. Long-term infiltration rates are used for sizing the infiltration pond based on maximum pond level and drawdown time. Long-term infiltration rates up to 2.0 inches per hour can also be considered for treatment if SSC-4 and SSC-6 are met, as defined in Section 7.3.3.

Historically, infiltration rates have been estimated from soil grain size distribution (gradation) data using the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) textural analysis approach. To use the USDA textural analysis approach, the grain size distribution test must be conducted in accordance with the USDA test procedure (SOIL SURVEY

MANUAL, U.S. Department of Agriculture, October 1993, page 136). This manual only considers soil passing the #10 sieve (2 mm) (U.S. Standard) to determine percentages of sand, silt, and clay for use in Figure 7.1 (USDA Textural Triangle). However, many soil test laboratories use the ASTM soil size distribution test procedure (ASTM D422), which considers the full range of soil particle sizes, to develop soil size distribution curves. The ASTM soil gradation procedure must not be used with Figure 7.1.

Three Methods for Determining Long-term Infiltration Rate for Sizing the Infiltration Basin, Trench, or Swale

For designing the infiltration facility, the site professional should select one of the three methods described below that will best represent the long-term infiltration rate at the site. The long-term infiltration rate should be used for routing and sizing the basin/trench for the maximum drawdown time of 24 hours. It is suggested that Method 1 be used to corroborate and compare the infiltration rate estimates of the other methods, using the appropriate correction factors. Verification testing of the completed facility is strongly encouraged using Site Suitability Criterion (SSC) # 9.

Method 1 — USDA Soil Textural Classification

Table 7.1 correlates USDA soil texture and infiltration rates for homogeneous soils. It is based on the correlation developed by Rawls, et. al., with minor changes in the infiltration rates based on WEF/ASCE (1998). The infiltration rates provided in Table 7.1 represent short-term conservative rates for homogeneous soils which should be used for treatment soil suitability determinations. However, these rates do not represent the effects of site variability and long-term clogging due to siltation and biomass buildup in the infiltration facility.

Table 7.1 Recommended Infiltration Rates based on USDA Soil Textural Classification.

	*Short-Term Infiltration Rate (in./hr)	Correction Factor, CF	Estimated Long-Term (Design) Infiltration Rate (in./hr)
Clean sandy gravels and gravelly sands (i.e., 90% of the total soil sample is retained in the #10 sieve)	20	2	10 **
Sand	8	4	2***
Loamy Sand	2	4	0.5
Sandy Loam	1	4	0.25
Loam	0.5	4	0.13

* From WEF/ASCE, 1998.
** Not recommended for treatment
*** Refer to SSC-4 and SSC-6 for treatment acceptability criteria

To determine long-term infiltration rates, Ecology's Technical Advisory Committee (TAC) recommends that the short-term infiltration rates be reduced as shown in Table 7.1. A correction factor of 2 to 4 is assigned, depending on the soil textural classification. These correction factors (CF) consider an average degree of long-term facility maintenance, TSS reduction through pretreatment, and site variability in the subsurface conditions (due to a deposit of ancient landslide debris, buried stream channels, lateral grain size variability, etc. that affect homogeneity).

In no case shall a correction factor less than 2.0 be used.

However, these correction factors could be reduced, subject to the approval of the local jurisdiction, under the following conditions:

- For sites with little soil variability,
- Where there will be a high degree of long-term facility maintenance,
- Where specific, reliable pretreatment is employed to reduce TSS entering the infiltration facility

Correction factors higher than those provided in Table 7.1 should be considered for situations where: long-term maintenance will be difficult to implement; where little or no pretreatment is anticipated; or, where site conditions are highly variable or uncertain. These situations require the use of best professional judgment by the site engineer and the approval of the local jurisdiction. An Operation and Maintenance plan and a financial bonding plan may also be required by the local jurisdiction.

Method 2 — ASTM Gradation Testing at Full Scale Infiltration Facilities

As an alternative to Table 7.1, recent studies by Massmann and Butchart were used to develop long-term infiltration rates provided in Table 7.2. These studies compare infiltration measurements from full-scale infiltration facilities to soil gradation data developed using the ASTM procedure (ASTM D422). The data that forms the basis for Table 7.2 was from soils that would be classified as sands or sandy gravels. No data was available for finer soils. Therefore, Table 7.2 should not be used for soils with a d_{10} size (10% passing the size listed) less than 0.05 mm (U.S. Standard Sieve).

The primary source of the data used by Massmann and Butchart was from Wiltsie (1998), who included limited infiltration studies only on Thurston County sites. However, Massmann and Butchart also included limited data from King and Clark County sites in their analysis. This table provides recommended long-term infiltration rates that have been correlated to soil gradation parameters using the ASTM soil gradation procedure.

Table 7.2 can be used to estimate long-term design infiltration rates directly from soil gradation data, subject to the approval of the local jurisdiction. As is true of Table 7.1, the long-term rates provided in Table 7.2 represent average conditions regarding site variability, the degree of long-term maintenance and pretreatment for Total Suspended Solids (TSS) control. The long-term infiltration rates in Table 7.2 may need to be decreased if the site is highly variable, or if maintenance and influent characteristics are not well controlled.

Table 7.2 Alternative Infiltration Rates Based on ASTM Gradation Testing.

D_{10} Size from ASTM D422 Soil Gradation Test (mm)	Estimated Long-Term (Design) Infiltration Rate (in./hr)
$\geq$ 0.4	9*
0.3	6.5*
0.2	3.5*
0.1	2.0**
0.05	0.8

* Not recommended for treatment
** Refer to SSC-4 and SSC-6 for treatment acceptability criteria

The infiltration rates provided in Tables 7.1 and 7.2 represent rates for homogeneous soil conditions. If more than one soil unit is encountered within 6 feet of the base of the facility, or 2.5 times the proposed maximum water design depth, use the lowest infiltration rate determined from each of the soil units as the representative site infiltration rate.

If soil mottling, fine silt or clay layers, which cannot be fully represented in the soil gradation tests, are present below the bottom of the infiltration pond, the infiltration rates provided in the tables will be too high and should be reduced. Based on limited full-scale infiltration data (Massmann and Butchart, 2000; Wiltsie, 1998), it appears that the presence of mottling indicates soil conditions that reduce the infiltration rate for homogeneous conditions by a factor of 3 to 4.

Method 3 - In-situ Infiltration Measurements or Pilot Infiltration Tests (PIT)

Where practicable, Ecology encourages in-situ infiltration measurements, using a procedure such as the Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT) described in Appendix V-B. Small-scale infiltration tests such as the EPA Falling Head or double ring infiltrometer test (ASTM D3385-88) are not recommended unless modified versions are determined to be acceptable by Ecology or the local jurisdiction.

As with the previous methods, the infiltration rate obtained from the PIT shall be considered to be a short-term rate. To obtain long-term infiltration rates the short-term rates must be reduced by applying a total correction factor. The total correction factor is the sum of the partial correction factors, presented in Table 7.3, that account for site variability, number of tests conducted, degree of long-term maintenance, influent pretreatment/control, and potential for long-term clogging due to siltation and bio-buildup.

The typical range of partial correction factors to account for these issues based on TAC experience, is summarized in Table 7.3. The range of partial correction factors is for general guidance only. The specific partial correction factors used shall be determined based on the professional judgment of the licensed engineer or other site professional considering all issues which may affect the long-term infiltration rate, subject to the approval of the local jurisdictional authority**.**

Table 7.3 -- Correction Factors to be Used With In-Situ Infiltration Measurements to Estimate Long-Term Design Infiltration Rates.

Issue	Partial Correction Factor
Site variability and number of locations tested	CF_v = 1.5 to 6
Degree of long-term maintenance to prevent siltation and bio-buildup	CF_m = 2 to 6
Degree of influent control to prevent siltation and bio-buildup	CF_i = 2 to 6

Total Correction Factor (CF) = $CF_v + CF_m + CF_i$

The following discussions are to provide guidance in determining the partial correction factors to apply in Table 7.3.

Site variability and number of locations tested. The number of locations tested must be capable of representing the subsurface conditions throughout the facility site. The partial correction factor used for this issue varies directly with the level of uncertainty for the occurrence of adverse subsurface conditions. If the range of uncertainty is low (for example, conditions are known to be uniform through previous exploration and site geological factors), one pilot infiltration test may be adequate to justify a partial correction factor at the low end of the range. If the level of uncertainty is high, due to highly variable site conditions or limited local testing data, a partial correction factor near the high end of the range may be appropriate. This might be the case where the site conditions are highly variable due to a deposit of ancient landslide debris, or buried stream channels. In these cases, even with many explorations and several pilot infiltration tests, the level of uncertainty may still be high.

Degree of long-term maintenance to prevent siltation and bio-buildup. The standard of comparison here is the long-term maintenance requirements provided in Section 4.6, and any additional requirements by local jurisdictional authorities. Full compliance with these requirements would be justification to use a partial correction factor at the low end of the range. If there is a high degree of uncertainty that long-term maintenance will be carried out consistently, or if the maintenance plan is poorly defined, a partial correction factor near the high end of the range may be justified.

Degree of influent control to prevent siltation and bio-buildup. A partial correction factor near the high end of the range may be justified under the following circumstances:

- If the infiltration facility is located in a shady area where moss or litter fall buildup from the surrounding vegetation is likely and cannot be easily controlled through long-term maintenance.
- If there is minimal pre-treatment, and the influent is likely to contain moderately-high TSS levels.

If influent into the facility can be well controlled such that the planned long-term maintenance can easily manage siltation and biomass buildup, then a partial correction factor near the low end of the range may be justified.

The determination of long-term design infiltration rates from in-situ infiltration test data involves a considerable amount of engineering judgment. Therefore, when reviewing or determining the final long-term design infiltration rate, the local jurisdictional authority should consider the results of both textural analyses and in-situ infiltration tests results when available.

7.3.3 Site Suitability Criteria (SSC)

This section specifies the site suitability criteria that must be considered for siting infiltration treatment systems. When a site investigation reveals that any of the nine applicable criteria cannot be met, appropriate mitigation measures must be implemented so that the infiltration facility will not pose a threat to safety, health, and the environment.

For infiltration treatment, site selection and design decisions, a geotechnical and hydrogeologic report should be prepared by a qualified engineer with geotechnical and hydrogeologic experience. A comparable professional, acceptable to the local jurisdiction, may also conduct the work if it is under the seal of a registered Professional Engineer. The design engineer may utilize a team of certified or registered professionals in soil science, hydrogeology, geology, and other related fields.

The nine site suitability criteria are as follows:

SSC-1 Setback Criteria

Setback requirements are generally required by local regulations, uniform building code requirements, or state regulations. These Setback Criteria are provided as guidance.

- From drinking water wells, septic tanks or drainfields, and springs used for public drinking water supplies. Infiltration facilities upgradient of drinking water supplies and within 1, 5, and 10-year time of travel zones must comply with Health Department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, DOH, 12/93).
  ≥100 feet

  Note: Additional setbacks must be considered if roadway deicers or herbicides are likely to be present in the influent to the infiltration system.
- From building foundations
  ≥ 20 feet downslope and ≥100 feet upslope
- From a Native Growth Protection Easement (NGPE)
  ≥20 feet
- From the top of slopes >15%
  ≥ 50 feet

Also evaluate on-site and off-site structural stability due to extended subgrade saturation and/or head loading of the permeable layer, including the potential impacts to downgradient properties, especially on hills with known side-hill seeps.

SSC-2 Ground Water Protection Areas

A site is not suitable if the infiltrated stormwater will cause a violation of Ecology's Ground Water Quality Standards. Local jurisdictions should be consulted for applicable pretreatment requirements and whether the site is located in an aquifer sensitive area, sole source aquifer, or a wellhead protection zone. See SSC-9 for verification testing guidance.

SSC-3 High Vehicle Traffic Areas

Treatment infiltration BMPs may be considered for runoff from areas of industrial activity and the high vehicle traffic areas described below, if appropriate pretreatment (including oil removal) is provided to ensure that ground water quality standards will not be violated and that the infiltration facility will not be adversely affected.

High Vehicle Traffic Areas are:

- Commercial or industrial sites subject to an expected average daily traffic count (ADT) ≥100 vehicles/1,000 ft² gross building area (trip generation); and
- Road intersections with an ADT of ≥ 25,000 on the main roadway, or ≥ 15,000 on any intersecting roadway.

SSC-4 Soil Infiltration Rate/Drawdown Time

Infiltration Rates-Short-term and long-term:

For treatment purposes the short-term soil infiltration rate should be 2.4 in./hour, or less, to a depth of 2.5 times the maximum design pond water depth, or a minimum of 6 ft. below the base of the infiltration facility. This infiltration rate is also typical for soil textures that possess sufficient physical and chemical properties for adequate treatment, particularly for soluble pollutant removal (see SSC-6). It is comparable to the textures represented by Hydrologic Groups B and C. Long-term infiltration rates up to 2.0 inches/hour can also be considered, if the infiltration receptor is not a sole-source aquifer, and in the judgment of the site professional, the treatment soil has characteristics comparable to those specified in SSC-6 to adequately control the target pollutants.

The long-term infiltration rate should also be used for maximum drawdown time and routing calculations.

Drawdown Time:

It is necessary to empty the maximum ponded depth (water quality volume) from the infiltration basin within 24 hours from the completion of inflow to the storage pond in order to meet the following objectives:

- restore hydraulic capacity to receive runoff from a new storm
- maintain infiltration rates
- aerate vegetation and soil to keep the vegetation healthy
- enhance the biodegradation of pollutants and organics in the soil.

SSC-5 Depth to Bedrock, Water Table, or Impermeable Layer

The base of all infiltration basins or trench systems shall be ≥ 5 feet above the seasonal high-water mark, bedrock (or hardpan) or other low permeability layer. A minimum separation of 3 feet may be considered if the ground water mounding analysis, volumetric receptor capacity, and the design of the overflow and/or bypass structures are judged by the site professional to be adequate to prevent overtopping and to meet the site suitability criteria specified in this section.

SSC-6 Soil Physical and Chemical Suitability for Treatment

The soil texture and design infiltration rates should be considered along with the physical and chemical characteristics specified below to determine if the soil is adequate for removing the target pollutants. The following soil properties must be carefully considered in making such a determination;

- Cation exchange capacity (CEC) of the treatment soil must be ≥5 milliequivalents CEC/100 g dry soil (USEPA Method 9081). *Consider empirical testing of soil sorption capacity, if practicable.* Ensure that soil CEC is sufficient for expected pollutant loadings, particularly heavy metals. CEC values of >5 meq/100g are expected in loamy sands, according to Rawls, et al. Lower CEC content may be considered if it is based on a soil loading capacity determination for the target pollutants that is accepted by the local jurisdiction.
- Depth of soil used for infiltration treatment must be a minimum of 18 inches.
- Organic Content of the treatment soil (ASTM D 2974): Organic matter can increase the sorptive capacity of the soil for some pollutants. The site professional should evaluate whether the organic matter content is sufficient for control of the target pollutant(s).
- Waste fill materials should not be used as infiltration soil media nor should such media be placed over uncontrolled or non-engineered fill soils.
- Engineered soils may be used to meet the design criteria in this chapter and the performance goals in Chapters 3 and 4. Field performance evaluation(s), using acceptable protocols, would be needed to determine feasibility, and acceptability by the local jurisdiction. See also Chapter 12.

SSC-7 Seepage Analysis and Control

Determine whether there would be any adverse effects caused by seepage zones on nearby building foundations, basements, roads, parking lots or sloping sites.

SSC-8 Cold Climate and Impact of Roadway deicers

- For cold climate design criteria (snowmelt/ice impacts) refer to D. Caraco and R. Claytor (1997).
- Potential impact of roadway deicers on potable water wells must be considered in the siting determination. Mitigation measures must be implemented if infiltration of roadway deicers can cause a violation of ground water quality standards.

SSC-9 Verification Testing of the Completed Facility

Verification testing of the completed full-scale infiltration facility is recommended to confirm that the design infiltration parameters are adequate to manage the design volume and meet the pollutant capture objectives of the infiltrating soil. The site professional should determine the duration and frequency of the verification testing program for the potentially impacted ground water. The ground water monitoring wells installed during site characterization may be used for this purpose. Long-term in-situ drawdown and water quality monitoring for a two-year period, would be preferable.

7.3.4 General Information for Infiltration Basins, Trenches, and Bio-infiltration Swales

This section covers general design, construction, and maintenance criteria that apply to infiltration basins, trenches, and bio-infiltration swales.

Sizing Criteria

Size should be determined by one of the following methods:

1) Routing 91% of the runoff volume, as predicted by Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) (or an approved, equivalent continuous runoff model) through the facility; or

2) Using the Simple Method, discussed below, that infiltrates the Water Quality Design Storm Volume within 24 hours.

Off-line versus On-line Treatment

Infiltration facilities for treatment can be located upstream or downstream of detention and can be off-line or on-line. For off-line facilities, the flow splitter should be designed to route the water quality design flow rate to the infiltration facility. Until a continuous runoff model is available that identifies the flow rate associated with 91% of the runoff volume, use:

- estimate for that flow rate as identified in Chapter 4 for upstream facilities;
- 2-year return frequency flow rate for flows downstream of detention.

The storage pond above the infiltration surface should not overflow since all flows routed to it are at or below the water quality design flow rate.

Note: An emergency overflow should still be included in the design. See Chapter 4 for flow splitter design details.

For on-line infiltration facilities, the storage pond should be sized to restrict the total amount of overflow to 9% of the total runoff volume of the long-term time series or less depending on the design objective.

Note: Refer to Volume III for overflow structure design details

Method of Design and Sizing Criteria Procedure

- **Simple Method**

  $A_{inf} = A_t Q_d / Ft$

  A_{inf} = Bottom surface area of infiltration facility
  A_t = tributary drainage area
  Q_d = the runoff depth for the 6-month, 24-hour storm, estimated using the SCS (NRCS) Curve Number Equations approach detailed in Volume III, Chapter 2.
  F = long-term infiltration rate
  t = 24 hours maximum drawdown time

- **Continuous Runoff Method**

  Refer to Chapter 8 for sizing sand filters using the Continuous Runoff Model Sizing Method. The only difference for sizing an infiltration facility is that the infiltration rate is a function only of surface area and ponded hydraulic head does not play a role. The long-term infiltration rate, as determined in Section 7.3.2 is multiplied by the horizontal surface area of an infiltration bed to obtain a volumetric infiltration rate that is input to the WWHM as a stage-storage-discharge table.

  Note: Horizontal surface area changes with stage if the sidewalls are sloped.

- **Control of Side-Wall Seepage**

  Typically, side-wall seepage is not a concern if seepage occurs through the same stratum as the bottom of the facility. However, for engineered soils or for soils with very low permeability, the potential to bypass the treatment soil through the side-walls may be significant. In those cases, the side-walls must be lined, either with an impervious liner or with at least 18 inches of treatment soil, to prevent seepage of untreated flows through the side walls.

- **Construction Criteria**

  – Excavation - Initial excavation should be conducted to within 1-foot of the final elevation of the floor of the infiltration facility. Final excavation to the finished grade should be deferred until all disturbed areas in the upgradient watershed have been stabilized or protected. The final phase of excavation should remove all accumulated sediment. After construction is completed, prevent sediment from entering the infiltration facility by first conveying the runoff water through an appropriate pretreatment system such as a pre-settling basin, wet pond, or sand filter.

  – Infiltration facilities should generally not be used as temporary sediment traps during construction. If an infiltration facility is to be used as a sediment trap, it must not be excavated to final grade until after the upgradient drainage area has been stabilized. Any accumulation of silt in the basin must be removed before putting it in service.

- Traffic Control - Relatively light-tracked equipment is recommended for excavation to avoid compaction of the floor of the infiltration facility. The use of draglines and trackhoes should be considered. The infiltration area should be flagged or marked to keep equipment away.

- **Maintenance Criteria**

  Provision should be made for regular and perpetual maintenance of the infiltration basin/trench, including replacement and/or reconstruction of the treatment infiltration medium. Maintenance should be conducted when water remains in the basin or trench for more than 24 hours or overflows the basin/pond. Adequate access for O&M must be included in the design of infiltration basins and trenches. An Operation and Maintenance Plan, approved by the local jurisdiction, should ensure maintaining the desired efficiency of the infiltration facility.

  Debris/sediment accumulation- Removal of accumulated debris/sediment in the basin/trench should be conducted every 6 months or as needed to prevent clogging, or when water remains in the pond for greater than 24hours.

  The treatment soil should be replaced or amended as needed to ensure maintaining adequate treatment capacity.

- **Verification of Performance**

  During the first 1-2 years of operation verification testing as specified in SSC-9, is strongly recommended, along with a maintenance program that achieves expected performance levels. Operating and maintaining ground water monitoring wells is also strongly encouraged.

7.4 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Infiltration and Bio-infiltration Treatment

The three BMPs discussed below are recognized currently as effective treatment techniques using infiltration and bio-infiltration. Selection of a specific BMP should be coordinated with the Treatment Facility Menus provided in Chapter 3.

BMP T7.10 Infiltration Basins

Description:

Infiltration basins are typically earthen impoundments with a grass cover, as shown schematically in Figure 7.2. - Example Infiltration Basin/Pond.

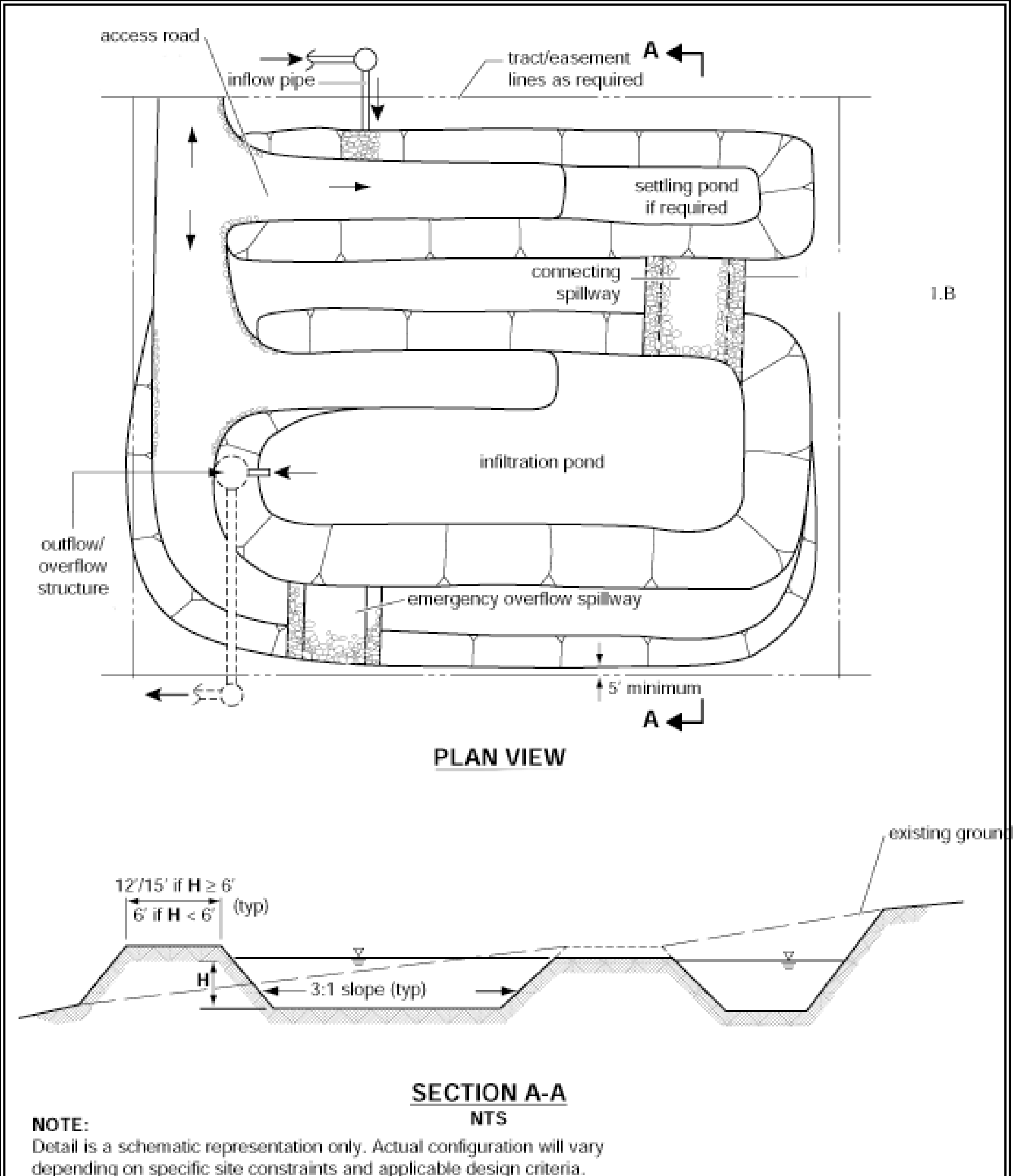


Figure 7.2 Example Infiltration Basin/Pond

Source: King County (reproduced with permission)

Additional Design Criteria specific for Basins

- The slope of the basin bottom should not exceed 3% in any direction.

- Treatment infiltration basins must have sufficient vegetation established on the basin floor and side slopes to prevent erosion and sloughing of the sideslopes and to provide additional pollutant removal. Erosion protection of inflow points to the basin must also be provided (e.g., riprap, flow spreaders, energy dissipaters). Select suitable vegetative materials for the basin floor and side slopes to be stabilized. Refer to Chapter 9 for recommended vegetation.

- A minimum of 1-foot of freeboard is recommended when establishing the design water depth at the long-term infiltration rate. Freeboard is measured from the rim of the infiltration facility to the maximum ponding level or from the rim down to the overflow point.

- A non-erodible outlet or spillway must be established at a proper elevation to discharge overflow. Ponding level, drawdown time, and storage volume are calculated from that reference point.

Maintenance Criteria Specific for Basins

- Maintain basin floor and side slopes to promote dense turf with extensive root growth. This enhances infiltration, prevents erosion and consequent sedimentation of the basin floor, and prevents invasive weed growth. Bare spots are to be immediately stabilized and revegetated. Vegetation growth should not be allowed to exceed 18 inches in height. Mow the slopes periodically and check for clogging, and erosion.

- Seed mixtures should be the same as those recommended in Chapter 9. The use of low-growing, stoloniferous grasses will permit long intervals between mowing. Mowing twice a year is generally satisfactory. Fertilizers should be applied only as necessary and in limited amounts to avoid contributing to the pollution problems, including ground water pollution. Consult the local extension agency for appropriate fertilizer types, including slow release fertilizers, and application rates.

BMP T7.20 Infiltration Trenches

Description:

Infiltration trenches are generally at least 24 inches wide, and are backfilled with a coarse stone aggregate, allowing for temporary storage of stormwater runoff in the voids of the aggregate material. Stored runoff then gradually infiltrates into the surrounding soil. The surface of the trench can be covered with grating and/or consist of stone, gabion, sand, or a grassed covered area with a surface inlet. Perforated rigid pipe of at least 8-inch diameter can also be used to distribute the stormwater in a stone trench. Trench configurations by Schueler (Figures 7.3 – 7.8) with inlet filter strips and/ or 6-12 inches bottom sand layers are shown.

Due to accessibility and maintenance limitations infiltration trenches must be carefully designed, constructed and maintained.

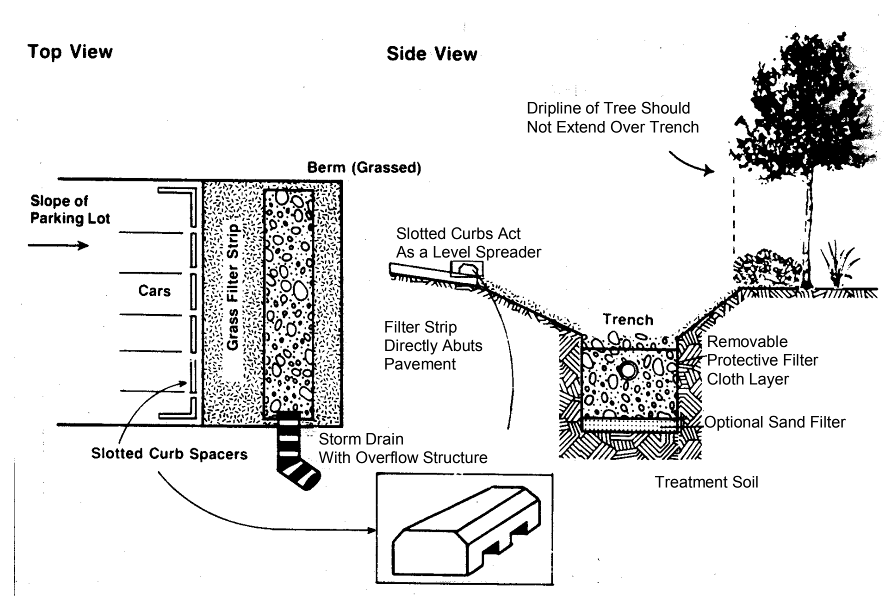


Figure 7.3 Parking Lot Perimeter Trench Design

Source: Schueler (reproduced with permission)

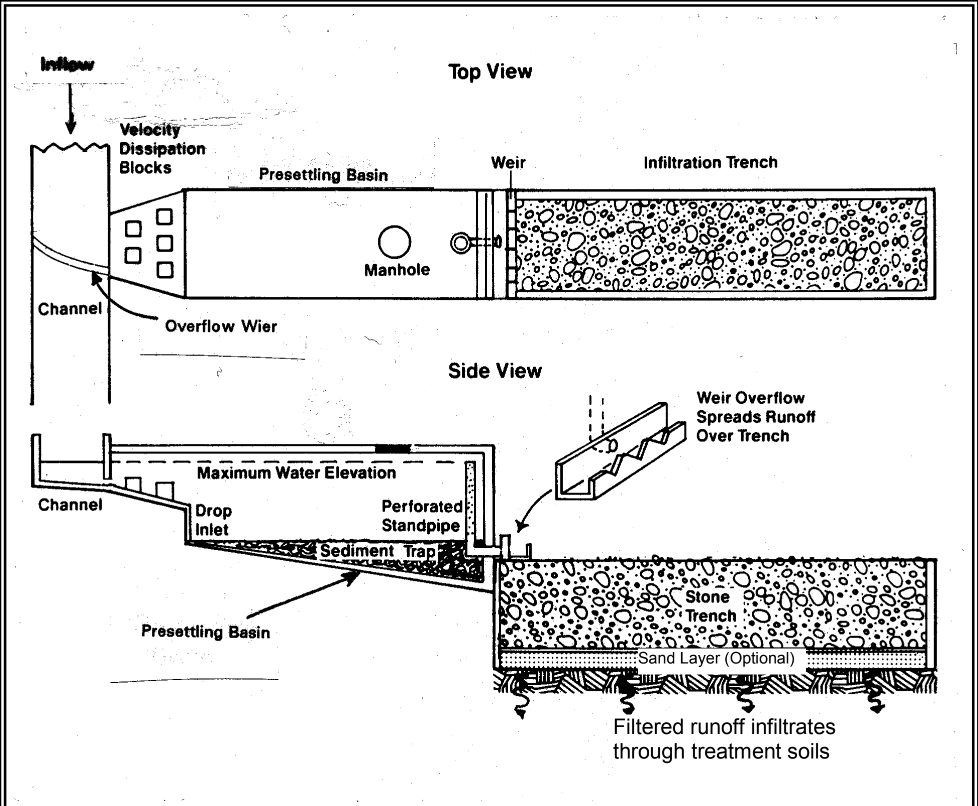


Figure 7.4 Infiltration Trench System

Source: Schueler (reproduced with permission)

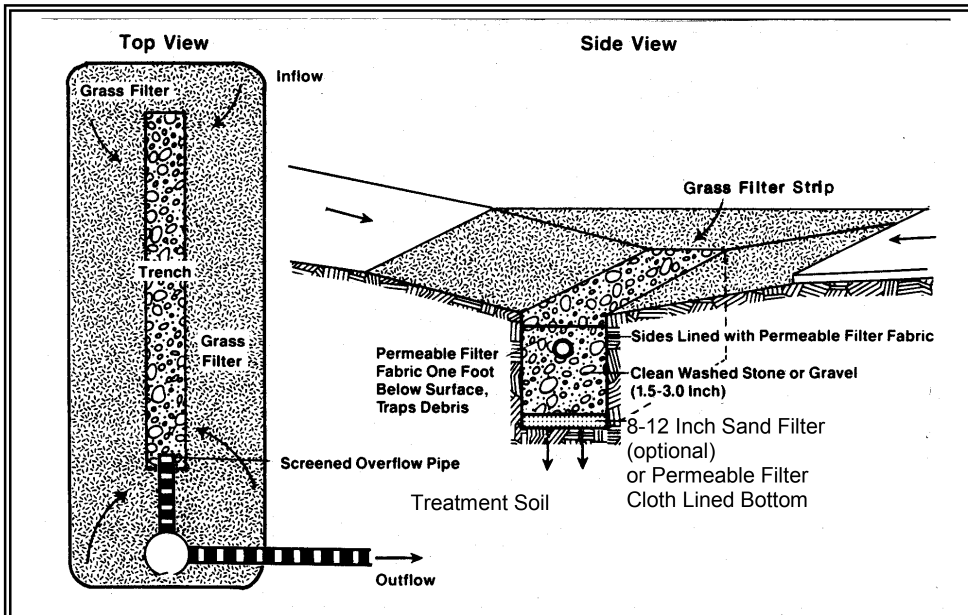


Figure 7.5 Median Strip Trench Design

Source: Schueler (produced with permission)

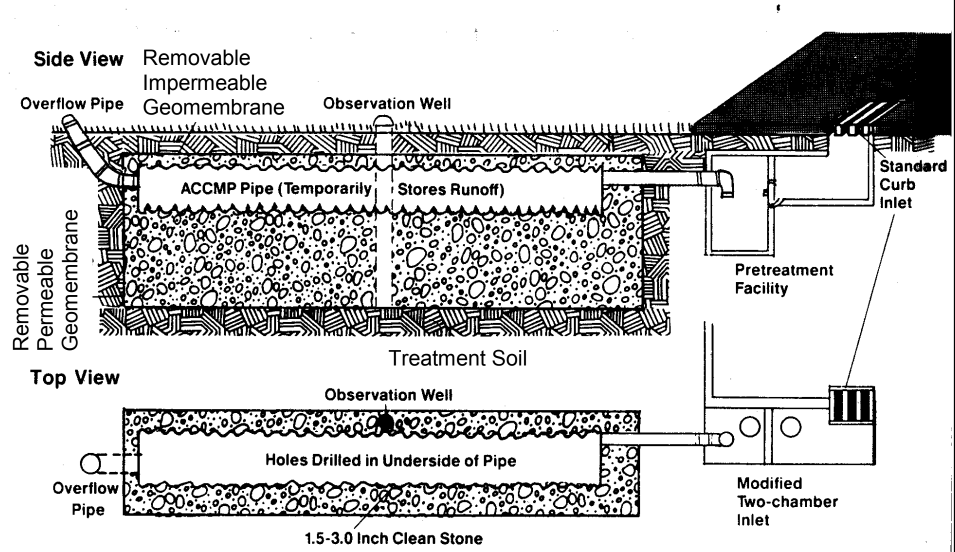


Figure 7.6 Oversized Pipe Trench Design

ACCMP – Asphalt Coated Corrugated Metal Pipe, corrugated aluminum pipe or equivalent

Source: Schueler (reproduced with permission)

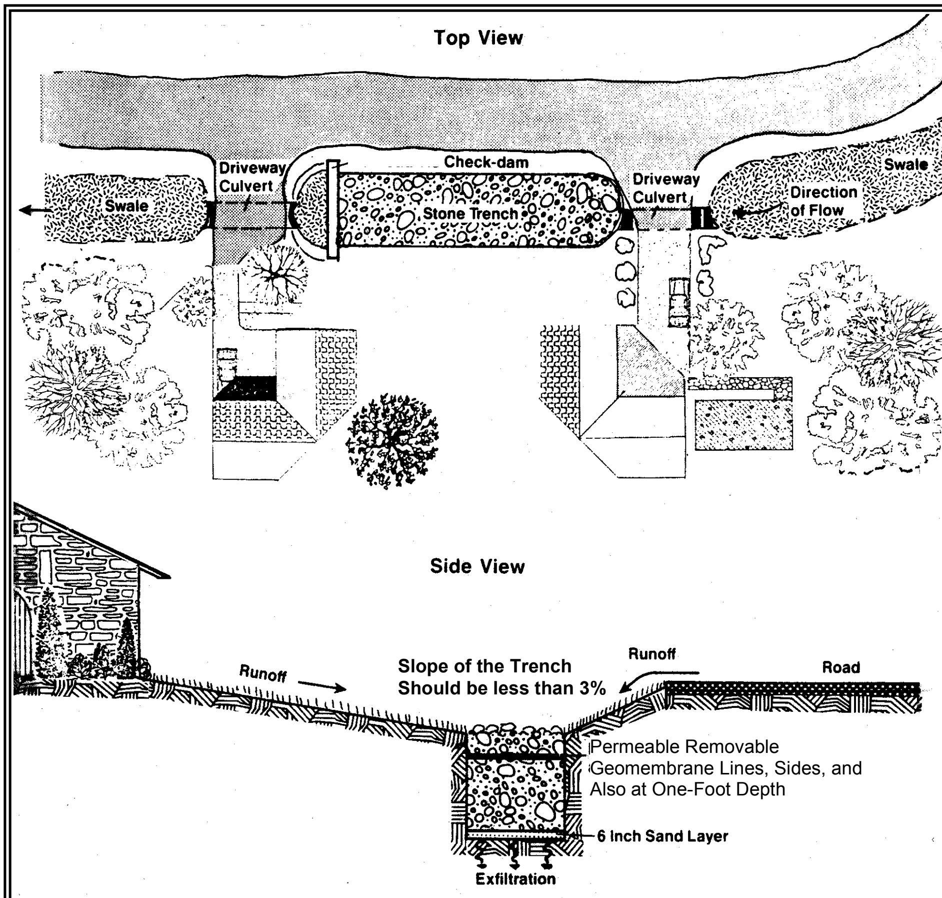


Figure 7.7 Swale/Trench Design

Source: Schueler (reproduced with permission)

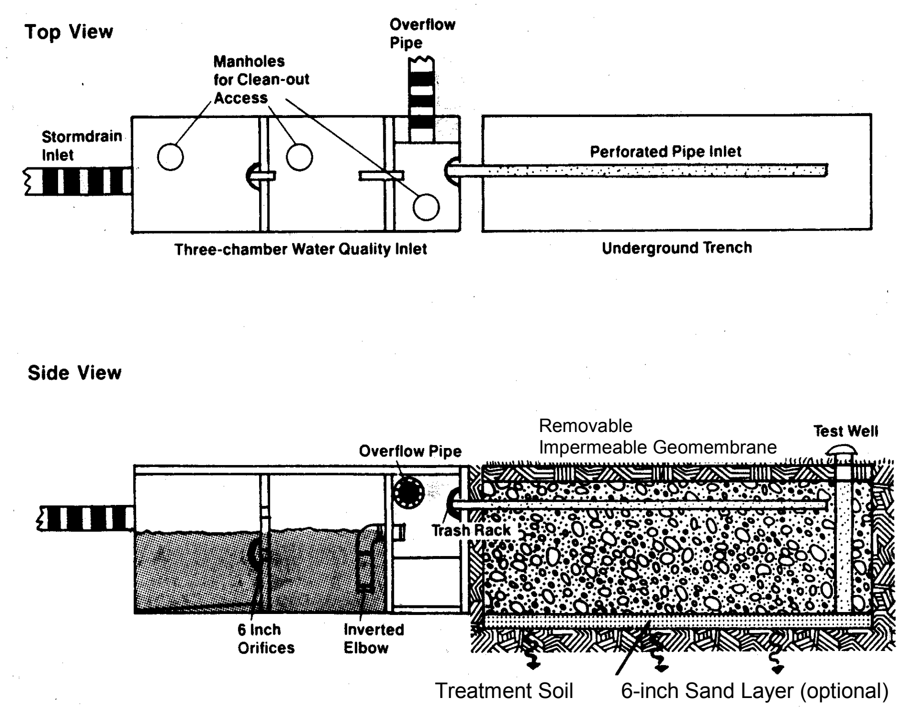


Figure 7.8 Underground Trench with Oil/Grit Chamber

Source: Schueler (reproduced with permission)

Additional Design Criteria specific for Trenches

- Slope - The slope of the trench bottom should not exceed 3% in any direction.
- Access Port - Consider including an access port or open or grated top for accessibility to conduct inspections and maintenance.
- Backfill Material - The aggregate material for the infiltration trench should consist of a clean aggregate with a maximum diameter of 3 inches and a minimum diameter of 1.5 inches. Void space for these aggregates should be in the range of 30 percent to 40 percent.
- Filter Fabric - Protective permeable geotextile filter fabric should line the top and sides of the trench from one foot below the aggregate surface. The bottom sand or removable permeable fabric layer is optional.
- Overflow Channel - A non-erosive overflow channel or path, leading to a stabilized watercourse, should be provided at the 24-hour drawdown level.
- Observation Well - An observation well should be installed at the lower end of the infiltration trench to check for water levels, drawdown time, and to show the impact of sediments. Figure 7.9

illustrates observation well details. A typical observation well consists of a perforated PVC pipe, 4 to 6 inches in diameter, constructed flush with the ground elevation. For larger trenches a 12-36 inch diameter well can be installed to facilitate maintenance operations, such as pumping out the sediment. The top of the well should be capped, or covered with an ordinary drainage grate.

- Surface Cover-A stone-filled trench can be placed under a porous or impervious cover to conserve space.

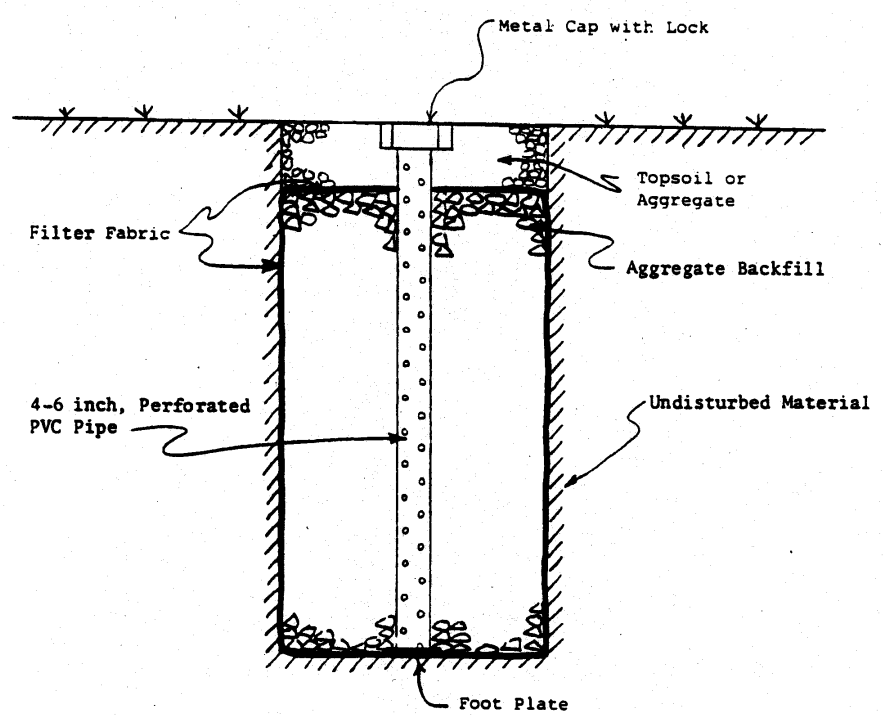


Figure 7.9 Observation Well Details

Source: King County (reproduced with permission)

Construction Criteria Specific for Trenches

- Trench Preparation -Excavated materials must be placed away from the trench sides to enhance trench wall stability. Care should also be taken to keep this material away from slopes, neighboring property, sidewalks and streets. It is recommended that this material be covered with plastic. (See Erosion/Sediment Control Measures in Volume II).

- Stone Aggregate Placement and Compaction - The stone aggregate should be placed in lifts and compacted using plate compactors. As a rule of thumb, a maximum loose lift thickness of 12 inches is recommended. The compaction process ensures geotextile conformity to the excavation sides, thereby reducing potential piping and geotextile clogging, and settlement problems.

- Potential Contamination - Prevent natural or fill soils from intermixing with the stone aggregate. All contaminated stone aggregate must be removed and replaced with uncontaminated stone aggregate.
- Overlapping and Covering-Following the stone aggregate placement, the geotextile must be folded over the stone aggregate to form a 12 inch minimum longitudinal overlap. When overlaps are required between rolls, the upstream roll should overlap a minimum of 2 feet over the downstream roll in order to provide a shingled effect.
- Voids behind Geotextile - Voids between the geotextile and excavation sides must be avoided. Removing boulders or other obstacles from the trench walls is one source of such voids. Natural soils should be placed in these voids at the most convenient time during construction to ensure geotextile conformity to the excavation sides. Soil piping and geotextile clogging, and possible surface subsidence will be avoided by this remedial process.
- Unstable Excavation Sites - Vertically excavated walls may be difficult to maintain in areas where the soil moisture is high or where soft or cohesionless soils predominate. Trapezoidal, rather than rectangular, cross-sections may be needed.

Maintenance Criteria Specific for Trenches

- Sediment buildup in the top foot of stone aggregate or the surface inlet should be monitored on the same schedule as the observation well.

BMP T7.30 Bio-infiltration Swale

Description

Bio-infiltration swales, also known as Grass Percolation Areas, combine grassy vegetation and soils to remove stormwater pollutants by percolation into the ground. Their pollutant removal mechanisms include filtration, soil sorption, and uptake by vegetative root zones. Bio-infiltration swales have been used in Spokane County for many years to treat urban stormwater and recharge the ground water.

In general, bio-infiltration swales are used for treating stormwater runoff from roofs, roads and parking lots. Flows greater than design flows are typically overflowed to the subsurface through an appropriate conveyance facility such as a dry well, or an overflow channel to surface water.

Additional Design Criteria Specific for Bio-infiltration Swales

- Use the same sizing guidance, off-line and on-line guidance, and design procedures as in Section 7.3.4.
- Drawdown time for the maximum ponded volume: 24 hours max.
- Swale bottom: flat with a longitudinal slope less than 1%.
- The maximum ponded level: 6 inches.
- Treatment soil to be at least 18 inches thick with a CEC of at least 5 meq/100 gm dry soil, organic content of at least 1%, and sufficient target pollutant loading capacity. The design soil thickness may be reduced to as low as 6 inches if appropriate performance data demonstrates that the vegetated root zone and the natural soil can be expected to provide adequate removal and loading capacities for the target pollutants. The design professional should calculate the pollutant loading capacity of the treatment soil to estimate if there is sufficient treatment soil volume for an acceptable design period. (See Criteria for Assessing the Trace Element Removal Capacity of Bio-filtration Systems, Stan Miller, Spokane County, June 2000).
- Other combinations of treatment soil thickness, CEC, and organic content design factors can be considered if it is demonstrated that the soil and vegetation will provide a target pollutant loading capacity and performance level acceptable to the local jurisdiction.
- The treatment zone depth of 6 inches or more should contain sufficient organics and texture to ensure good growth of the vegetation.
- The treatment soil infiltration rate should not exceed 1-inch per hour for a treatment zone depth of 6 inches relying on the root zone to enhance pollutant removal. The Site Suitability Criteria in Section 7.3.3 must also be applied, if a design soil depth of 18 inches is used then a maximum infiltration rate of 2.4 inches per hour is applicable.

- Use native or adapted grass should be used.
- Pretreatment of debris, gross TSS, and oil & grease to prevent the clogging of the treatment soil and/or growth of the vegetation, where necessary.
- Identify pollutants, particularly in industrial and commercial area runoff, that could cause a violation of Ecology's ground water quality Standards (Chapter 173-200 WAC). Include appropriate mitigation measures (pretreatment, source control, etc.) for those pollutants.

Chapter 8 - Sand Filtration Treatment Facilities

Note: Figures in Chapter 8 are courtesy of King County, except as noted

This Chapter presents criteria for the design, construction and maintenance of runoff treatment sand filters including basin, vault, and linear filters. Two Best Management Practices (BMPs) are discussed in this Chapter:

BMP T8.10 Sand Filter Vault
BMP T8.20 Linear Sand Filter

8.1 Purpose

To collect and treat the design runoff volume to remove TSS, phosphorous, and insoluble organics (including oils) from stormwater.

8.2 Description

A typical sand filtration system consists of a, a pretreatment system, flow spreader(s), a sand bed, and the underdrain piping. The sand filter bed includes a geotextile fabric between the sand bed and the bottom underdrain system.

An impermeable liner under the facility may also be needed if the filtered runoff requires additional treatment to remove soluble ground water pollutants, or in cases where additional ground water protection was mandated The variations of a sand filter include a basic or large sand filter, sand filter with level spreader, sand filter vault, and linear sand filter. (Figures 8.1 through 8.7 provide examples of various sand filter configurations)

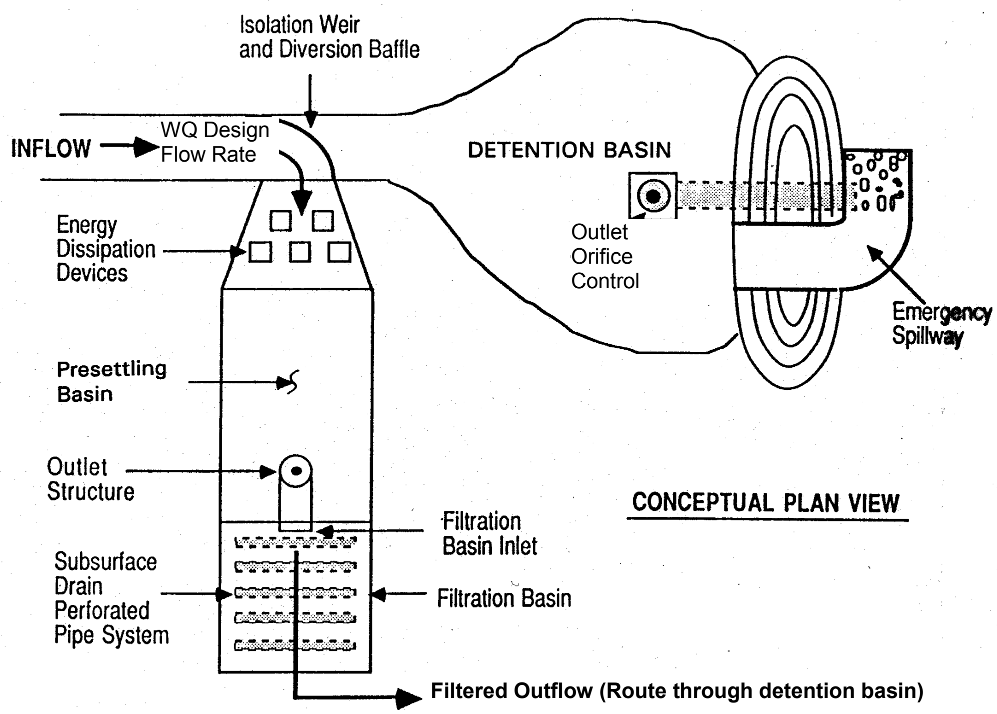


Figure 8.1 Sand Filtration Basin Preceded by Presettling Basin (Variation of a Basic Sand Filter)

Source: City of Austin

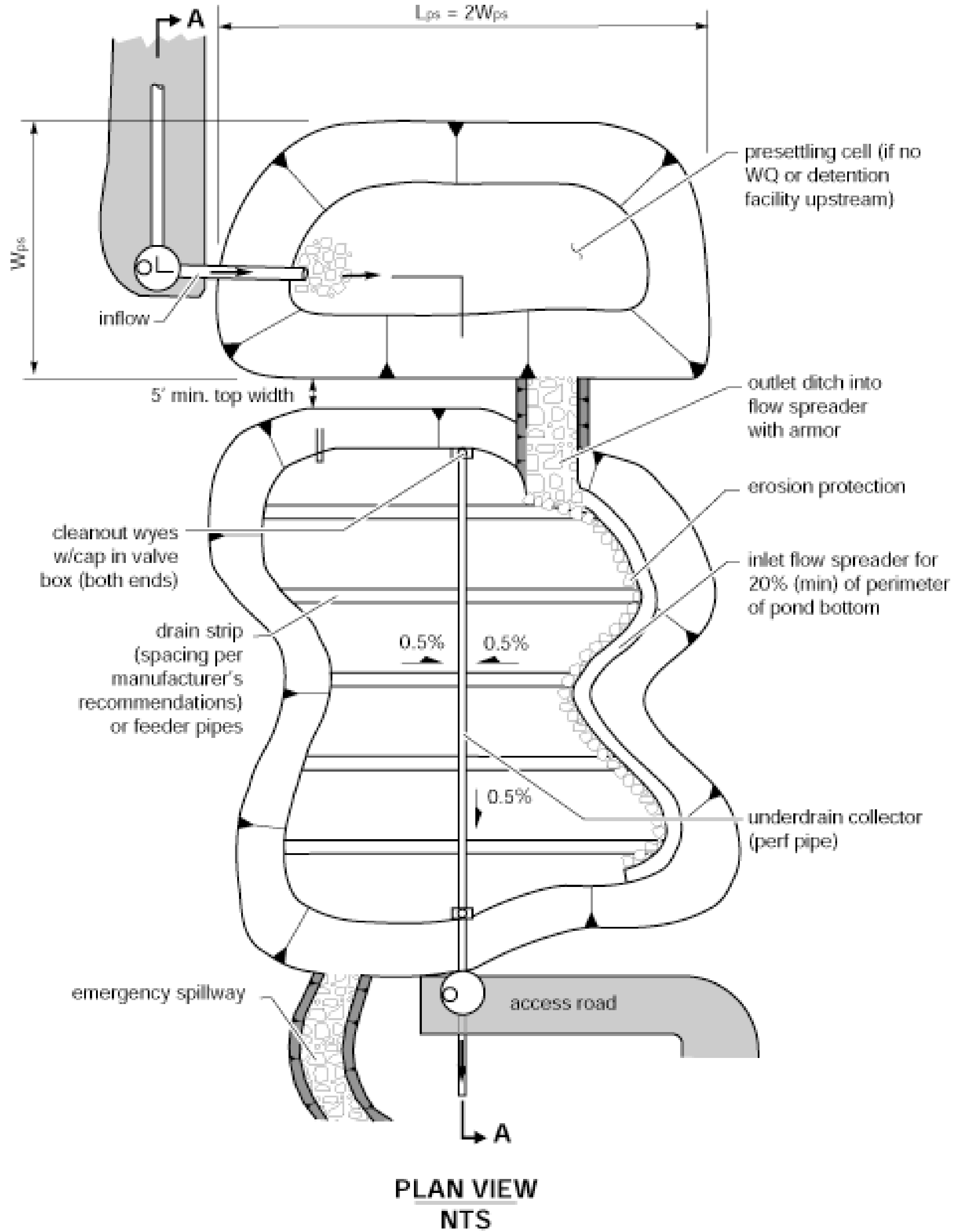
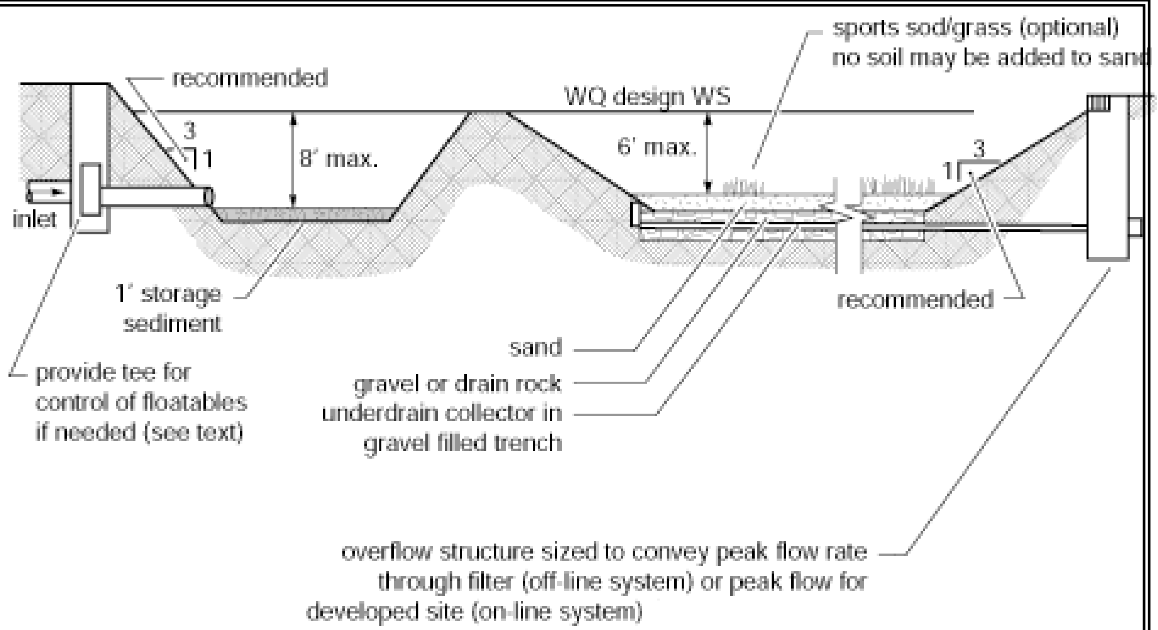
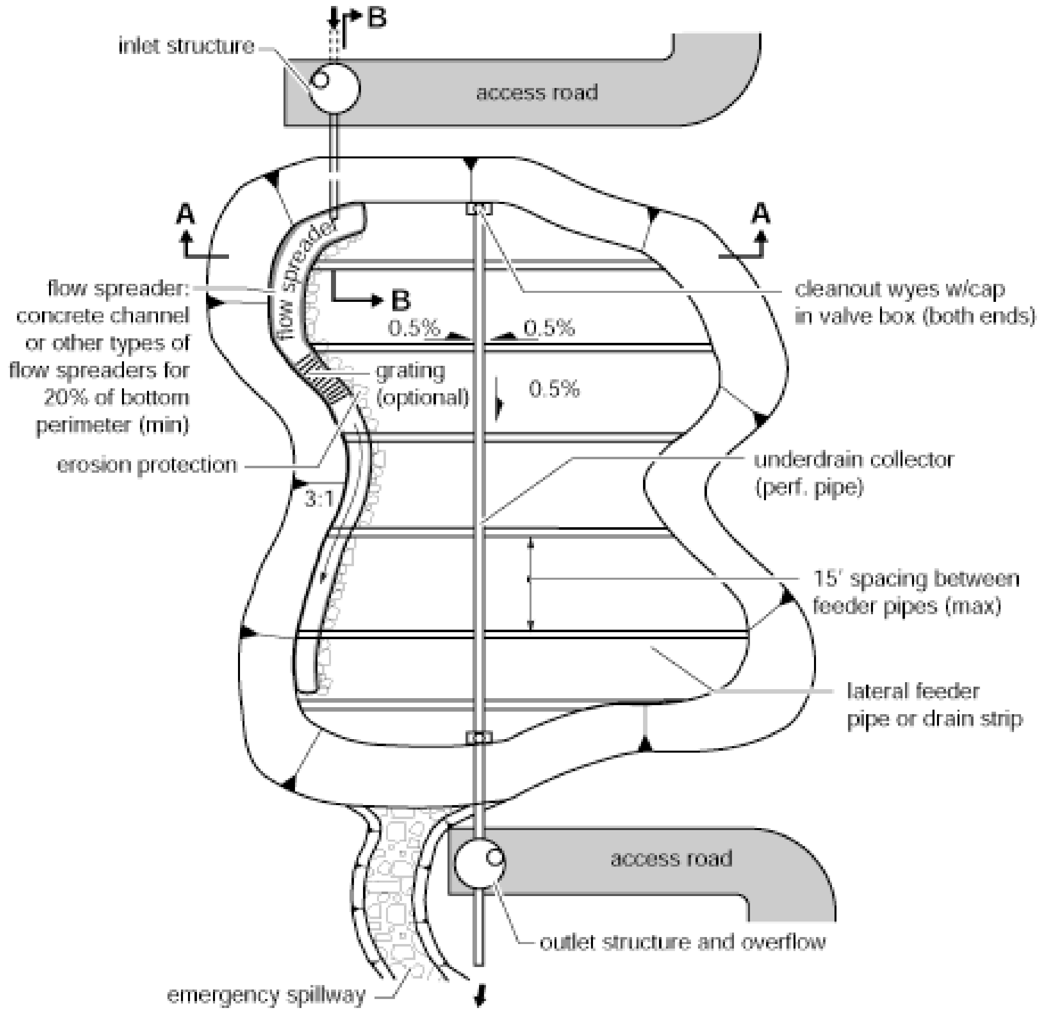


Figure 8.2 Sand Filter with Pretreatment Cell



SECTION A-A
NTS

Figure 8.2 (cont) Sand Filter with Pretreatment Cell



PLAN VIEW
NTS

Figure 8.3 Sand Filter with Level Spreader

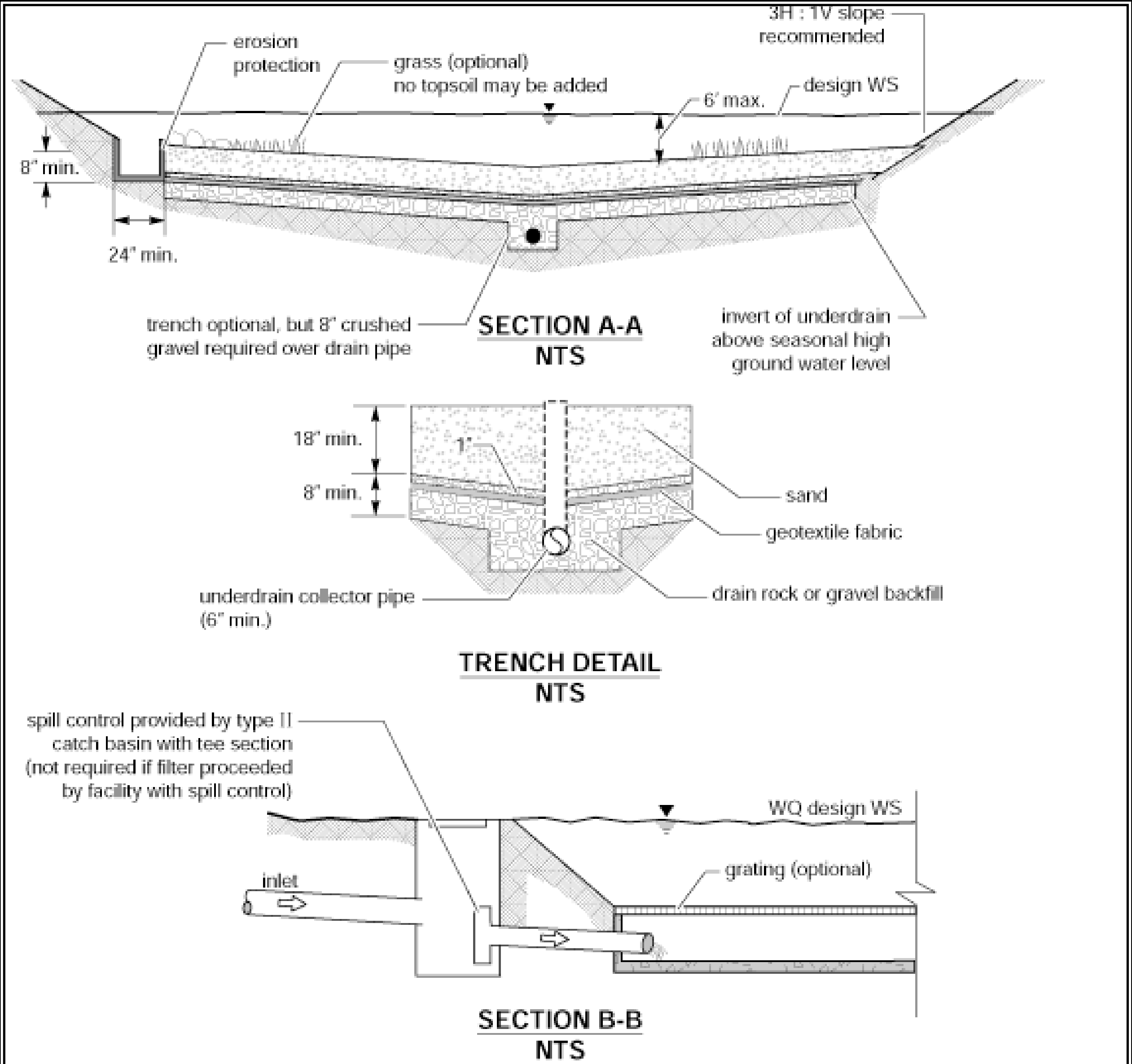
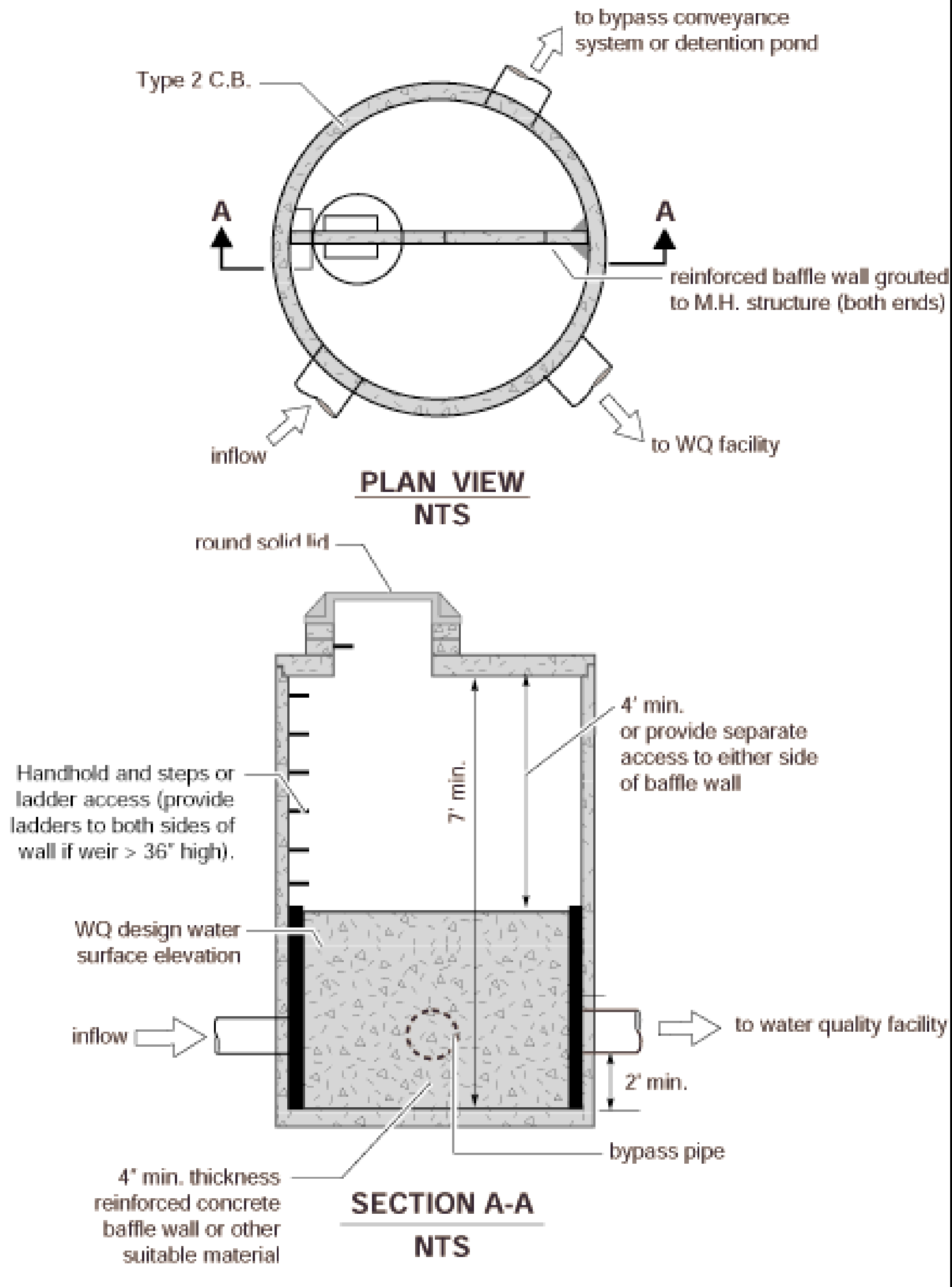


Figure 8.3 (cont) Sand Filter with Level Spreader



Note: The water quality discharge pipe may require an orifice plate be installed on the outlet to control the height of the design water surface (weir height). The design water surface should be set to provide a minimun headwater/diameter ratio of 2.0 on the outlet pipe.

Figure 8.4a Flow Splitter Option A

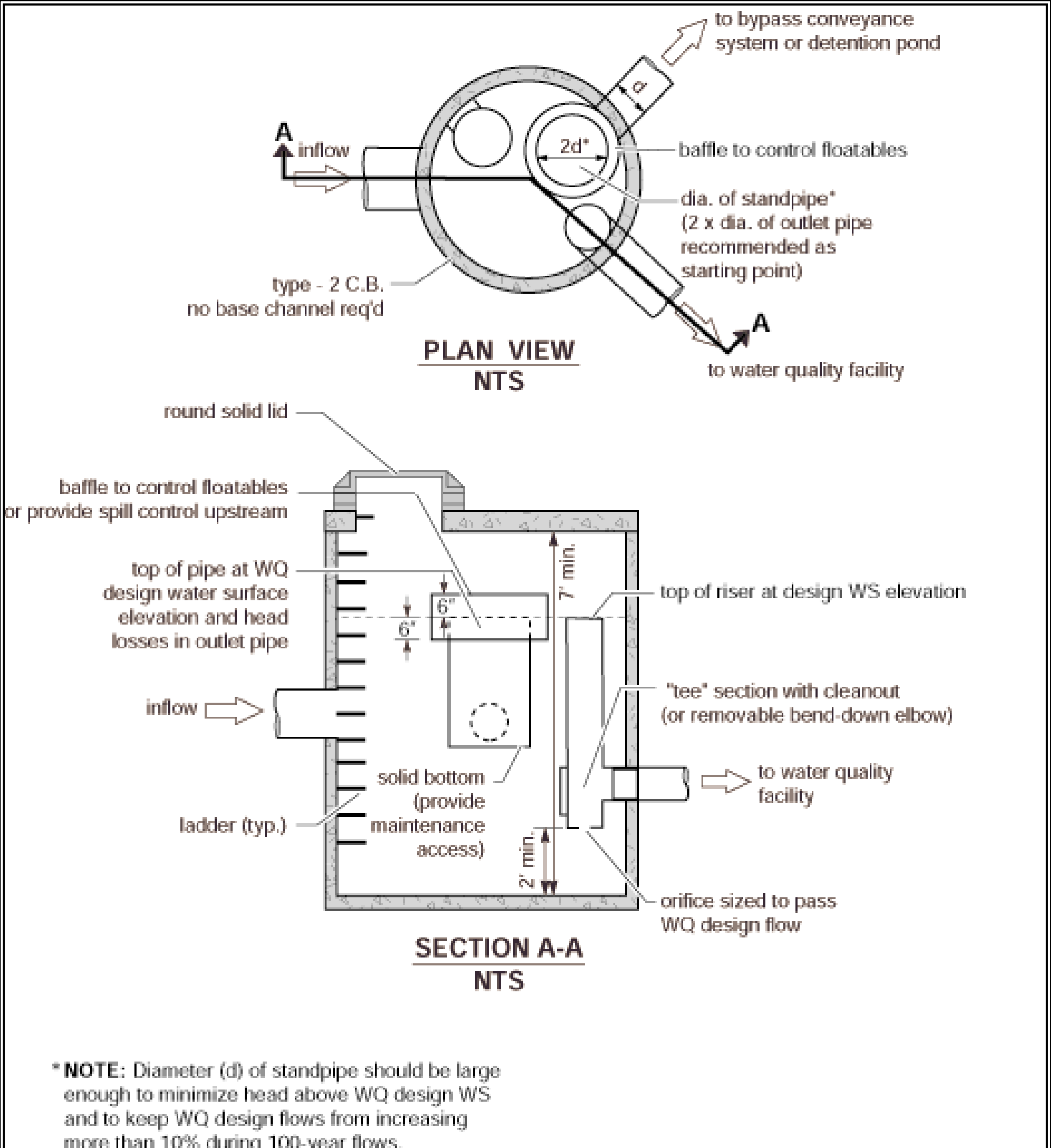


Figure 8.4b Flow Splitter Option B

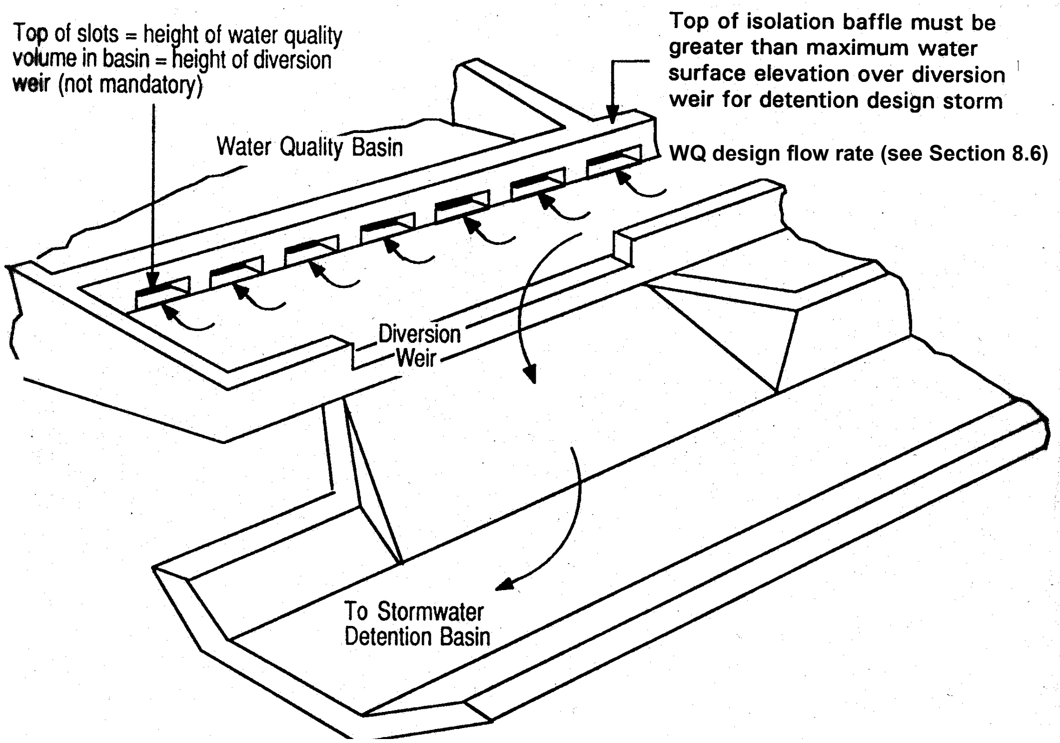


Figure 8.5 Example Isolation/Diversion Structure

Source: City of Austin

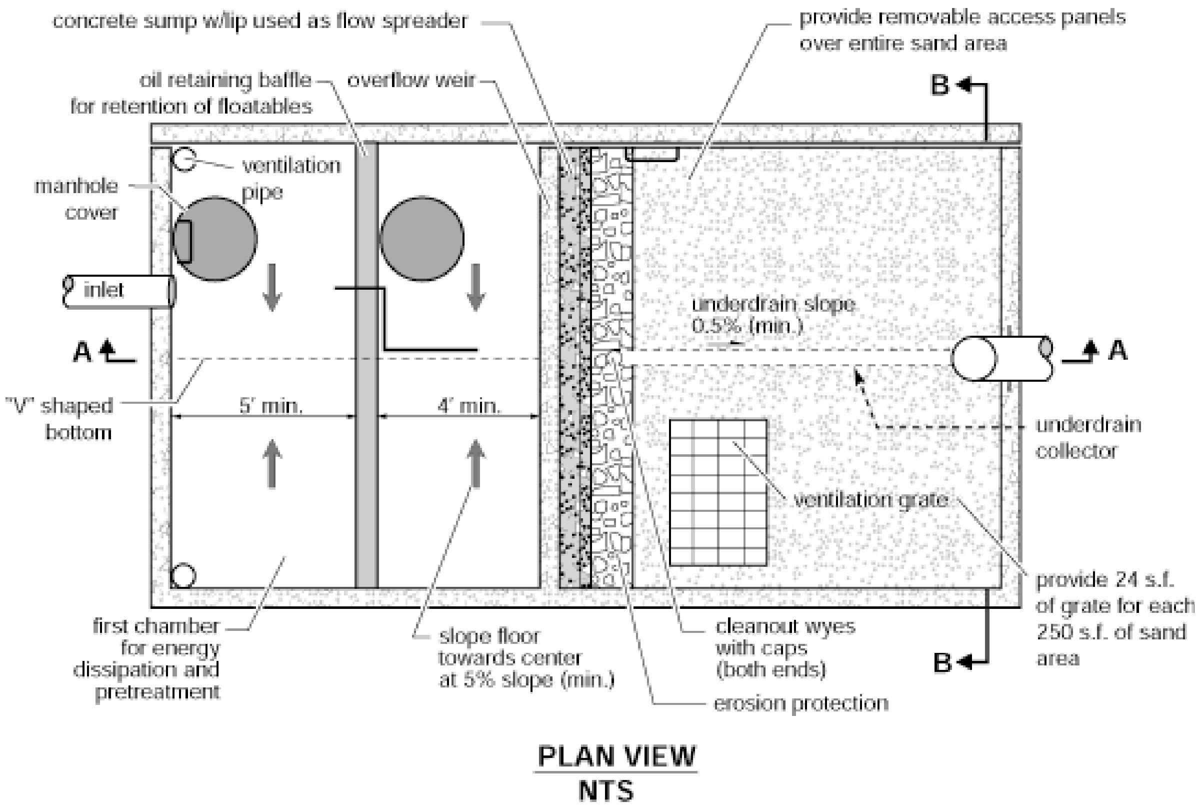


Figure 8.6a Sand Filter Vault

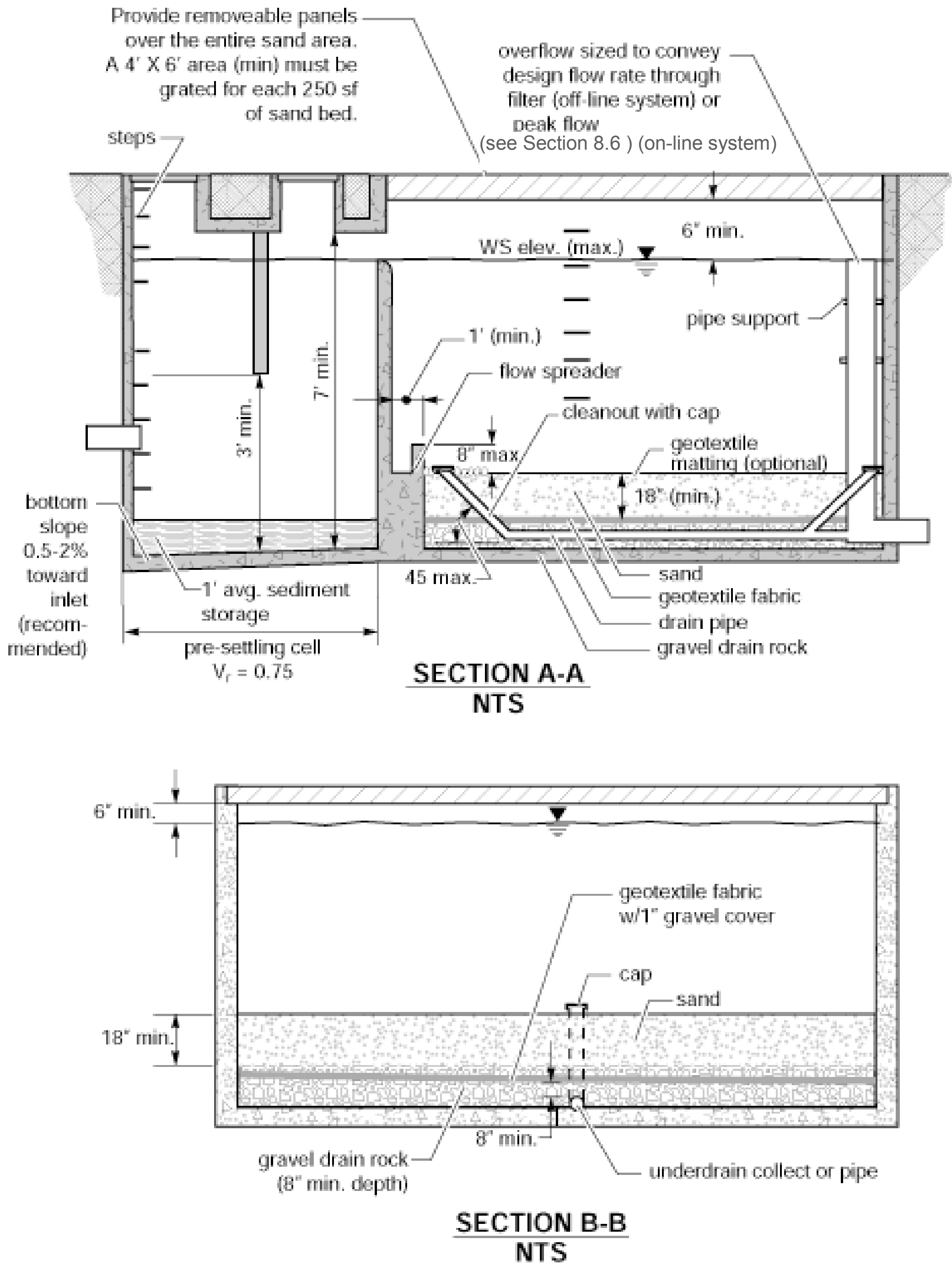


Figure 8.6b Sand Filter Vault (cont)

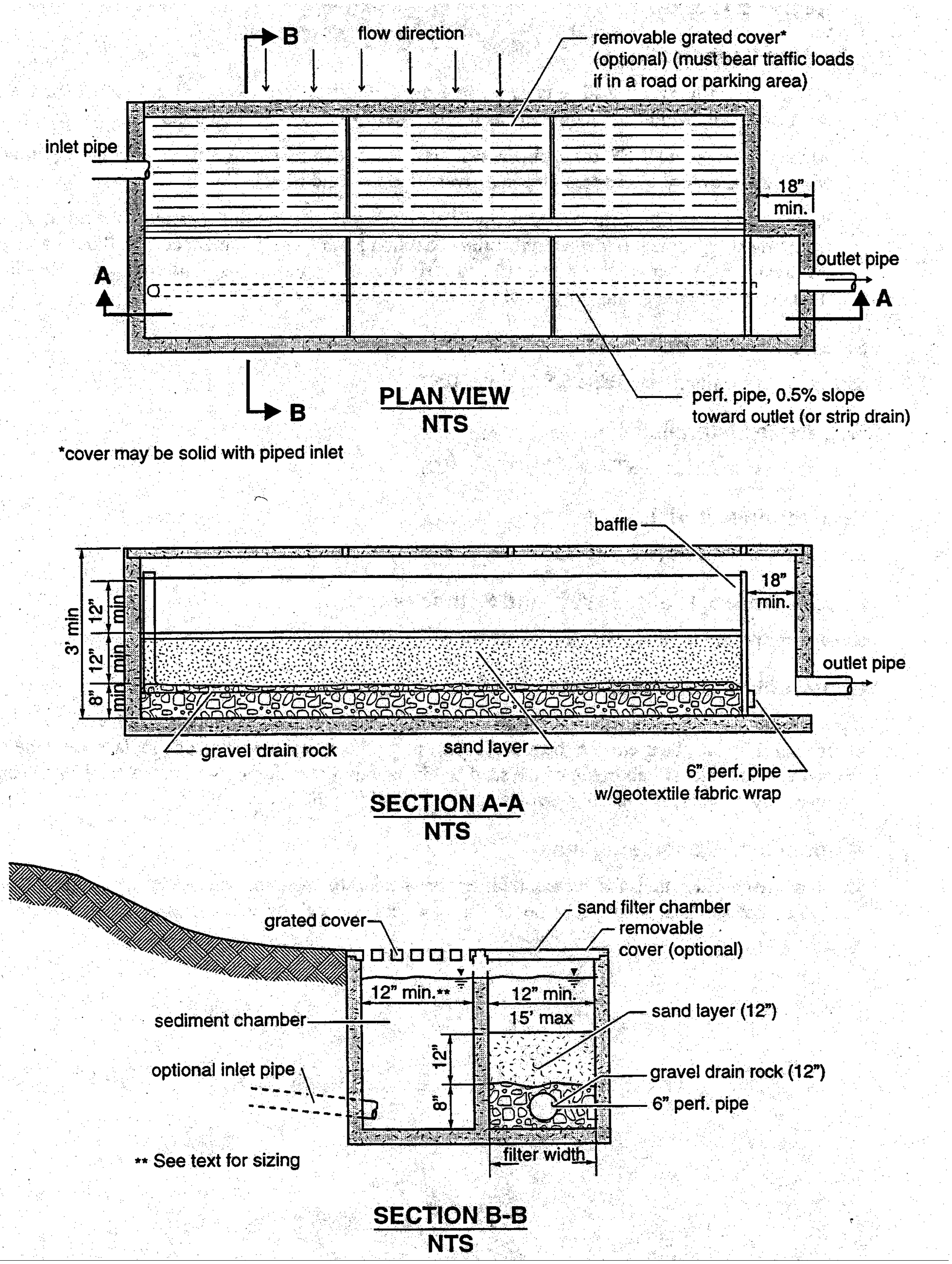


Figure 8.7 Linear Sand Filter

8.3 Performance Objectives

Basic sand filter: Basic sand filters are expected to achieve the performance goals for Basic Treatment. Based upon experience in King County and Austin, Texas basic sand filters should be capable of achieving the following average pollutant removals:

- 80 percent TSS at influent Event Mean Concentrations (EMCs) of 30-300 mg/L (King County, 1998) (Chang, 2000)
- oil and grease to below 10 mg/L daily average and 15 mg/L at any time, with no ongoing or recurring visible sheen in the discharge.

Large sand filter: Large sand filters are expected to remove at least 50 percent of the total phosphorous compounds (as TP) by collecting and treating 95% of the runoff volume. (ASCE and WEF, 1998)

8.4 Applications and Limitations

Sand filtration can be used in most residential, commercial, and industrial developments where debris, heavy sediment loads, and oils and greases will not clog or prematurely overload the sand, or where adequate pretreatment is provided for these pollutants. Specific applications include residential subdivisions, parking lots for commercial and industrial establishments, gas stations, high-use sites, high-density multi family housing, roadways, and bridge decks.

Sand filters should be located off-line before or after detention (Chang, 2000). Sand filters are also suited for locations with space constraints in retrofit, and new/re-development situations. Overflow or bypass structures must be carefully designed to handle the larger storms. An off-line system is sized to treat 91% runoff volume predicted by a continuous runoff model. If a project must comply with Minimum Requirement #7, Flow Control, the flows bypassing the filter and the filter discharge must be routed to a retention/detention facility.

Pretreatment is necessary to reduce velocities to the sand filter and remove debris, floatables, large particulate matter, and oils. In high water table areas adequate drainage of the sand filter may require additional engineering analysis and design considerations. An underground filter should be considered in areas subject to freezing conditions. (Urbonas, 1997)

8.5 Site Suitability

The following site characteristics should be considered in siting a sand filtration system:

- Space availability, including a presettling basin
- Sufficient hydraulic head, at least 4 feet from inlet to outlet

- Adequate Operation and Maintenance capability including accessibility for O & M
- Sufficient pretreatment of oil, debris and solids in the tributary runoff

8.6 Design Criteria

Objective: To capture and treat the Water Quality Design Storm volume (when using the Simple Sizing Method described below), or 91% of the runoff volume (95% for large sand filter) predicted by a continuous runoff model, and bypass/overflow 9% of the total runoff volume to the R/D system. Off-line sand filters can be located either upstream or downstream of detention facilities. On-line sand filters should only be located downstream of detention.

Simple Sizing Method: This method applies to the off-line placement of a sand filter upstream or downstream of detention facilities. A conservative design approach is provided below using a routing adjustment factor that does not require flow routing computations through the filter. An alternative simple approach for off-line placement downstream of detention facilities is to route the full 2-year release rate from the detention facility (sized for duration control) to a sand filter with sufficient surface area to infiltrate at that flow rate.

***Basic Sand Filter*:** For sizing a Basic Sand Filter, a 0.7 routing adjustment factor is applied to compensate for routing through the sand bed at the maximum pond depth. A flow splitter should be designed to route the water quality design flow rate to the sand filter. Until a continuous runoff model is available that identifies the flow rate associated with 91% of the runoff volume, use the estimate for that flow rate as identified in Chapter 4. The estimate is a percentage of the predicted 2-year return frequency flow as predicted by the Western Washington Hydrology Model. Use the adjustment for the 15-minute time series.

Large Sand Filter: For sizing a Large Sand Filter (LSF), use the same procedure as outlined above for the Basic Sand Filter. Then apply a scale-up factor of 1.6 to the surface area. This is considered a reasonable average for various impervious tributary sources. For a Large Sand Filter the flow splitter upstream or downstream of the detention facility should be designed to route the flow rate associated with conveying 95% of the runoff volume to the sand filter. Until a continuous runoff model is available that identifies the flow rate associated with conveying 95% of the runoff volume for sizing the Large Sand filter, use the water quality design flow rate for the Basic Sand Filter multiplied by 1.2.

Note: An overflow should be included in the design of the basic and large sand filter pond. The overflow height should be at the maximum hydraulic head of the pond above the sand bed.

Example Calculation using the simple sizing method and a routing adjustment factor

Design Specifications:

Background: The sizing of the sand filter is based on routing the design runoff volume through the sand filter and using Darcy's Law to account for the increased flow through the sand bed caused by the hydraulic head variations in the pond above the sand bed. Darcy's Law is represented by the following equation:

$Q_{sf} = KiA_{sf} = FA_{sf}$	where: $i = (h+L)/L$
Therefore,	$A_{sf}=Q_{sf}/Ki$
Also,	$Q_{sf}=A_tQ_dR/t$
Substituting for Q_{sf},	$A_{sf}=A_tQ_dR/Kit$
Or,	$A_{sf}=A_tQ_dR/\{K(h+L)/L\}t$
Or,	$A_{sf}=A_tQ_dR/Ft$

Where:

Q_{sf} is the flow rate in cu. feet per day (or ft^3/sec.) at which runoff is filtered by the sand filter bed,

A_{sf} is the sand filter surface area (sq. ft.)

Q_d is the design storm runoff depth (ft.) for the 6 month, 24-hour storm. It is estimated using the SCS Curve Number equations detailed in Volume III, Chapter 2.

R is a routing adjustment factor. Use R = 0.7.

A_t is the tributary drainage area (sq. ft.)

K is the hydraulic conductivity of the sand bed. Use 2 ft./day or 1.0 inch/hour at full pre-sedimentation

i is the hydraulic gradient of the pond above the filter; (h+L)/L, (ft/ft)

F=Ki is the filtration rate, ft./day (or inches per hour)

d is the maximum sand filter pond depth, and h = d/2 in ft.

t is the recommended maximum drawdown time of 24 hours from the completion of inflow into the sand filter pond (assume ponded pre-settling basin) of a discrete storm event to the completion of outflow from the sand filter underdrain of that same storm event.

L is the sand bed depth; Use 1.5 ft.

Given condition:

- Sedimentation basin fully ponded and no pond water above sand filter

  (Full sedimentation prior to sand filter-24 hours residence of WQ storm runoff)
- A_t = 10 acres is tributary drainage area
- Q_d = 0.922 inches (0.0768 ft.), for SeaTac Rainfall
- with Curve Number = 96.2 for 85% impervious and 15% till grass tributary surfaces
- R = 0.7, the routing adjustment factor
- Maximum drawdown time through sand filter, 24 hours
- Maximum pond depth above sand filter, example at 3 and 6 feet,
- h = 1.5 and 3 feet
- Design Hydraulic Conductivity of basic sand filter, K, 2.0 feet/day (1 inch/hour)

Using Design Equation:

$A_{sf} = A_t Q_d RL/Kt(h+L)$

At pond depth of 6 feet:
A_{sf} = (10)43560(0.0768)(.7)(1.5)/(2)(1)(4.5) = 3911 square feet

Therefore A_{sf} for Basic Sand Filter becomes:

3911 sq. feet at pond depth of 6 feet
5867 sq. feet at pond depth of 3 feet

Using the 1.6 scale-up factor, the Large Sand Filter design sizes for the conditions of this example become:

6258 sq. feet at pond depth of 6 feet
9387 sq. feet at pond depth of 3 feet

Continuous Runoff Model Sizing Method:

Basic Sand Filter: This method is intended to capture and treat 91% of the runoff volume through use of a continuous runoff model coupled with a flow-routing routine that determines stage-storage-discharge relationships. At the time of publication of this manual, a 15-minute time series and a flow routing routine for sizing sand filters is not available with the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM). Until a 15-minute time series is available, the 1-hour time series in the WWHM can be used for facility sizing. A spreadsheet must be used to calculate filtration rates as a function of head and surface area. A stage-storage-discharge table can be imported to the WWHM as an electronic text file, or, the table can be typed directly into the WWHM. The WWHM will route the post-development stormwater runoff through the stage-storage-discharge table. A spreadsheet analysis of the flow duration table produced by the WWHM can determine the total quantities discharged and bypassed for verifying that 91% of the runoff volume has been treated.

Off-line: An off-line, basic sand filter located upstream of detention facilities should have an upstream flow splitter that is designed to bypass the incremental portion of flows above the water quality design flow rate (using 15-minute time steps). The long-term runoff time series used as input to the sand filter should be modified to use the water quality design flow rate for all flows above that rate. The design overflow volume for off-line sand filters is zero since all flows routed to the filter will be at or below the water quality design flow. Therefore, the goal is to size the storage reservoir such that its capacity is not exceeded (Note: an emergency overflow should still be included in the design).

Unfortunately, at the time of publication of this manual, the user does not have access to the runoff time series to modify it as described above for design of off-line facilities. Until that capability is provided to the user, the storage reservoir for the off-line facility can be sized as if in an on-line mode. All of the post-development time series is routed to the storage reservoir, which is then sized to overflow 9% of the total runoff volume of the time series. In actual practice, an offline flow splitter will not route all of the post-development time series to the storage reservoir, and so the reservoir should not overflow if operating within design criteria. This design approach should result in slightly oversizing the storage reservoir.

Downstream of detention facilities, the flow splitter should be designed to bypass the incremental portion of flows above the flow rate that corresponds with treating 91% of the runoff volume of the long-term time series. Because the flows are dampened by the detention facility, this flow rate will be lower than the water quality design flow rate for facilities located upstream of detention. Accordingly, the post-detention runoff time series, used as input to the filter, should be adjusted to use the flow rate corresponding to treating 91% of the runoff volume for all flows above that rate. Note: Downstream of detention facilities, a one-hour time series may be used to compute the sand filter size until such time as a 15-minute time series is available. Due to the flow dampening effect of the detention facilities, there should not be much difference between a sand filter sized to treat 91% of the runoff volume using 15-minute versus 1-hour time series data.

On-line: Sand filter designs that are on-line (i.e., all flows enter the storage reservoir) should only be allowed downstream of detention facilities to prevent exposure of the sand filter surface to high flow rates that could cause loss of media and previously removed pollutants. The storage pond above the sand bed should be sized to restrict the total amount of overflow from the reservoir to 9% of the total runoff volume of the long-term time series.

Large Sand Filter: This method is intended to capture and treat 95% of the runoff volume through use of a continuous runoff model coupled with a flow-routing routine that determines stage-storage-discharge relationships.

Off-line: An off-line, large sand filter should have an upstream flow splitter that is designed to bypass the incremental portion of flows above the flow rate that corresponds with treating 95% of the runoff volume of the long-term time series (using 15-minute time steps). The design overflow volume for off-line sand filters is zero since all flows routed to the filter must be treated. Therefore, the goal is to size the storage reservoir such that its capacity is not exceeded (Note: an emergency overflow should still be included in the design). Because of the flow dampening effects of a detention facility, a large sand filter downstream of detention facilities will be smaller than a filter upstream of detention. A conservative design would use a flow splitter to route the full 2-year release rate from the detention facility, sized for flow duration control, to a filter with sufficient surface area to infiltrate at that flow rate. Such a design should treat over 95% of the runoff volume.

On-line: Sand filter designs that are on-line (i.e., all flows enter the storage reservoir) should only be allowed downstream of detention facilities to prevent exposure of the sand filter surface to high flow rates that could cause loss of media and previously removed pollutants. The storage pond should be sized to restrict the total amount of overflow from the reservoir to 5% of the total runoff volume of the long-term time series. This is not a preferred design because of the extended timeframe during which the filter is saturated. This will reduce its potential for phosphorus removal.

Additional Design Information:

1. Runoff to be treated by the sand filter must be pretreated (e.g., presettling basin, etc. depending on pollutants) to remove debris and other solids, and oil from high use sites.

2. Inlet bypass and flow spreading structures (e.g., flow spreaders, weirs or multiple orifice openings) should be designed to capture the applicable design flow rate, minimize turbulence and to spread the flow uniformly across the surface of the sand filter. Stone riprap or other energy

dissipation devices should be installed to prevent gouging of the sand medium and to promote uniform flow. Include emergency spillway or overflow structures (see Vol. III)

3. The following are design criteria for the underdrain piping: *(types of underdrains include: a central collector pipe with lateral feeder pipes, or, a geotextile drain strip in an 8-inch gravel backfill or drain rock bed, or, longitudinal pipes in an 8-inch gravel backfill or drain rock with a collector pipe at the outlet end.)*

   - Upstream of detention underdrain piping should be sized to handle double the two-year return frequency flow indicated by the WWHM (the doubling factor is a conversion from the 1-hr. time step to a 15 minute time step). Downstream of detention the underdrain piping should be sized for the two-year return frequency flow indicated by the WWHM. In both instances there should be at least one (1) foot of hydraulic head above the invert of the upstream end of the collector pipe. (King County, 1998)

   - Internal diameters of underdrain pipes should be a minimum of six (6) inches and two rows of ½-inch holes spaced 6 inches apart longitudinally (maximum), with rows 120 degrees apart (laid with holes downward). Maximum perpendicular distance between two feeder pipes must be 15 feet. All piping is to be schedule 40 PVC or greater wall thickness. Drain piping could be installed in basin and trench configurations.

   - Main collector underdrain pipe should be at a slope of 0.5 percent minimum. (King County, 1998)

   - A geotextile fabric (specifications in Appendix V-C) must be used between the sand layer and drain rock or gravel and placed so that 1-inch of drain rock/gravel is above the fabric. Drain rock should be 0.75-1.5 inch rock or gravel backfill, washed free of clay and organic material. (King County, 1998)

Cleanout wyes with caps or junction boxes must be provided at both ends of the collector pipes. Cleanouts must extend to the surface of the filter. A valve box must be provided for access to the cleanouts. Access for cleaning all underdrain piping should be provided. This may consist of installing cleanout ports, which tee into the underdrain system and surface above the top of the sand bed. To facilitate maintenance of the sand filter an inlet shutoff/bypass valve is recommended.

Note: Other equivalent energy dissipaters can be used if needed.

4. Sand specification: The sand in a filter must consist of a medium sand meeting the size gradation (by weight) given in Table 8.1 below. The contractor must obtain a grain size analysis from the supplier to certify that the No. 100 and No. 200 sieve requirements are met. *(Note: Standard backfill for sand drains, Wa. Std. Spec. 9-03.13, does not meet this specification and should not be used for sand filters.)*

Table 8.1 -- Sand Medium Specification	
U.S. Sieve Number	**Percent Passing**
4	95-100
8	70-100
16	40-90
30	25-75
50	2-25
100	<4
200	<2

Source: King County Surface Water Design Manual, September 1998

5. Impermeable Liners for Sand Bed Bottom: Impermeable liners are generally required for soluble pollutants such as metals and toxic organics and where the underflow could cause problems with structures. Impermeable liners may be clay, concrete or geomembrane. Clay liners should have a minimum thickness of 12 inches and meet the specifications give in Table 8.2:

Table 8.2 - Clay Liner Specifications			
Property	**Test Method**	**Unit**	**Specification**
Permeability	ASTM D-2434	cm/sec	1×10^{-6} max.
Plasticity Index of Clay	ASTM D-423 & D-424	percent	Not less than 15
Liquid Limit of Clay	ASTM D-2216	percent	Not less than 30
Clay Particles Passing	ASTM D-422	percent	Not less than 30
Clay Compaction	ASTM D-2216	percent	95% of Standard Proctor Density

Source: City of Austin, 1988

- If a geomembrane liner is used it should have a minimum thickness of 30 mils and be ultraviolet resistant. The geomembrane liner should be protected from puncture, tearing, and abrasion by installing geotextile fabric on the top and bottom of the geomembrane.

- Concrete liners may also be used for sedimentation chambers and for sedimentation and sand filtration basins less than 1,000 square feet in area. Concrete should be 5 inches thick Class A or better and should be reinforced by steel wire mesh. The steel wire mesh should be 6 gauge wire or larger and 6-inch by 6-inch mesh or smaller. An "Ordinary Surface

Finish" is required. When the underlying soil is clay or has an unconfined compressive strength of 0.25 ton per square foot or less, the concrete should have a minimum 6-inch compacted aggregate base. This base must consist of coarse sand and river stone, crushed stone or equivalent with diameter of 0.75- to 1-inch.

- If an impermeable liner is not required then a geotextile fabric liner should be installed that retains the sand and meets the specifications listed in Appendix V-C unless the basin has been excavated to bedrock.

- If an impermeable liner is not provided, then an analysis should be made of possible adverse effects of seepage zones on ground water, and near building foundations, basements, roads, parking lots and sloping sites. Sand filters without impermeable liners should not be built on fill sites and should be located at least 20-foot downslope and 100-foot upslope from building foundations.

6. Include an access ramp with a slope not to exceed 7:1, or equivalent, for maintenance purposes at the inlet and the outlet of a surface filter. Consider an access port for inspection and maintenance.

7. Side slopes for earthen/grass embankments should not exceed 3:1 to facilitate mowing.

8. High groundwater may damage underground structures or affect the performance of filter underdrain systems. There should be sufficient clearance (at least 2 feet is recommended) between the seasonal high groundwater level (highest level of ground water observed) and the bottom of the sand filter to obtain adequate drainage.

8.7 Construction Criteria

No runoff should enter the sand filter prior to completion of construction and approval of site stabilization by the responsible inspector. Construction runoff may be routed to a pretreatment sedimentation facility, but discharge from sedimentation facilities should by-pass downstream sand filters. Careful level placement of the sand is necessary to avoid formation of voids within the sand that could lead to short-circuiting, (particularly around penetrations for underdrain cleanouts) and to prevent damage to the underlying geomembranes and underdrain system. Over-compaction should be avoided to ensure adequate filtration capacity. Sand is best placed with a low ground pressure bulldozer (4 psig or less). After the sand layer is placed water settling is recommended. Flood the sand with 10-15 gallons of water per cubic foot of sand.

8.8 Maintenance Criteria

Inspections of sand filters and pretreatment systems should be conducted every 6 months and after storm events as needed during the first year of operation, and annually thereafter if filter performs as designed. Repairs should be performed as necessary. Suggestions for maintenance include:

- Accumulated silt, and debris on top of the sand filter should be removed when their depth exceeds 1/2-inch. The silt should be scraped off during dry periods with steel rakes or other devices. Once sediment is removed, the design permeability of the filtration media can typically be restored by then striating the surface layer of the media. Finer sediments that have penetrated deeper into the filtration media can reduce the permeability to unacceptable levels, necessitating replacement of some or all of the sand.
- Sand replacement frequency is not well established and will depend on suspended solids levels entering the filter (the effectiveness of the pretreatment BMP can be a significant factor).
- Frequent overflow into the spillway or overflow structure or slow drawdown are indicators of plugging problems. A sand filter should empty in 24 hours following a storm event (24 hours for the pre-settling chamber), depending on pond depth. If the hydraulic conductivity drops to one (1) inch per hour corrective action is needed, e.g.:
  - Scraping the top layer of fine-grain sediment accumulation (mid-winter scraping is suggested)
  - Removal of thatch
  - Aerating the filter surface
  - Tilling the filter surface (late-summer rototilling is suggested)
  - Replacing the top 4 inches of sand.
  - Inspecting geotextiles for clogging
- Rapid drawdown in the sand bed (greater than 12 inches per hour) indicates short-circuiting of the filter. Inspect the cleanouts on the underdrain pipes and along the base of the embankment for leakage.
- Drawdown tests for the sand bed could be conducted, as needed, during the wet season. These tests can be conducted by allowing the filter to fill (or partially fill) during a storm event, then measuring the decline in water level over a 4-8 hour period. An inlet and an underdrain outlet valve would be necessary to conduct such a test.
- Formation of rills and gullies on the surface of the filter indicates improper function of the inlet flow spreader, or poor sand compaction. Check for accumulation of debris on or in the flow spreader and refill rills and gullies with sand.
- Avoid driving heavy equipment on the filter to prevent compaction and rut formation.

BMP T8.10 Sand Filter Vault

Description: (Figures 8.6a and 8.6b)

A sand filter vault is similar to an open sand filter except that the sand layer and underdrains are installed below grade in a vault. It consists of presettling and sand filtration cells.

Applications and Limitations

- Use where space limitations preclude above ground facilities
- Not suitable where high water table and heavy sediment loads are expected
- An elevation difference of 4 feet between inlet and outlet is needed

Additional Design Criteria for Vaults

- Vaults may be designed as off-line systems or on-line for small drainages
- In an off-line system a diversion structure should be installed to divert the design flow rate into the sediment chamber and bypass the remaining flow to detention/retention (if necessary to meet Minimum Requirement #7), or to surface water.
- Optimize sand inlet flow distribution with minimal sand bed disturbance. A maximum of 8-inch distance between the top of the spreader and the top of the sand bed is suggested. Flows may enter the sand bed by spilling over the top of the wall into a flow spreader pad or alternatively a pipe and manifold system may be used. Any pipe and manifold system must retain the required dead storage volume in the first cell, minimize turbulence, and be readily maintainable.
- If an inlet pipe and manifold system is used, the minimum pipe size should be 8 inches. Multiple inlets are recommended to minimize turbulence and reduce local flow velocities.
- Erosion protection must be provided along the first foot of the sand bed adjacent to the spreader. Geotextile fabric secured on the surface of the sand bed, or equivalent method, may be used.
- The filter bed should consist of a sand top layer, and a geotextile fabric second layer with an underdrain system.
- Design the presettling cell for sediment collection and removal. A V-shaped bottom, removable bottom panels, or equivalent sludge handling system should be used. One-foot of sediment storage in the presettling cell must be provided.

- The pre-settling chamber must be sealed to trap oil and trash. This chamber is usually connected to the sand filtration chamber through an invert elbow to protect the filter surface from oil and trash.
- If a retaining baffle is necessary for oil/floatables in the presettling cell, it must extend at least one foot above to one foot below the design flow water level. Provision for the passage of flows in the event of plugging must be provided. Access opening and ladder must be provided on both sides of the baffle.
- To prevent anoxic conditions, a minimum of 24 square feet of ventilation grate should be provided for each 250 square feet of sand bed surface area. For sufficient distribution of airflow across the sand bed, grates may be located in one area if the sand filter is small, but placement at each end is preferred. Small grates may also be dispersed over the entire sand bed area.
- Provision for access is the same as for wet vaults. Removable panels must be provided over the entire sand bed.
- Sand filter vaults must conform to the materials and structural suitability criteria specified for wet vaults.
- Provide a sand filter inlet shutoff/bypass valve for maintenance
- A geotextile fabric over the entire sand bed may be installed that is flexible, highly permeable, three-dimensional matrix, and adequately secured. This is useful in trapping trash and litter.

BMP T8.20 Linear Sand Filter

Description: (Figure 8.7)

Linear sand filters are typically long, shallow, two-celled, rectangular vaults. The first cell is designed for settling coarse particles, and the second cell contains the sand bed. Stormwater flows into the second cell via a weir section that also functions as a flow spreader.

Application and Limitations

- Applicable in long narrow spaces such as the perimeter of a paved surface.
- As a part of a treatment train as downstream of a filter strip, upstream of an infiltration system, or upstream of a wet pond or a biofilter for oil control.
- To treat small drainages (less than 2 acres of impervious area).
- To treat runoff from high-use sites for TSS and oil/grease removal, if applicable.

Additional Design Criteria for Linear Sand Filters

- The two cells should be divided by a divider wall that is level and extends a minimum of 12 inches above the sand bed.
- Stormwater may enter the sediment cell by sheet flow or a piped inlet.
- The width of the sand cell must be 1-foot minimum to 15 feet maximum.
- The sand filter bed must be a minimum of 12 inches deep and have an 8-inch layer of drain rock with perforated drainpipe beneath the sand layer.
- The drainpipe must be 6-inch diameter minimum and be wrapped in geotextile and sloped a minimum of 0.5 percent.
- Maximum sand bed ponding depth: 1-foot.
- Must be vented as for sand filter vaults
- Linear sand filters must conform to the materials and structural suitability criteria specified for wet vaults.
- Set sediment cell width as follows:

Sand filter width, (w) inches	12-24	24-48	48-72	72+
Sediment cell width, inches	12	18	24	w/3

Chapter 9 – Biofiltration Treatment Facilities

Note: Figures in Chapter 9 are courtesy of King County, except as noted

This Chapter addresses five Best Management Practices (BMPs) that are classified as biofiltration treatment facilities:

Biofilters are vegetated treatment systems (typically grass) that remove pollutants by means of sedimentation, filtration, soil sorption, and/or plant uptake. They are typically configured as swales or flat filter strips.

9.1 Purpose

The BMPs discussed in this Chapter are designed to remove low concentrations and quantities of total suspended solids (TSS), heavy metals, petroleum hydrocarbons, and/or nutrients from stormwater.

9.2 Applications

A biofilter can be used as a basic treatment BMP for contaminated stormwater runoff from roadways, driveways, parking lots, and highly impervious ultra-urban areas or as the first stage of a treatment train. In cases where hydrocarbons, high TSS, or debris would be present in the runoff, such as high-use sites, a pretreatment system for those components would be necessary. Off-line location is preferred to avoid flattening vegetation and the erosive effects of high flows. Biofilters should be considered in retrofit situations where appropriate. (Center for Watershed Protection, 1998))

9.3 Site Suitability

The following factors must be considered for determining site suitability:

- Target pollutants are amenable to biofilter treatment
- Accessibility for Operation and Maintenance
- Suitable growth environment; (soil, etc.) for the vegetation
- Adequate siting for a pre-treatment facility if high petroleum hydrocarbon levels (oil/grease) or high TSS loads could impair treatment capacity or efficiency
- If the biofilter can be impacted by snowmelts and ice, refer to Caraco and Claytor for additional design criteria (USEPA, 1997).

9.4 Best Management Practices

The following five Biofiltration Treatment Facilities BMPs are discussed in this Chapter:

BMP T9.10 – Basic Biofiltration Swale
BMP T9.20 - Wet Biofiltration Swale
BMP T9.30 – Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale
BMP T9.40 – Basic Filter Strip
BMP T9.50 – Narrow Area Filter Strip

BMP T9.10 Basic Biofiltration Swale

Description:

Biofiltration swales are typically shaped as a trapezoid or a parabola as shown in Figure 9.1.

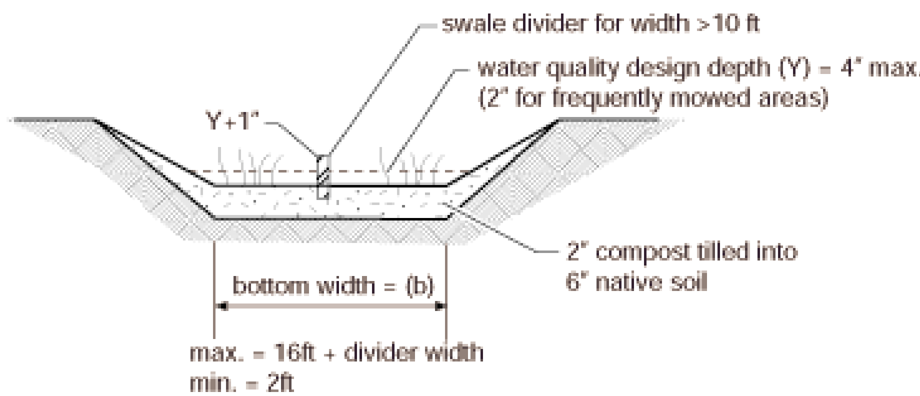


Figure 9.1 Typical Swale Section

Limitations:

Data suggest that the performance of biofiltration swales is highly variable from storm to storm. It is therefore recommended that treatment methods providing more consistent performance, such as sand filters and wet ponds, be considered first. Swales downstream of devices of equal or greater effectiveness can convey runoff but should not be expected to offer a treatment benefit. (Horner, 2000)

Design Criteria:

- *Design criteria are specified in Table 9.1.* A 22 minute hydraulic residence time is used at the peak 15 minute Water Quality Design Flow Rate (Q) representing 91% runoff volume as determined by the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM). (See Volume I)
- Check the hydraulic capacity/stability for inflows greater than design flows. Bypass high flows, or control release rates into the biofilter, if necessary.

- Install level spreaders (min. 1-inch gravel) at the head and every 50 feet in swales of ≥4 feet width. Include sediment cleanouts (weir, settling basin, or equivalent) at the head of the biofilter as needed.
- Use energy dissipators (riprap) for increased downslopes.

Guidance for Bypassing Off-line Facilities: Swales designed in an off-line mode using the new water quality design flow rate and hydraulic residence time are allowed to bypass stormwater at a lower flow rate than allowed in the 1992 manual. Ecology does not know if this will increase or decrease the annual average pollutant removal because no definitive information is known concerning the performance of properly designed swales at flow rates between the new water quality design flow rate and the old water quality design flow rate. Until such information is available, the determination of when to initiate bypass is left to the discretion of the local governments. If a local government chooses to retain the requirement to initiate bypass at the old water quality design flow rate, that flow rate is approximately 2.5 times the new water quality design flow rate. A flow splitter would be designed to initiate bypass at 2.5 times the new water quality design flow rate rather than at the new flow rate. Swales with such higher bypass rates should still be sized using the new approach in this manual.

Sizing Procedure for Biofiltration Swales

This guide provides biofilter swale design procedures in full detail, along with examples.

Preliminary Steps (P)

P-1 Determine the Water Quality design flow rate (Q) in 15-minute time-steps using the WWHM. Until the WWHM provides that information directly, estimate the water quality design flow rate using the 2-year return frequency flow predicted by the WWHM and Table 4.1.

P-2 Establish the longitudinal slope of the proposed biofilter.

P-3 Select a vegetation cover suitable for the site. Refer to Tables 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, and 9.5 (in text) to select vegetation for western Washington.

Design Calculations for Biofiltration Swale

There are a number of ways of applying the design procedure introduced by Chow (Chow, 1959). These variations depend on the order in which steps are performed, what constants are established at the beginning of the process and which ones are calculated, and what values are assigned to the variables selected initially.

The procedure recommended here is an adaptation appropriate for biofiltration applications of the type being installed in the Puget Sound region. This procedure reverses Chow's order, designing first for capacity and then for stability. The capacity analysis emphasizes the promotion of biofiltration, rather than transporting flow with the greatest possible hydraulic efficiency. Therefore, it is based on criteria that promote sedimentation, filtration, and other pollutant removal mechanisms. Because these criteria include a lower maximum velocity than permitted for stability, the biofilter dimensions usually do not have to be modified after a stability check.

Design Steps (D):

D-1. Select the type of vegetation, and design depth of flow (based on frequency of mowing and type of vegetation). (Table 9.1)

D-2. Select a value of Manning's n (Table 9.1 with footnote #3).

Table 9.1 -- Sizing Criteria

Design parameter	BMP T 9.10-Biofiltration swale	BMP T 9.40-Filter strip
Longitudinal Slope	0.015 - 0.025[1]	0.01 - 0.15
Maximum velocity	1 ft / sec (@ WQ design flow rate; for stability, 5ft/sec max. preferred (see also Table 9.3)	0.5 ft / sec
Maximum water depth[2]	2"- if mowed frequently; 4" if mowed infrequently	1-inch max.
Manning coefficient (22)	(0.2 – 0.3)[3](0.24 if mowed infrequently)	0.35 (0.45 if mowed to maintain grass height ≤ 4")
Bed width (bottom)	(2 - 10 ft)[4]	---
Freeboard height	0.5 ft	---
Minimum hydraulic residence time at Water Quality Design Flow Rate	22 minutes (44 minutes for continuous inflow) (See Volume I, Appendix B)	22 minutes
Minimum length	100 ft	Sufficient to achieve hydraulic residence time in the filter strip
Maximum sideslope	3 H : 1 V 4H:1V preferred	Inlet edge ≥ 1" lower than contributing paved area
Max. tributary drainage flowpath	---	150 feet
Max. longitudinal slope of contributing area	---	0.05 (steeper than 0.05 need upslope flow spreading and energy dissipation)
Max. lateral slope of contributing area	---	0.02 (at the edge of the strip inlet)

1. For swales, if the slope is less than 1.5% install an underdrain using a perforated pipe, or equivalent. Amend the soil if necessary to allow effective percolation of water to the underdrain. Install the low-flow drain 6" deep in the soil. Slopes greater than 2.5% need check dams (riprap) at vertical drops of 12-15 inches. Underdrains can be made of 6 inch Schedule 40 PVC perforated pipe with 6" of drain gravel on the pipe. The gravel and pipe must be enclosed by geotextile fabric. (See Figures 9.2 and 9.3)

2 Below the design water depth install an erosion control blanket, at least 4" of topsoil, and the selected biofiltration mix. Above the water line use a straw mulch or sod.

3. This range of Manning's n can be used in the equation; $b = Qn/1.49y^{(1.67)} s^{(0.5)} – Zy$ with wider bottom width b, and lower depth, y, at the same flow. This provides the designer with the option of varying the bottom width of the swale

depending on space limitations. Designing at the higher n within this range at the same flow decreases the hydraulic design depth, thus placing the pollutants in closer contact with the vegetation and the soil.

4. For swale widths up to 16 feet the cross-section can be divided with a berm (concrete, plastic, compacted earthfill) using a flow spreader at the inlet (Figure 9.4)

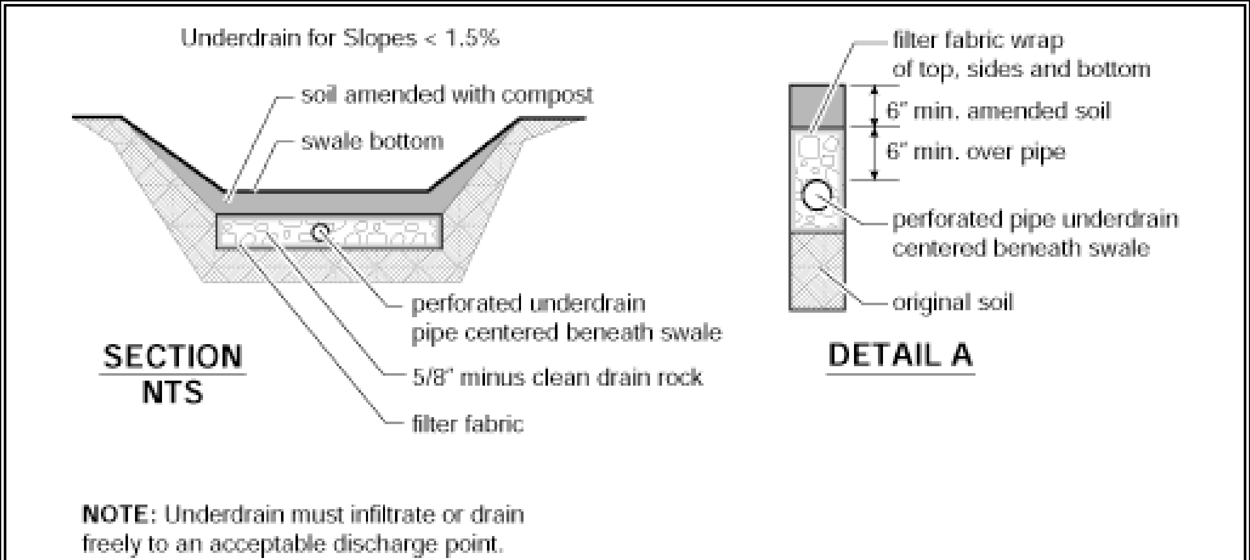


Figure 9.2 Biofiltration Swale Underdrain Detail

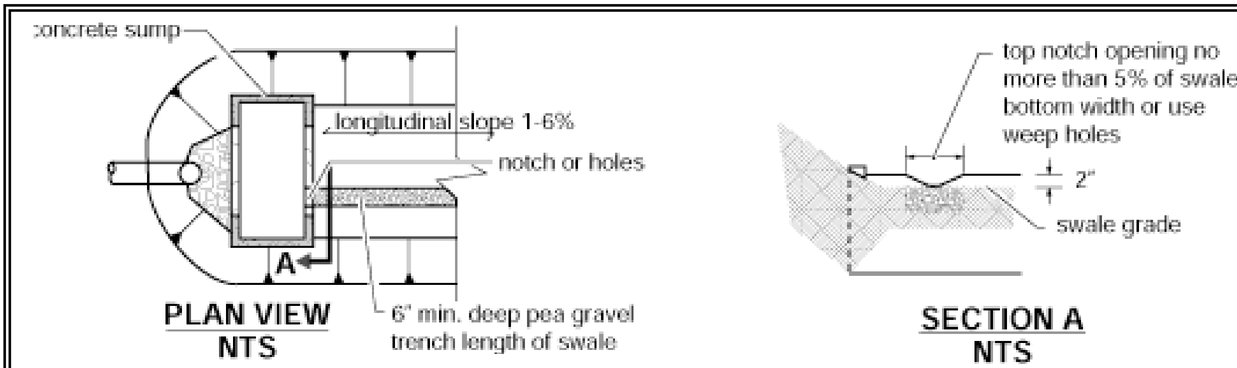


Figure 9.3 Biofiltration Swale Low-Flow Drain Detail

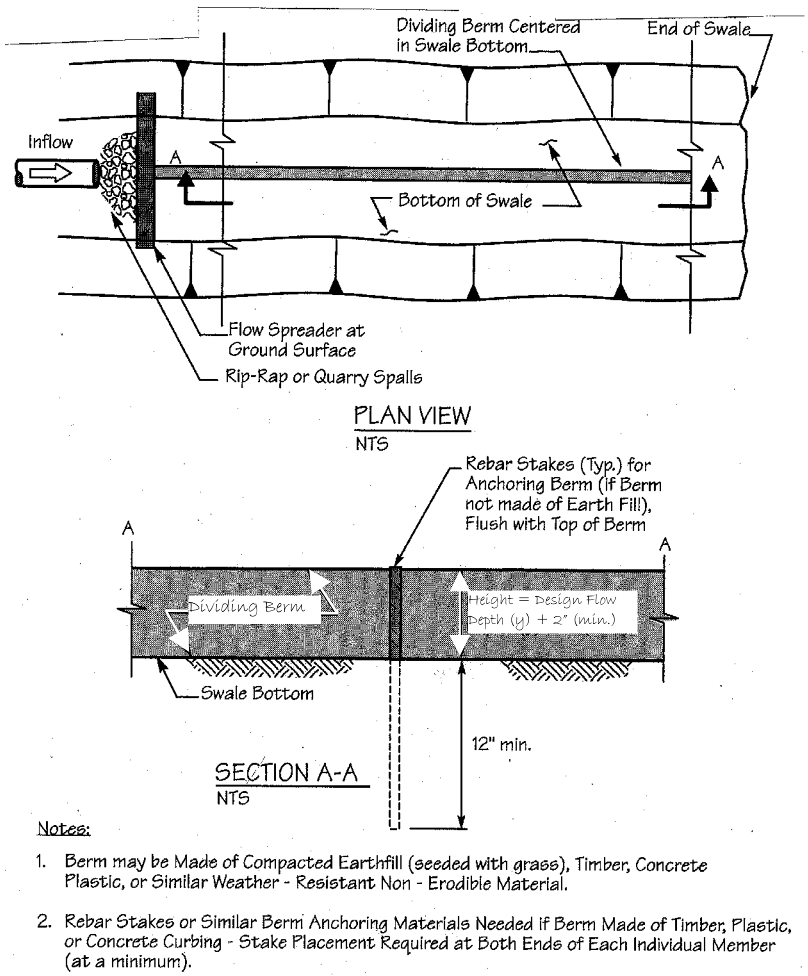


Figure 9.4 Swale Dividing Berm

D-3. Select swale shape-typically trapezoidal or parabolic.

D-4. Use Manning's equation and first approximations relating hydraulic radius and dimensions for the selected swale shape to obtain a working value of a biofilter width dimension:

$$Q = \frac{1.49AR^{0.67}s^{0.5}}{n} \qquad (1)$$

$$A_{rectangle} = Ty \qquad (2)$$

$$R_{rectangle} = \frac{Ty}{T + 2y} \qquad (3)$$

Where:

Q = Water Quality Design flow rate in 15-minute time steps based on WWHM, (ft^3/s, cfs) (See Appendix I-B, Volume I)

n = Manning's n (dimensionless)

s = Longitudinal slope as a ratio of vertical rise/horizontal run (dimensionless)

A = Cross-sectional area (ft^2)

R = Hydraulic radius (ft)

T = top width of trapezoid or width of a rectangle (ft)

y = depth of flow (ft)

b = bottom width of trapezoid (ft)

If equations 2 and 3 are substituted into equation 1 and solved for T, complex equations result that are difficult to solve manually. However, approximate solutions can be found by recognizing that $T \gg y$ and $Z^2 \gg 1$, and that certain terms are nearly negligible. The approximation solutions for rectangular and trapezoidal shapes are:

$R_{rectangle} \approx y$, $R_{trapezoid} \approx y$, $R_{parabolic} \approx 0.67y$, $R_v \approx 0.5y$

Substitute $R_{trapezoid}$ and $A_{trapezoid} = by+Zy^2$ into Equation 1, and solve for the bottom width b (trapezoidal swale):

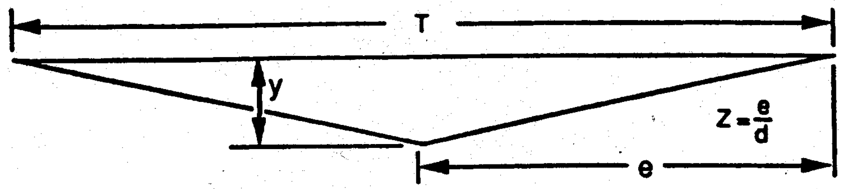
$$b \approx \frac{2.5Qn}{1.49y^{1.67}s^{0.5}} - Zy$$

For a trapezoid, select a side slope Z of at least 3. Compute b and then top width T, where T = b + 2yZ. *(Note: Adjustment factor of 2.5 accounts for the differential between Water Quality design flow rate and the SBUH design flow.*

If b for a swale is greater than 10 ft, either investigate how Q can be reduced, divide the flow by installing a low berm, or arbitrarily set b = 10 ft and continue with the analysis. For other swale shapes refer to Fig. 9.5.

CHANNEL GEOMETRY

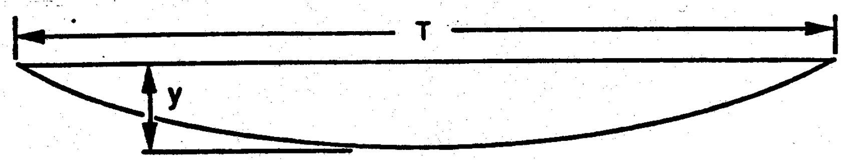
V - Shape



Cross-Sectional Area (A) = Zy^2
Top Width (T) = $2yZ$

Hydraulic Radius (R) = $\frac{Zy}{2\sqrt{Z^2 + 1}}$

Parabolic Shape

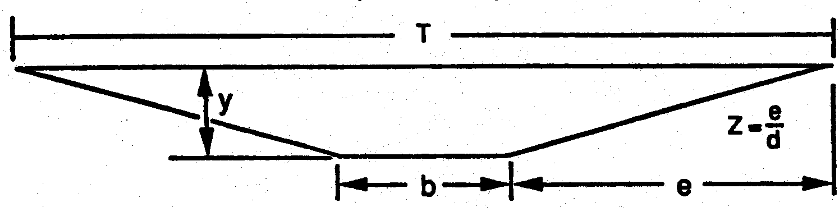


Cross-Sectional Area (A) = $\frac{2}{3}Ty$

Top Width (T) = $\frac{1.5A}{y}$

Hydraulic Radius (R) = $\frac{T^2y}{1.5T^2 + 4y^2}$

Trapezoidal Shape



Cross-Sectional Area (A) = $by + Zy^2$
Top Width (T) = $b + 2yz$

Hydraulic Radius (R) = $\frac{by + Zy^2}{b + 2y\sqrt{Z^2 + 1}}$

Figure 9.5 Geometric Formulas for Common Swale Shapes

Source: Livingston, et al, 1984

D-5. Compute A:

$$A_{rectangle} = Ty \quad \text{or} \quad A_{trapazoid} = by + Zy^2$$

$$A_{filter\ strip} = Ty$$

D-6. Compute the flow velocity at design flow rate:

$$V = \frac{Q}{A}$$

If V >1.0 ft/sec (or V>0.5 ft/sec for a filter strip), repeat steps D-1 to D-6 until the condition is met. A velocity greater than 1.0 ft/sec was found to flatten grasses, thus reducing filtration. A velocity lower than this maximum value will allow a 22-minute hydraulic residence time criterion in a shorter biofilter. If the value of V suggests that a longer biofilter will be needed than space permits, investigate how Q can be reduced, or increase y and/or T (up to the allowable maximum values) and repeat the analysis.

D-7. Compute the swale length (L, ft)

L = Vt (60 sec/min)

Where: t = hydraulic residence time (min)

Use t = 22 minutes for this calculation (use t = 44 minutes for a continuous inflow biofiltration swale). If a biofilter length is greater than the space permits, follow the advice in step D-6.

If a length less than 100 feet results from this analysis, increase it to 100 feet, the minimum allowed. In this case, it may be possible to save some space in width and still meet all criteria. This possibility can be checked by computing V in the 100 ft biofilter for t = 22 minutes, recalculating A (if V < 1.0 ft/sec) and recalculating T.

D-8. If there is still not sufficient space for the biofilter, the local government and the project proponent should consider the following solutions (listed in order of preference):

1) Divide the site drainage to flow to multiple biofilters.
2) Use infiltration to provide lower discharge rates to the biofilter (only if the criteria and Site Suitability Criteria in Chapter 7 are met).
3) Increase vegetation height and design depth of flow (note: the design must ensure that vegetation remains standing during design flow).
4) Reduce the developed surface area to gain space for biofiltration.
5) Increase the longitudinal slope.
6) Increase the side slopes.
7) Nest the biofilter within or around another BMP.

Check for Stability (Minimizing Erosion)

The stability check must be performed for the combination of highest expected flow and least vegetation coverage and height. A check is not required for biofiltration swales that are located "off-line" from the primary conveyance/detention system, i.e., when flows in excess of the water quality design flow rate bypass the biofilter. Off-line is the desired configuration.

Maintain the same units as in the biofiltration capacity analysis.

SC-1. Unless runoff at rates at higher than the water quality design flow rate (or at rates higher than 2.5x the water quality design flow rate as an alternative allowed in this guidance) will bypass the biofilter, perform the stability check for the 100-year, return frequency flow using 15-minute time steps using an approved continuous runoff model. Until WWHM peak flow rates in 15-minute time steps are available the designer can use the WWHM 100-yr. hourly peak flows times an adjustment factor of 1.6 to approximate peak flows in 15-minute time steps.

SC-2. Estimate the vegetation coverage ("good" or "fair") and height on the first occasion that the biofilter will receive flow, or whenever the coverage and height will be least. Avoid flow introduction during the vegetation establishment period by timing planting or bypassing.

SC-3. Estimate the degree of retardance from Table 9.2. When uncertain, be conservative by selecting a relatively low degree.

Establish the maximum permissible velocity for erosion prevention (Vmax) from Table 9.3.

Stability Check Steps (SC)

Table 9.2 -- Guide for Selecting Degree of Retardance [(a)]

Coverage	Average Grass Height (inches)	Degree of Retardance
Good	<2	E. Very Low
	2-6	D. Low
	6-10	C. Moderate
	11-24	B. High
	>30	A. Very High
Fair	<2	E. Very Low
	2-6	D. Low
	6-10	D. Low
	11-24	C. Moderate
	>30	B. High

See Chow (1959).. In addition, Chow recommended selection of retardance C for a grass-legume mixture 6-8 inches high and D for a mixture 4-5 inches high. No retardance recommendations have appeared for emergent wetland species. Therefore, judgment must be used. Since these species generally grow less densely than grasses, using a "fair" coverage would be a reasonable approach.

Table 9.3 -- Guide for Selecting Maximum Permissible Swale Velocities for Stability*			
		Maximum Velocity (feet per second [m/s])	
Cover	Slope (percent)	Erosion-Resistant Soils	Easily Eroded Soils
Kentucky bluegrass Tall fescue	0-5	6 [1.8]	5 [1.5]
Kentucky bluegrass Ryegrasses Western wheat-grass	5-10	5 [1.5]	4 [1.2]
Grass-legume Mixture	0.5 5-10	5 [1.5] 4 [1.2]	4 [1.2] 3 [0.9]
Red fescue	0.5	3 [0.9]	2.5 [0.8]
Redtop	5-10	Not recommended	Not recommended

*Adapted from Chow (1959), Livingston et al. (1984), and Goldman et al. (1986).

SC-4. Select a trial Manning's n. The minimum value for poor vegetation cover and low height (possibly, knocked from the vertical by high flow) is 0.033. A good initial choice under these conditions is 0.04.

SC-5. Refer to Figure 9.6 to obtain a first approximation for VR.

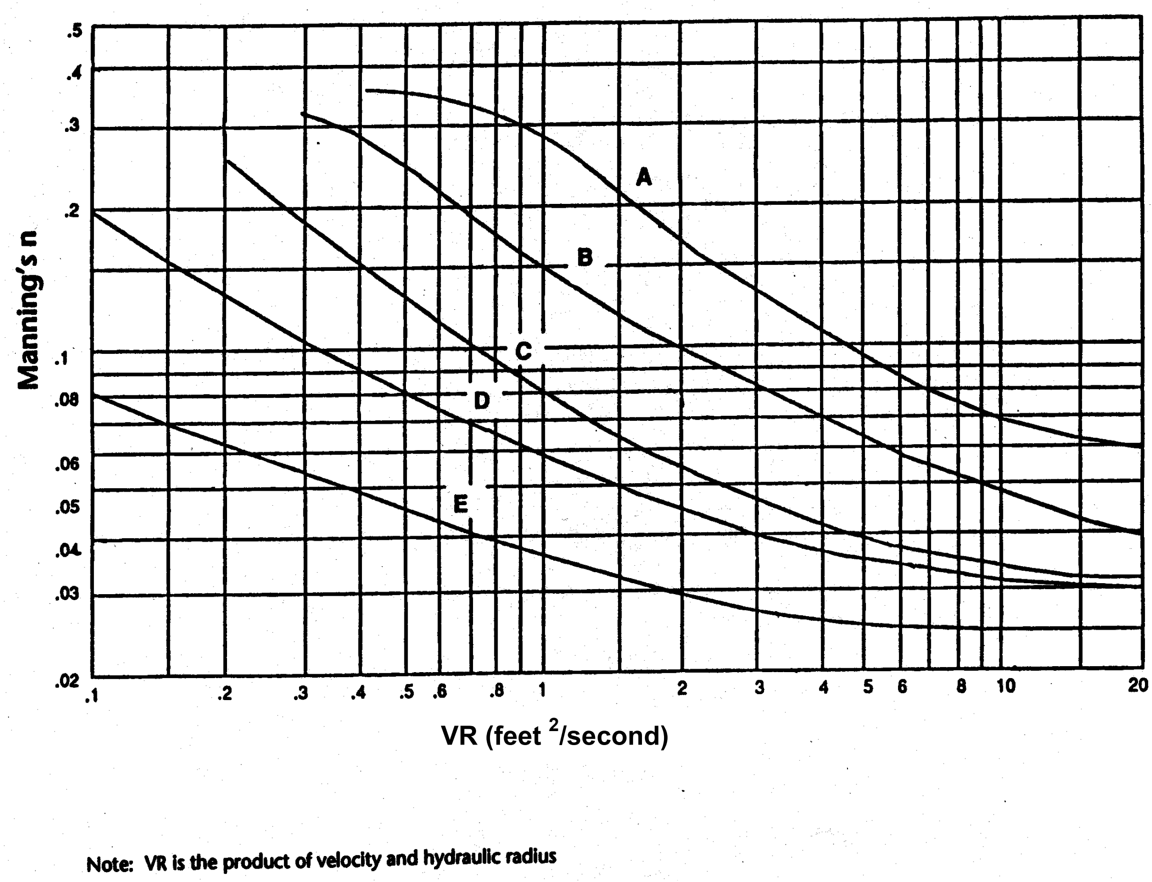


Figure 9.6 The Relationship of Manning's n with VR for Various Degrees of Flow Retardance (A-E)

Source: Livingston, et al, 1984

SC-6. Compute hydraulic radius, R, from VR in Figure 9.6 and Vmax in Table 9.3.

SC-7. Use Manning's equation to solve for the actual VR.

SC-8. Compare the actual VR from step SC-7 and first approximation from step SC-5. If they do not agree within 5 percent, repeat steps SC-4 to SC-8 until acceptable agreement is reached. If n<0.033 is needed to get agreement, set n = 0.033, repeat step SC-7, and then proceed to step SC-9.

SC-9. Compute the actual V for the final design conditions:

Check to be sure $V < V_{max}$

SC-10. Compute the required swale cross-sectional area, A, for stability:

SC-11. Compare the A, computed in step SC-10 of the stability analysis, with the A from the biofiltration capacity analysis (step D-5).

If less area is required for stability than is provided for capacity, the capacity design is acceptable. If not, use A from step SC-10 of the stability analysis and recalculate channel dimensions.

SC-12. Calculate the depth of flow at the stability check design flow rate condition for the final dimensions and use A from step SC-10.

SC-13. Compare the depth from step SC-12 to the depth used in the biofiltration capacity design (Step D-1). Use the larger of the two and add 0.5 ft. of freeboard to obtain the total depth (y_t) of the swale. Calculate the top width for the full depth using the appropriate equation.

SC-14. Recalculate the hydraulic radius: (use b from Step D-4 calculated previously for biofiltration capacity, or Step SC-11, as appropriate, and y_t = total depth from Step SC-13)

SC-15. Make a final check for capacity based on the stability check design storm (this check will ensure that capacity is adequate if the largest expected event coincides with the greatest retardance). Use Equation 1, a Manning's n selected in step D-2, and the calculated channel dimensions, including freeboard, to compute the flow capacity of the channel under these conditions. Use R from step SC-14, above, and $A = b(y_t) + Z(y_t)^2$ using b from Step D-4, D-15, or SC-11 as appropriate.

If the flow capacity is less than the stability check design storm flow rate, increase the channel cross-sectional area as needed for this conveyance. Specify the new channel dimensions.

Completion Step (CO)

CO. Review all of the criteria and guidelines for biofilter planning, design, installation, and operation above and specify all of the appropriate features for the application.

Example of Design Calculations for Biofiltration Swales

Preliminary Steps

P-1. Assume that the WWHM based Water Quality Design Flow Rate in 15 minute time-steps, Q, is 0.2 cfs.

P-2. Assume the slope (s) is 2 percent.

P-3. Assume the vegetation will be a grass-legume mixture and it will be infrequently mowed.

Design for Biofiltration Swale Capacity

D-1. Set winter grass height at 5" and the design flow depth (y) at 3 inches.

D-2. Use n = 0.20 to $n_2 = 0.30$

D-3. Base the design on a trapezoidal shape, with a side slope Z = 3.

D-4a. Calculate the bottom width, b;

Where:

n = 0.20 y = 0.25 ft
Q = 0.2 cfs s = 0.02
Z = 3

$$b \approx \frac{2.5Qn}{1.49y^{1.67}s^{0.5}} - Zy$$

$b \approx 4.0$ ft

At n_2; $b_2 = 6.5$ feet

D-4b. Calculate the top width (T)

T = b + 2yZ = 4.0+ [2(0.25)(3)] = 5.5 feet

D-5. Calculate the cross-sectional area (A)

$A = by + Zy^2 = (4.0)(0.25) + (3)(0.25^2) = 1.19\ ft^2$

D-6. Calculate the flow velocity (V)

$$V = \frac{Q}{A} = 0.17\ ft/sec$$

0.17<1.0 ft/sec $\therefore$ OK

D-7 Calculate the Length (L)

$L = Vt(60 \text{ sec/min})$

$= 0.17\ (22)(60)$

For t = 22 min, L = 224 ft. at n

At n_2; L = 145 ft.

Because b is less than the maximum value, it may be possible to reduce L by increasing b. For example, if L = 180 ft is desired at n, then:

$$V = \frac{L}{60t} = 0.136 \text{ ft/sec}$$

$$A = \frac{Q}{V} = 1.47 \text{ ft}^2$$

$$b = \frac{A - Zy^2}{y} = 5.13 \text{ ft at } n,$$

At n_2 and L = 130 feet; b_2 = 7.41 ft.

Note: b and L are calculated at the same flow.

Check for Channel Stability

SC-1. Base the check on passing the 100-year, return frequency flow (15 minute time steps) through a swale with a mixture of Kentucky bluegrass and tall fescue on loose erodible soil. Until WWHM peak flow rates in 15-minute time steps are available the designer can use the WWHM 100-yr. hourly peak flows times an adjustment factor of 1.6 to approximate peak flows in 15-minute time steps. Assume that the adjusted peak Q is1.92 cfs.

SC-2. Base the check on a grass height of 3 inches with "fair" coverage (lowest mowed height and least cover, assuming flow bypasses or does not occur during grass establishment).

SC-3. From Table 9.2, Degree of Retardance = D (low)
From Table 9.3 set V_{max} = 5 ft/sec

SC-4. Select trial Manning's n = 0.04

SC-5. From Figure 9.6, VR_{appx} = 3 ft²/s

SC-6. Calculate R

$$R = \frac{VR_{appx}}{V_{max}} = 0.6 \text{ ft}$$

SC-7. Calculate VR_{actual}

$$VR_{actual} = \frac{1.49}{n} R^{1.67} s^{0.5} = 2.24\ ft^2 / sec$$

SC-8. VR_{actual} from step SC-7 < VR_{appx} from step SC-5 by > 5%.

Select new trial n = 0.038

Figure 9.6: $VR_{appx} = 4\ ft^2/s$

R = 0.8 ft.

$VR_{actual} = 3.81\ ft^2/s$ (within 5% of $VR_{appx} = 4$)

SC-9. Calculate V

$$V = \frac{VR_{actual}}{R} = \frac{3.81}{0.8} = 4.76\ ft / sec$$

V = 4.76 ft/sec <5 ft/sec $\therefore$ OK

SC-10. Calculate Stability Area

$$A_{Stability} = \frac{Q}{V} = \frac{1.92}{4.76} = 0.4\ ft^2$$

SC-11. Stability Check

$A_{Stability} = 0.4\ ft^2$ is less than $A_{Capacity}$ from step D-5 ($A_{Capacity} = 1.19\ ft^2$) or D-7 ($A_{Capacity} = 1.47\ ft^2$). $\therefore$ OK

At n_2 and b_2: $A_{capacity} = 1.81\ ft^2$ from D-5, and $A_{capacity} = 2.04\ ft^2$ from D-7: $\therefore$ OK

If $A_{Stability} > A_{Capacity}$, it will be necessary to select new trial sizes for width and flow depth (based on space and other considerations), recalculate $A_{Capacity}$, and repeat steps SC-10 and SC-11.

SC-12. Calculate depth of flow at the stability design flow rate condition using the quadratic equation solution:

$$y = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4Z(-A)}}{2Z}$$

For b = 5.13, y = 0.075 ft (positive root)

SC-13. Greater depth is 0.25-foot, which was the basis for the biofiltration capacity design Add 0.05 feet freeboard to that depth.

Total channel depth = 0.75 ft

Top Width = b + 2yZ

= 5.13 + (2)(0.75)(3)

= 9.63 ft

SC-14. Recalculate hydraulic radius and flow rate

For $b = 5.13$ ft, $y = 0.75$ ft

$Z = 3$, $s = 0.02$, $n = 0.2$

$A = by + Zy^2 = 5.54$ ft²

$R = by + Zy^2/\{b + 2y*\text{sqroot}(Z^2 + 1)\} = 0.56$ ft.

SC-15. Calculate Flow Capacity at Greatest Resistance

$$Q = \frac{1.49AR^{0.67}s^{0.5}}{n} = 3.9 \text{ cfs}$$

$Q = 3.9 \text{ cfs} > 1.6 \text{ cfs} \therefore$ OK

At n2 and b2: $Q = 3.7$ cfs $\therefore$ OK

Completion Step

CO-1. Assume 180 feet of swale length is available.

The final channel dimensions are:

Bottom width, $b = 5.13$ feet
Channel depth= 0.75 feet
Top width $= b + 2yZ = 9.63$ feet

CO-2. At swale length of 130 feet and n_2:

Bottom width, $b_2 = 7.41$ feet
Channel depth = 0.75 feet
Top width $= b_2 + 2yZ = 11.91$ feet

No check dams are needed for a 2% slope.

Soil Criteria

- The following top soil mix at least 8-inch deep:
  - Sandy loam 60-90 %
  - Clay 0-10 %
  - Composted organic matter, 10-30 % (excluding animal waste, toxics)
- Use compost amended soil where practicable
- Till to at least 8-inch depth
- For longitudinal slopes of < 2 percent use more sand to obtain more infiltration
- If ground water contamination is a concern, seal the bed with clay or a geomembrane liner

Vegetation Criteria

- See Tables 9.4, 9.5 and 9.6 for recommended grasses, wetland plants, and groundcovers.
- Select fine, turf-forming, water-resistant grasses where vegetative growth and moisture will be adequate for growth.
- Irrigate if moisture is insufficient during dry weather season.
- Use sod with low clay content and where needed to initiate adequate vegetative growth. Preferably sod should be laid to a minimum of one-foot vertical depth above the swale bottom.
- Consider sun/shade conditions for adequate vegetative growth and avoid prolonged shading of any portion not planted with shade tolerant vegetation.
- Stabilize soil areas upslope of the biofilter to prevent erosion
- Fertilizing a biofilter should be avoided if at all possible in any application where nutrient control is an objective. Test the soil for nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium and consult with a landscape professional about the need for fertilizer in relation to soil nutrition and vegetation requirements. If use of a fertilizer cannot be avoided, use a slow-release fertilizer formulation in the least amount needed.

Recommended grasses (see Tables 9.4 and 9.5 below)

Table 9.4 -- Grass seed mixes suitable for biofiltration swale treatment areas

Mix 1		Mix 2	
75-80 percent	tall or meadow fescue	60-70 percent	tall fescue
10-15 percent	seaside/colonial bentgrass	10-15 percent	seaside/colonial bentgrass
5-10 percent	redtop	10-15 percent	meadow foxtail
		6-10 percent	alsike clover
		1-5 percent	marshfield big trefoil
		1-6 percent	redtop

Note: *all percentages are by weight. * based on Briargreen, Inc.*

Table 9.5 -- Groundcovers and grasses suitable for the upper side slopes of a biofiltration swale in western Washington	
Groundcovers	
kinnikinnick*	*Arctostaphylos uva-ursi*
St. John's-wort	*Hypericum perforatum*
Epimedium	*Epimedium grandiflorum*
creeping forget-me-not	*Omphalodes verna*
--	*Euonymus lanceolata*
yellow-root	*Xanthorhiza simplissima*
--	*Genista*
white lawn clover	*Trifolium repens*
white sweet clover*	*Melilotus alba*
-------	*Rubus calycinoides*
strawberry*	*Fragaria chiloensis*
broadleaf lupine*	*Lupinus latifolius*
Grasses (drought-tolerant, minimum mowing)	
dwarf tall fescues	*Festuca* spp. (e.g., Many Mustang, Silverado)
hard fescue	*Festuca ovina duriuscula* (e.g., Reliant, Aurora)
tufted fescue	*Festuca amethystina*
buffalo grass	*Buchloe dactyloides*
red fescue*	*Festuca rubra*
tall fescue grass*	*Festuca arundinacea*
blue oatgrass	*Helictotrichon sempervirens*

Construction Criteria

The biofiltration swale should not be put into operation until areas of exposed soil in the contributing drainage catchment have been sufficiently stabilized. Deposition of eroded soils can impede the growth of grass in the swale and reduce swale treatment effectiveness. Thus, effective erosion and sediment control measures should remain in place until the swale vegetation is established (see Volume II for erosion and sediment control BMPs). Avoid compaction during construction. Grade biofilters to attain uniform longitudinal and lateral slopes

Maintenance Criteria

- Inspect biofilters at least once every 6 months, preferably during storm events, and also after storm events of > 0.5 inch rainfall/ 24 hours. Maintain adequate grass growth and eliminate bare spots.
- Mow grasses, if needed for good growth {typically maintain at 4 – 9 inches and not below design flow level (King County, 1998)}.
- Remove sediment as needed at head of the swale if grass growth is inhibited in greater than 10 percent of the swale, or if the sediment is blocking the distribution and entry of the water (King County, 1998).
- Remove leaves, litter, and oily materials, and re-seed or resod, and regrade, as needed. Clean curb cuts and level spreaders as needed.

Prevent scouring and soil erosion in the biofilter. If flow channeling occurs, regrade and reseed the biofilter, as necessary.

Maintain access to biofilter inlet, outlet, and to mowing (Figure 9.7)

- If a swale is equipped with underdrains, vehicular traffic on the swale bottom (other than grass mowing equipment) should be avoided to prevent damage to the drainpipes.

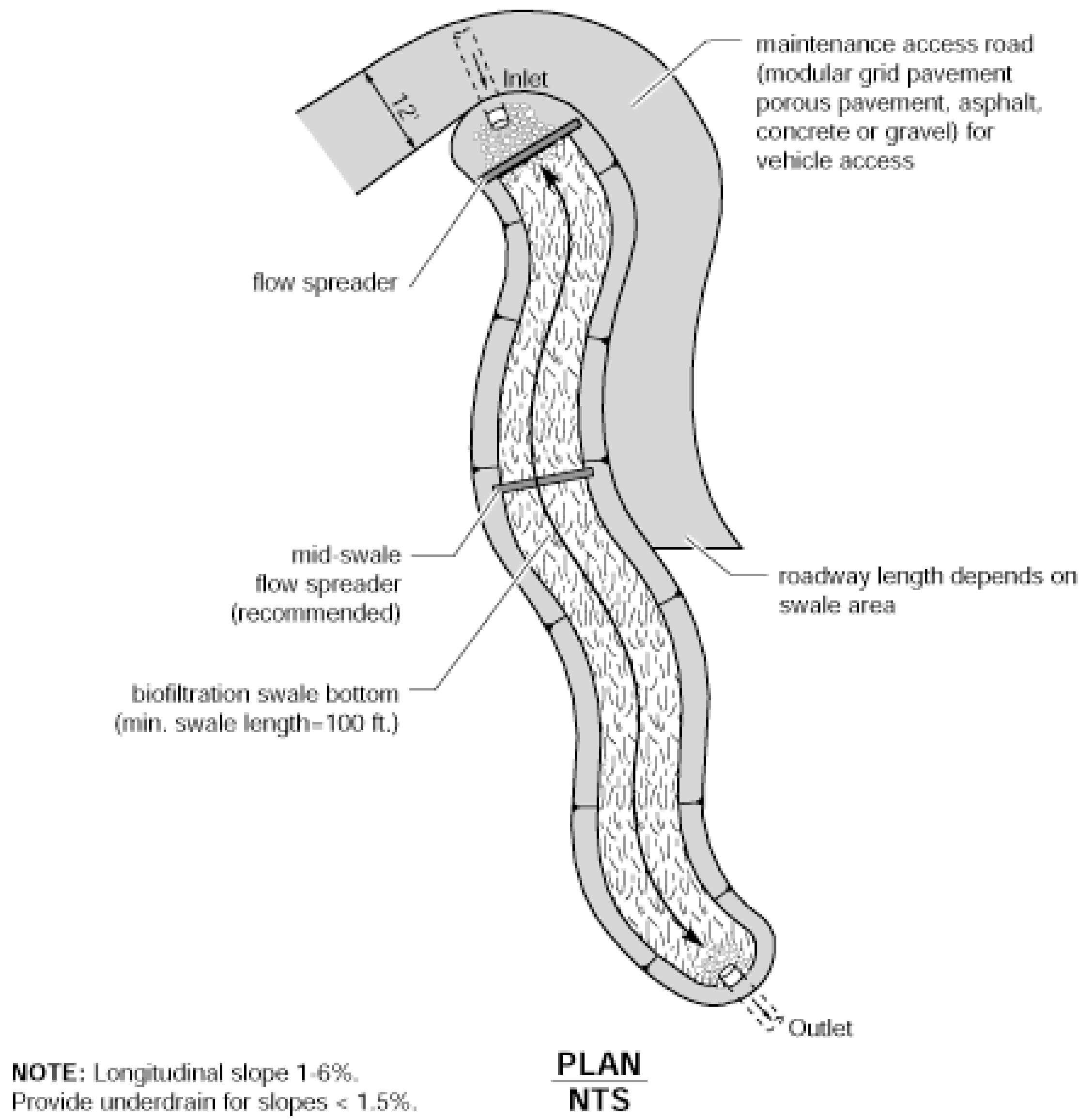


Figure 9.7 Biofiltration Swale Access Features

BMP T9.20 Wet Biofiltration Swale

Description

A *wet biofiltration swale* is a variation of a basic biofiltration swale for use where the longitudinal slope is slight, water tables are high, or continuous low base flow is likely to result in saturated soil conditions. Where saturation exceeds about 2 weeks, typical grasses will die. Thus, vegetation specifically adapted to saturated soil conditions is needed. Different vegetation in turn requires modification of several of the design parameters for the basic biofiltration swale.

Performance Objectives

To remove low concentrations of pollutants such as TSS, heavy metals, nutrients, and petroleum hydrocarbons.

Applications/Limitations

Wet biofiltration swales are applied where a basic biofiltration swale is desired but not allowed or advisable because one or more of the following conditions exist:

- The swale is on till soils and is downstream of a detention pond providing flow control.
- Saturated soil conditions are likely because of seeps or base flows on the site.
- Longitudinal slopes are slight (generally less than 2 percent).

Design Criteria

Use the same design approach as for basic biofiltration swales except to add the following:

Adjust for extended wet season flow. If the swale will be downstream of a detention pond providing flow control, multiply the treatment area (bottom width times length) of the swale by 2, and readjust the swale length, if desired. Maintain a 5:1 length to width ratio.

Intent: An increase in the treatment area of swales following detention ponds is required because of the differences in vegetation established in a constant flow environment. Flows following detention are much more prolonged. These prolonged flows result in more stream-like conditions than are typical for other wet biofilter situations. Since vegetation growing in streams is often less dense, this increase in treatment area is needed to ensure that equivalent pollutant removal is achieved in extended flow situations.

Swale Geometry: Same as specified for basic biofiltration swales except for the following modifications:

> ***Criterion 1:*** The bottom width may be increased to 25 feet maximum, but a length-to-width ratio of 5:1 must be provided. No longitudinal dividing berm is needed. *Note: The minimum swale length is still 100 feet.*
>
> ***Criterion 2:*** If longitudinal slopes are greater than 2 percent, the wet swale must be stepped so that the slope within the stepped sections averages 2 percent. Steps may be made of retaining walls, log check dams, or short riprap sections. **No underdrain or low-flow drain is required**.

High-Flow Bypass: A high-flow bypass is required for flows greater than the water quality design flow to protect wetland vegetation from damage. Unlike grass, wetland vegetation will not quickly regain an upright attitude after being laid down by high flows. New growth, usually from the base of the plant, often taking several weeks, is required to regain its upright form The bypass may be an open channel parallel to the wet biofiltration swale. (NOTE: Local governments may continue to require 2.5 times the new water quality design flow rate to be directed through off-line wet biofiltration swales. See "Guidance for Bypassing Off-line Facilities" under BMP T 9.10 – Basic Biofiltration Swales.)

Water Depth and Base Flow: Same as for basic biofiltration swales except the design water depth shall be 4 inches for all wetland vegetation selections, and **no underdrains or low-flow drains are required**.

Flow Velocity, Energy Dissipation, and Flow Spreading: Same as for basic biofiltration swales except no flow spreader is needed.

Access: Same as for basic biofiltration swales except access is only required to the inflow and the outflow of the swale; access along the length of the swale is not required. Also, wheel strips may not be used for access in the swale.

Intent: An access road is not required along the length of a wet swale because of infrequent access needs. Frequent mowing or harvesting is not desirable. In addition, wetland plants are fairly resilient to sediment-induced changes in water depth, so the need for access should be infrequent.

Soil Amendment: Same as for basic biofiltration swales.

Planting Requirements: Same as for basic biofiltration swales except for the following modifications:

1. A list of acceptable plants and recommended spacing is shown in Table 9.6. In general, it is best to plant several species to increase the likelihood that at least some of the selected species will find growing conditions favorable.

2. A wetland seed mix may be applied by hydroseeding, but if coverage is poor, planting of rootstock or nursery stock is required. Poor coverage is considered to be more than 30 percent bare area through the upper 2/3 of the swale after four weeks.

Recommended Design Features: Same as for basic biofiltration swales

Construction Considerations: Same as for basic biofiltration swales

Maintenance Considerations: Same as for basic biofiltration swales except mowing of wetland vegetation is not required. However, harvesting of very dense vegetation may be desirable in the fall after plant die-back to prevent the sloughing of excess organic material into receiving waters. Many native *Juncus* species remain green throughout the winter; therefore, fall harvesting of *Juncus* species is not recommended.

Table 9.6 Recommended plants for wet biofiltration swale

Common Name	Scientific Name	Spacing (on center)
Shortawn foxtail	*Alopecurus aequalis*	seed
Water foxtail	*Alopecurus geniculatus*	seed
Spike rush	*Eleocharis spp.*	4 inches
Slough sedge*	*Carex obnupta*	6 inches or seed
Sawbeak sedge	*Carex stipata*	6 inches
Sedge	*Carex* spp.	6 inches
Western mannagrass	*Glyceria occidentalis*	seed
Velvetgrass	*Holcus mollis*	seed
Slender rush	*Juncus tenuis*	6 inches
Watercress*	*Rorippa nasturtium-aquaticum*	12 inches
Water parsley*	*Oenanthe sarmentosa*	6 inches
Hardstem bulrush	*Scirpus acutus*	6 inches
Small-fruited bulrush	*Scirpus microcarpus*	12 inches

** Good choices for swales with significant periods of flow, such as those downstream of a detention facility.*

Note: Cattail (Typha latifolia) is not appropriate for most wet swales because of its very dense and clumping growth habit which prevents water from filtering through the clump.

BMP T9.30 Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale

Description

In situations where water enters a biofiltration swale continuously along the side slope rather than discretely at the head, a different design approach–the continuous inflow biofiltration swale–is needed. The basic swale design is modified by increasing swale length to achieve an equivalent average residence time.

Applications

A continuous inflow biofiltration swale is to be **used when inflows are not concentrated**, such as locations along the shoulder of a road without curbs. This design may also be **used where frequent, small point flows enter a swale**, such as through curb inlet ports spaced at intervals along a road, or from a parking lot with frequent curb cuts. In general, no inlet port should carry more than about 10 percent of the flow.

A continuous inflow swale is not appropriate for a situation in which significant lateral flows enter a swale at some point downstream from the head of the swale. In this situation, the swale width and length must be recalculated from the point of confluence to the discharge point in order to provide adequate treatment for the increased flows.

Design Criteria

Same as specified for **basic biofiltration swale** except for the following:

- The design flow for continuous inflow swales must include runoff from the pervious side slopes draining to the swale along the entire swale length.
- If only a single design flow is used, the flow rate at the outlet should be used. The goal is to achieve an average residence time through the swale of 22 minutes. Assuming an even distribution of inflow into the side of the swale double the hydraulic residence time to a minimum of 44 minutes.
- For continuous inflow biofiltration swales, interior side slopes above the WQ design treatment elevation shall be planted in grass. A typical lawn seed mix or the biofiltration seed mixes are acceptable. Landscape plants or groundcovers other than grass may not be used anywhere between the runoff inflow elevation and the bottom of the swale.

Intent: *The use of grass on interior side slopes reduces the chance of soil erosion and transfer of pollutants from landscape areas to the biofiltration treatment area.*

BMP T9.40 Basic Filter Strip

Description:

A basic filter strip is flat with no side slopes (Figure 9.8). Contaminated stormwater is distributed as sheet flow across the inlet width of a biofilter strip.

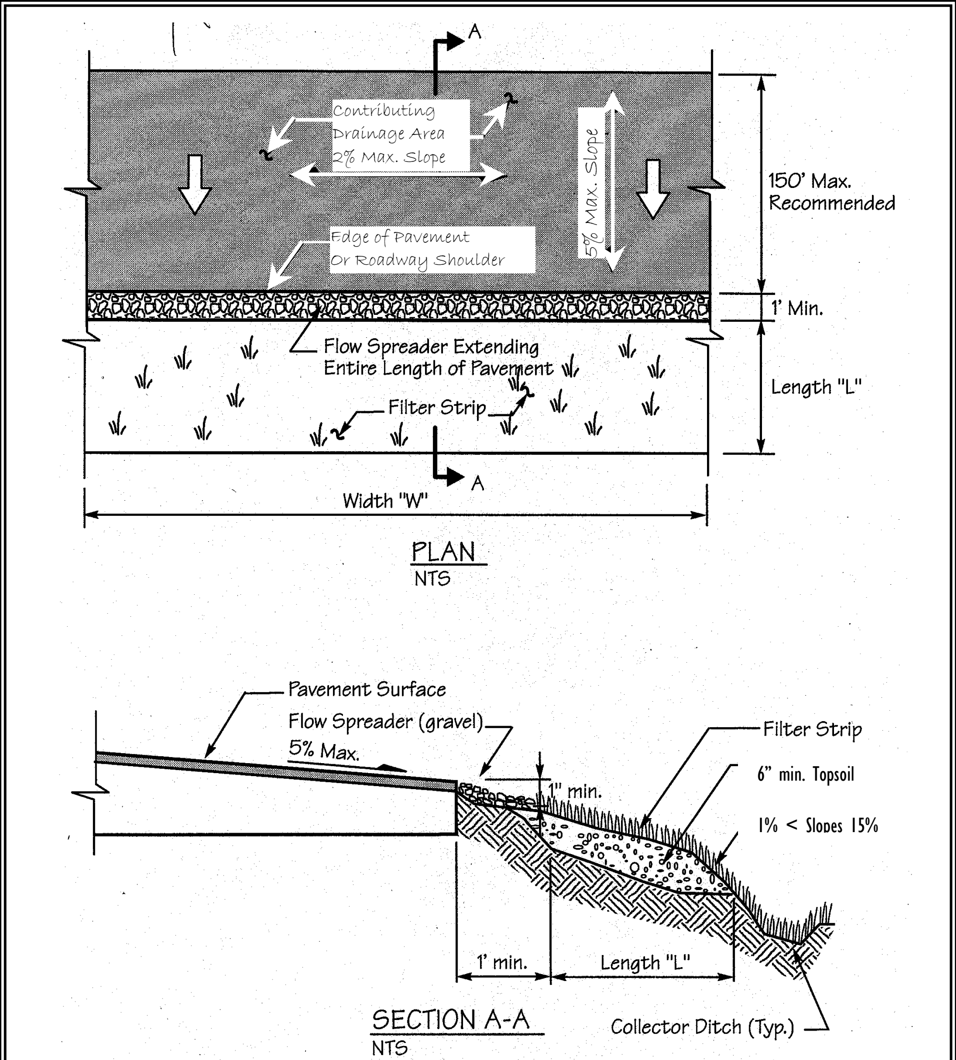


Figure 9.8 Typical Filter Strip

Applications/Limitations:

The basic filter strip is typically used on-line and adjacent and parallel to a paved area such as parking lots, driveways, and roadways.

Design Criteria for Filter strips:

- Use the Design Criteria specified in Table 9.3
- Filter strips should only receive sheet flow.
- Use curb cuts ≥ 12-inch wide and 1-inch above the filter strip inlet.

Calculate the design flow depth using Manning's equation as follows:

$$Q = (1.49A\ R^{0.67}\ s^{0.5})/n$$

Substituting for AR:

$$Q = (1.49Ty^{1.67}\ s^{0.5})/n$$

Where:

$Ty = A_{rectangle,\ ft}{}^{2}$
$y \approx R_{rectangle}$, design depth of flow, ft. (1 inch maximum)
Q = peak Water Quality design flow rate based on WWHM, ft^3/sec (See Appendix I-B, Volume I)
n = Manning's roughness coefficient
s = Longitudinal slope of filter strip parallel to direction of flow
T = Width of filter strip perpendicular to the direction of flow, ft.
A = Filter strip inlet cross-sectional flow area (rectangular), ft^2
R = hydraulic radius, ft.

Rearranging for y:

$$y = [2.5Qn/1.49Ts^{0.5}]^{0.6}$$

y must not exceed 1 inch

Note: As in swale design an adjustment factor of 2.5 accounts for the differential between the WWHM Water Quality design flow rate and the SBUH design flow

Calculate the design flow velocity V, ft./sec., through the filter strip:

$$V = Q/Ty$$

V must not exceed 0.5 ft./sec

Calculate required length, ft., of the filter strip at the minimum hydraulic residence time, t ,of 22 minutes:

$$\mathbf{L = tV = 1320\ V}$$

BMP T9.50 Narrow Area Filter Strip

Description:

This section describes a filter strip design[1] for impervious areas with flowpaths of 30 feet or less that can drain along their widest dimension to grassy areas.

Applications/Limitations:

A narrow area filter strip could be used at roadways with limited right-of-way, or for narrow parking strips, the narrow strip. If space is available to use the basic filter strip design, that design should be used in preference to the narrow filter strip.

The treatment objectives, applications and limitations, design criteria, materials specifications, and construction and maintenance requirements set forth in the basic filter strip design apply to narrow filter strip applications.

Design Criteria:

Design criteria for narrow area filter strips are the *same as specified for basic filter strips*. The sizing of a narrow area filter strip is based on the length of flowpath draining to the filter strip and the longitudinal slope of the filter strip itself (parallel to the flowpath).

Step 1: Determine the length of the flowpath from the upstream to the downstream edge of the impervious area draining sheet flow to the strip. Normally this is the same as the width of the paved area, but if the site is sloped, the flow path may be longer than the width of the impervious area.

Step 2: Calculate the longitudinal slope of the filter strip (along the direction of unconcentrated flow), averaged over the total width of the filter strip. The minimum sizing slope is 2 percent. If the slope is less than 2 percent, use 2 percent for sizing purposes. The maximum allowable filter strip slope is 20 percent. If the slope exceeds 20 percent, the filter strip must be stepped down the slope so that the treatment areas between drop sections do not have a longitudinal slope greater than 20 percent. Drop sections must be provided with erosion protection at the base and flow spreaders to re-spread flows.

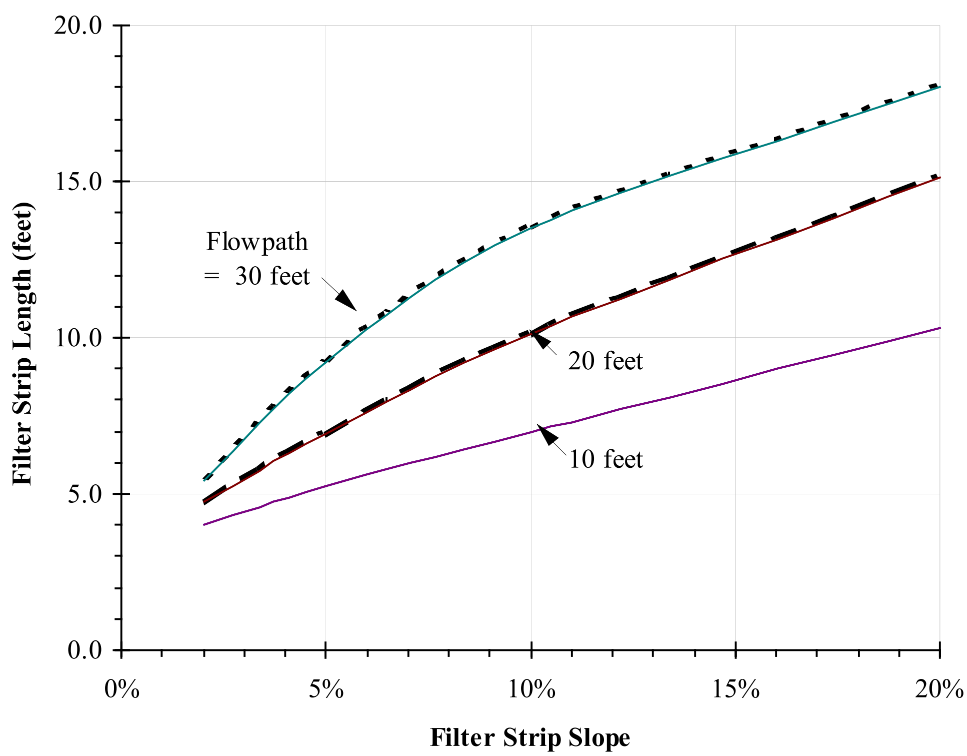
---

[1] This narrow area filter strip design method is included here because technical limitations exist in the basic design method which result in filter strips that are proportionately longer as the contributing drainage becomes narrower (a result that is counter-intuitive). Research by several parties is underway to evaluate filter strip design parameters. This research may lead to more stringent design requirements that would supersede the design criteria presented here.

Vertical drops along the slope must not exceed 12 inches in height. If this is not possible, a different treatment facility must be selected.

Step 3: Select the appropriate filter strip length for the flowpath length and filter strip longitudinal slope (Steps 1 and 2 above) from the graph in Figure 9.9. The filter strip must be designed to provide this minimum length *L* along the entire stretch of pavement draining into it.

To use the graph: Find the length of the flowpath on one of the curves (interpolate between curves as necessary). Move along the curve to the point where the design longitudinal slope of the filter strip (x-axis) is directly below. Read the filter strip length on the y-axis which corresponds to the intersection point.



Note: minimum allowable filter strip length is 4 feet

Figure 9.9 Filter Strip Lengths for Narrow Right-of-Way

Chapter 10 - Wetpool Facilities

Note: Figures in Chapter 10 are from the King County Surface Water Design Manual

10.1 Purpose

This Chapter presents the methods, criteria, and details for analysis and design of wetponds, wetvaults, and stormwater wetlands. These facilities have as a common element a permanent pool of water - the wetpool. Each of the wetpool facilities can be combined with a detention or flow control pond in a combined facility. Included are the following specific facility designs:

BMP T10.10 - Wetponds - Basic and Large
BMP T10.20 - Wetvaults
BMP T10.30 - Stormwater Wetlands
BMP T10.40 - Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities

10.2 Application

The wetpool facility designs described for the four BMPs in this Chapter will achieve the performance objectives cited in Chapter 3 for specific treatment menus.

10.3 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Wetpool Facilities

The four BMPs discussed below are currently recognized as effective treatment techniques using wetpool facilities. The specific BMPs that are selected should be coordinated with the Treatment Facility Menus discussed in Chapter 3.

BMP T10.10 Wetponds - Basic and Large

Purpose and Definition

A wetpond is a constructed stormwater pond that retains a permanent pool of water ("wetpool") at least during the wet season. The volume of the wetpool is related to the effectiveness of the pond in settling particulate pollutants. As an option, a shallow marsh area can be created within the permanent pool volume to provide additional treatment for nutrient removal. Peak flow control can be provided in the "live storage" area above the permanent pool. Figures 10-1a and 1b illustrates a typical wet pond BMP.

The following design, construction, and operation and maintenance criteria cover two wetpond applications - the basic wetpond and the large wetpond. Large wetponds are designed for higher levels of pollutant removal.

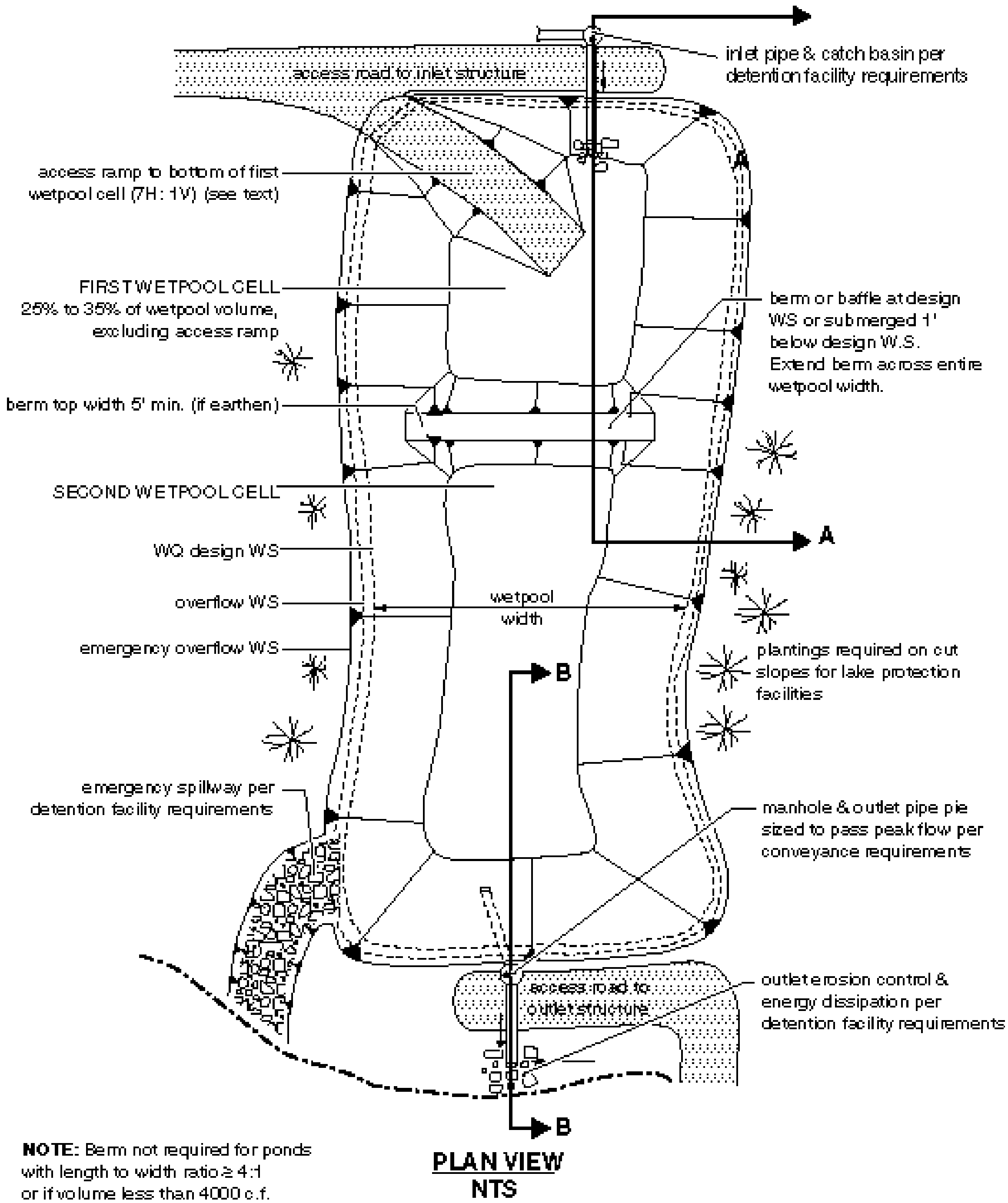


Figure 10.1a Wetpond

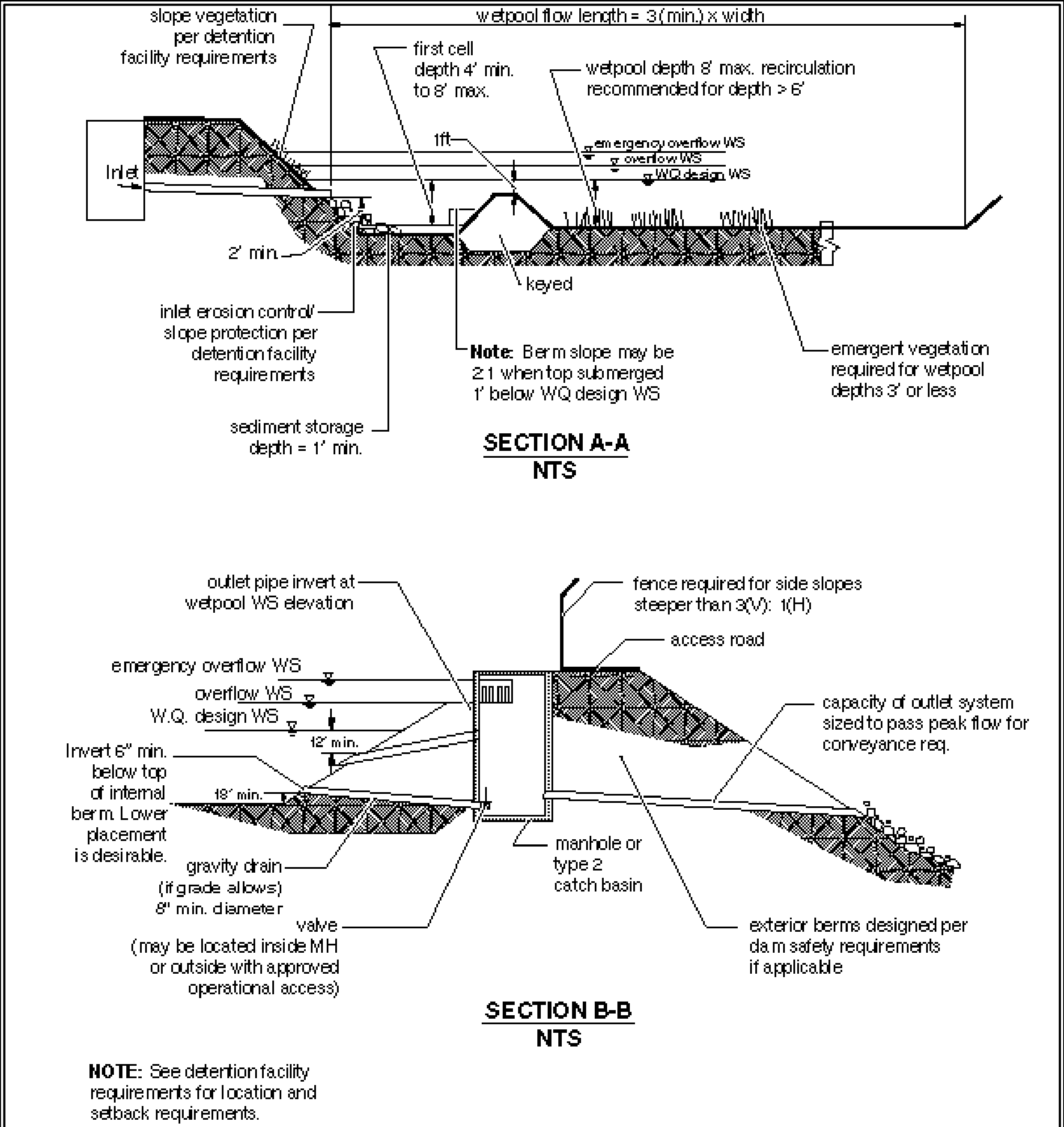


Figure 10.1b Wetpond

Applications and Limitations

A wetpond requires a larger area than a biofiltration swale or a sand filter, but it can be integrated to the contours of a site fairly easily. In till soils, the wetpond holds a permanent pool of water that provides an attractive aesthetic feature. In more porous soils, wetponds may still be used, but water seepage from unlined cells could result in a dry pond, particularly in the summer months. Lining the first cell with a low permeability liner is one way to deal with this situation. As long as the first cell retains a permanent pool of water, this situation will not reduce the pond's effectiveness but may be an aesthetic drawback.

Wetponds work best when the water already in the pond is moved out en masse by incoming flows, a phenomena called "plug flow." Because treatment works on this displacement principle, the wetpool storage of wetponds may be provided below the groundwater level without interfering unduly with treatment effectiveness. However, if combined with a detention function, the live storage must be above the seasonal high groundwater level.

Wetponds may be single-purpose facilities, providing only runoff treatment, or they may be combined with a detention pond to also provide flow control. If combined, the wetpond can often be stacked under the detention pond with little further loss of development area. See BMP T10.40 for a description of combined detention and wetpool facilities.

Design Criteria

The primary design factor that determines a wetpond's treatment efficiency is the volume of the wetpool. The larger the wetpool volume, the greater the potential for pollutant removal. For a basic wetpond, the wetpool volume provided shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the water quality design storm - the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. A large wetpond requires a wetpool volume at least 1.5 times larger than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event.

Also important are the avoidance of short-circuiting and the promotion of plug flow. ***Plug flow*** describes the hypothetical condition of stormwater moving through the pond as a unit, displacing the "old" water in the pond with incoming flows. To prevent short-circuiting, water is forced to flow, to the extent practical, to all potentially available flow routes, avoiding "dead zones" and maximizing the time water stays in the pond during the active part of a storm.

Design features that encourage plug flow and avoid dead zones are:

- Dissipating energy at the inlet.
- Providing a large length-to-width ratio.
- Providing a broad surface for water exchange using a berm designed as a broad-crested weir to divide the wetpond into two cells rather than a constricted area such as a pipe.
- Maximizing the flowpath between inlet and outlet, including the vertical path, also enhances treatment by increasing residence time.

Sizing Procedure

Procedures for determining a wetpond's dimensions and volume are outlined below.

Step 1: Identify required wetpool volume using the SCS (now known as NRCS) curve number equations presented in Volume III, Chapter 2, Section 2.3.2. A basic wetpond requires a volume equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. A large wetpond requires a volume at least 1.5 times the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event.

Step 2: Determine wetpool dimensions. Determine the wetpool dimensions satisfying the design criteria outlined below and illustrated in Figures 10.1a and 10.1b. A simple way to check the volume of each wetpool cell is to use the following equation:

$$V = \frac{h(A_1 + A_2)}{2}$$

where
V = wetpool volume (cf)
h = wetpool average depth (ft)
A_1 = water quality design surface area of wetpool (sf)
A_2 = bottom area of wetpool (sf)

Step 3: Design pond outlet pipe and determine primary overflow water surface. The pond outlet pipe shall be placed on a reverse grade from the pond's wetpool to the outlet structure. Use the following procedure to design the pond outlet pipe and determine the primary overflow water surface elevation:

a) Use the nomographs in Figures 10.2 and 10.3 to select a trial size for the pond outlet pipe sufficient to pass the WQ design flow Q_{wq} (see Section 4.1.1 for a discussion on the WQ design flow).

b) Use Figure 10.4 to determine the critical depth d_c at the outflow end of the pipe for Q_{wq}.

c) Use Figure 10.5 to determine the flow area A_c at critical depth.

d) Calculate the flow velocity at critical depth using continuity equation ($V_c = Q_{wq} / A_c$).

e) Calculate the velocity head V_H ($V_H = V_c^2 / 2g$, where g is the gravitational constant, 32.2 feet per second).

f) Determine the primary overflow water surface elevation by adding the velocity head and critical depth to the invert elevation at the outflow end of the pond outlet pipe (i.e., overflow water surface elevation = outflow invert + d_c + V_H).

g) Adjust outlet pipe diameter as needed and repeat Steps (a) through (e).

Step 4: Determine wetpond dimensions.

General wetpond design criteria and concepts are shown in Figure 10.1a and 10.1b.

Wetpool Geometry

- The wetpool shall be divided into two cells separated by a baffle or berm. The first cell shall contain between 25 to 35 percent of the total wetpool volume. The baffle or berm volume shall not count as part of the total wetpool volume. The term baffle means a vertical divider placed across the entire width of the pond, stopping short of the bottom. A berm is a vertical divider typically built up from the bottom, or if in a vault, connects all the way to the bottom.

Intent: The full-length berm or baffle promotes plug flow and enhances quiescence and laminar flow through as much of the entire water volume as possible. Alternative methods to the full-length berm or baffle that provide equivalent flow characteristics may be approved on a case-by-case basis by the Local Plan Approval Authority.

- Sediment storage shall be provided in the first cell. The sediment storage shall have a minimum depth of 1-foot. A fixed sediment depth monitor should be installed in the first cell to gauge sediment accumulation unless an alternative guaging method is proposed.
- The minimum depth of the first cell shall be 4 feet, exclusive of sediment storage requirements. The depth of the first cell may be greater than the depth of the second cell.
- The maximum depth of each cell shall not exceed 8 feet (exclusive of sediment storage in the first cell). Pool depths of 3 feet or shallower (second cell) shall be planted with emergent wetland vegetation (see Planting requirements).
- Inlets and outlets shall be placed to maximize the flowpath through the facility. The ratio of flowpath length to width from the inlet to the outlet shall be at least 3:1. The ***flowpath length*** is defined as the distance from the inlet to the outlet, as measured at mid-depth. The ***width*** at mid-depth can be found as follows: width = (average top width + average bottom width)/2.
- Wetponds with wetpool volumes less than or equal to 4,000 cubic feet may be single celled (i.e., no baffle or berm is required). However, it is especially important in this case that the flow path length be maximized. The ratio of flow path length to width shall be at least 4:1 in single celled wetponds, but should preferably be 5:1.
- All inlets shall enter the first cell. If there are multiple inlets, the length-to-width ratio shall be based on the average flowpath length for all inlets.
- The first cell may be lined in accordance with the liner requirements contained in Section 4.4 .

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

- A berm or baffle shall extend across the full width of the wetpool, and tie into the wetpond side slopes. If the berm embankments are greater than 4 feet in height, the berm must be constructed by excavating a key equal to 50 percent of the embankment cross-sectional height and width. This requirement may be waived if recommended by a geotechnical engineer for specific site conditions. The geotechnical analysis shall address situations in which one of the two cells is empty while the other remains full of water.
- The top of the berm may extend to the WQ design water surface or be 1-foot below the WQ design water surface. If at the WQ design water surface, berm side slopes should be 3H:1V. Berm side slopes may be steeper (up to 2:1) if the berm is submerged 1-foot.

  Intent: Submerging the berm is intended to enhance safety by discouraging pedestrian access when side slopes are steeper than 3H:1V. An alternative to the submerged berm design is the use of barrier planting to prevent easy access to the divider berm in an unfenced wetpond.
- If good vegetation cover is not established on the berm, erosion control measures should be used to prevent erosion of the berm back-slope when the pond is initially filled.
- The interior berm or baffle may be a retaining wall provided that the design is prepared and stamped by a licensed civil engineer. If a baffle or retaining wall is used, it should be submerged one foot below the design water surface to discourage access by pedestrians.
- Criteria for wetpond side slopes are included in Section 4.3.

Embankments

Embankments that impound water must comply with the Washington State Dam Safety Regulations (Chapter 173-175 WAC). If the impoundment has a storage capacity (including both water and sediment storage volumes) greater than 10 acre-feet (435,600 cubic feet or 3.26 million gallons) above natural ground level, then dam safety design and review are required by the Department of Ecology. See Section 3.2.1 of Volume III.

Inlet and Outlet

See Figure 10.1a and 10.1b for details on the following requirements:

- The inlet to the wetpond shall be submerged with the inlet pipe invert a minimum of two feet from the pond bottom (not including sediment storage). The top of the inlet pipe should be submerged at least 1-foot, if possible.

Intent: The inlet is submerged to dissipate energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is set to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.

- An outlet structure shall be provided. Either a Type 2 catch basin with a grated opening (jail house window) or a manhole with a cone grate (birdcage) may be used (see Volume III, Figure 3.11 for an illustration). No sump is required in the outlet structure for wetponds not providing detention storage. The outlet structure receives flow from the pond outlet pipe. The grate or birdcage openings provide an overflow route should the pond outlet pipe become clogged. The overflow criteria provided below specifies the sizing and position of the grate opening.

- The pond outlet pipe (as opposed to the manhole or type 2 catch basin outlet pipe) shall be back-sloped or have a turn-down elbow, and extend 1 foot below the WQ design water surface. Note: A floating outlet, set to draw water from 1-foot below the water surface, is also acceptable if vandalism concerns are adequately addressed.

  Intent: The inverted outlet pipe provides for trapping of oils and floatables in the wetpond.

- The pond outlet pipe shall be sized, at a minimum, to pass the WQ design flow. Note: The highest invert of the outlet pipe sets the WQ design water surface elevation.

- The overflow criteria for single-purpose (treatment only, not combined with flow control) wetponds are as follows:
  a) The requirement for primary overflow is satisfied by either the grated inlet to the outlet structure or by a birdcage above the pond outlet structure.
  b) The bottom of the grate opening in the outlet structure shall be set at or above the height needed to pass the WQ design flow through the pond outlet pipe. *Note: The grate invert elevation sets the overflow water surface elevation.*
  c) In on-line ponds, the grated opening should be sized to pass the 100-year design flow. The capacity of the outlet system should be sized to pass the peak flow for the conveyance requirements.

- An emergency spillway shall be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Section 3.2.1 of Volume III).

- The Local Plan Approval Authority may require a bypass/ shutoff valve to enable the pond to be taken offline for maintenance purposes.

- A gravity drain for maintenance is recommended if grade allows.

  Intent: It is anticipated that sediment removal will only be needed for the first cell in the majority of cases. The gravity drain is intended to allow water from the first cell to be drained to the second cell when the first cell is pumped dry for cleaning.

- The drain invert shall be at least 6 inches below the top elevation of the dividing berm or baffle. Deeper drains are encouraged where feasible, but must be no deeper than 18 inches above the pond bottom.

  Intent: To prevent highly sediment-laden water from escaping the pond when drained for maintenance.

- The drain shall be at least 8 inches (minimum) diameter and shall be controlled by a valve. Use of a shear gate is allowed only at the inlet end of a pipe located within an approved structure.

  Intent: Shear gates often leak if water pressure pushes on the side of the gate opposite the seal. The gate should be situated so that water pressure pushes toward the seal.

- Operational access to the valve shall be provided to the finished ground surface.
- The valve location shall be accessible and well-marked with 1-foot of paving placed around the box. It must also be protected from damage and unauthorized operation.
- A valve box is allowed to a maximum depth of 5 feet without an access manhole. If over 5 feet deep, an access manhole or vault is required.
- All metal parts shall be corrosion-resistant. Galvanized materials should not be used unless unavoidable.

  Intent: Galvanized metal contributes zinc to stormwater, sometimes in very high concentrations..

Access and Setbacks

- All facilities shall be a minimum of 20 feet from any structure, property line, and any vegetative buffer required by the local government, and 100 feet from any septic tank/drainfield.
- All facilities shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any steep (greater than 15 percent) slope. A geotechnical report must address the potential impact of a wet pond on a steep slope.
- Access and maintenance roads shall be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds. Access and maintenance roads shall extend to both the wetpond inlet and outlet structures. An access ramp (7H minimum:1V) shall be provided to the bottom of the first cell unless all portions of the cell can be reached and sediment loaded from the top of the pond.
- If the dividing berm is also used for access, it should be built to sustain loads of up to 80,000 pounds.

Planting Requirements

Planting requirements for detention ponds also apply to wetponds.

- Large wetponds intended for phosphorus control should not be planted within the cells, as the plants will release phosphorus in the winter when they die off. Phosphorus uptake is achieved in large wetponds through algae growth.
- If the second cell of a basic wetpond is 3 feet or shallower, the bottom area shall be planted with emergent wetland vegetation. See Table 10.1 for recommended emergent wetland plant species for wetponds. Intent: Planting of shallow pond areas helps to stabilize settled sediment and prevent resuspension.

Note: The recommendations in Table 10.1 are for western Washington only. Local knowledge should be used to adapt this information if used in other areas.

- Cattails (Typha latifolia) are not recommended because they tend to crowd out other species and will typically establish themselves anyway.
- If the wetpond discharges to a phosphorus-sensitive lake or wetland, shrubs that form a dense cover should be planted on slopes above the WQ design water surface on at least three sides. For banks that are berms, no planting is allowed if the berm is regulated by dam safety requirements. The purpose of planting is to discourage waterfowl use of the pond and to provide shading. Some suitable trees and shrubs include vine maple (Acer circinatum), wild cherry (Prunus emarginata), red osier dogwood (Cornus stolonifera), California myrtle (Myrica californica), Indian plum (Oemleria cerasiformis), and Pacific yew (Taxus brevifolia) as well as numerous ornamental species.

Recommended Design Features

The following design features should be incorporated into the wetpond design where site conditions allow:

- The method of construction of soil/landscape systems can cause natural selection of specific plant species. Consult a soil restoration or wetland soil scientist for site-specific recommendations. The soil formulation will impact the plant species that will flourish or suffer on the site, and the formulation should be such that it encourages desired species and discourages undesired species.
- For wetpool depths in excess of 6 feet, it is recommended that some form of recirculation be provided in the summer, such as a fountain or aerator, to prevent stagnation and low dissolved oxygen conditions.
- A flow length-to-width ratio greater than the 3:1 minimum is desirable. If the ratio is 4:1 or greater, then the dividing berm is not required, and the pond may consist of one cell rather than two.

- A tear-drop shape, with the inlet at the narrow end, rather than a rectangular pond is preferred since it minimizes dead zones caused by corners.

- A small amount of base flow is desirable to maintain circulation and reduce the potential for low oxygen conditions during late summer.

- Evergreen or columnar deciduous trees along the west and south sides of ponds are recommended to reduce thermal heating, except that no trees or shrubs may be planted on berms meeting the criteria of dams regulated for safety. In addition to shade, trees and shrubs also discourage waterfowl use and the attendant phosphorus enrichment problems they cause. Trees should be set back so that the branches will not extend over the pond.

  Intent: Evergreen trees or shrubs are preferred to avoid problems associated with leaf drop. Columnar deciduous trees (e.g., hornbeam, Lombardy poplar, etc.) typically have fewer leaves than other deciduous trees.

- The number of inlets to the facility should be limited; ideally there should be only one inlet. The flowpath length should be maximized from inlet to outlet for all inlets to the facility.

- The access and maintenance road could be extended along the full length of the wetpond and could double as playcourts or picnic areas. Placing finely ground bark or other natural material over the road surface would render it more pedestrian friendly.

- The following design features should be incorporated to enhance aesthetics where possible:
  - Provide pedestrian access to shallow pool areas enhanced with emergent wetland vegetation. This allows the pond to be more accessible without incurring safety risks.
  - Provide side slopes that are sufficiently gentle to avoid the need for fencing (3:1 or flatter).
  - Create flat areas overlooking or adjoining the pond for picnic tables or seating that can be used by residents. Walking or jogging trails around the pond are easily integrated into site design.
  - Include fountains or integrated waterfall features for privately maintained facilities.
  - Provide visual enhancement with clusters of trees and shrubs. On most pond sites, it is important to amend the soil before planting since ponds are typically placed well below the native soil horizon in very poor soils. Make sure dam safety restrictions against planting do not apply.
  - Orient the pond length along the direction of prevailing summer winds (typically west or southwest) to enhance wind mixing.

Construction Criteria

- Sediment that has accumulated in the pond must be removed after construction in the drainage area of the pond is complete (unless used for a liner - see below).
- Sediment that has accumulated in the pond at the end of construction may be used as a liner in excessively drained soils if the sediment meets the criteria for low permeability or treatment liners in keeping with guidance given in Chapter 4. Sediment used for a soil liner must be graded to provide uniform coverage and thickness.

Operation and Maintenance

- Maintenance is of primary importance if wetponds are to continue to function as originally designed. A local government, a designated group such as a homeowners' association, or a property owner shall accept the responsibility for maintaining the structures and the impoundment area. A specific maintenance plan shall be formulated outlining the schedule and scope of maintenance operations.
- The pond should be inspected by the local government annually. The maintenance standards contained in Section 4.6 are measures for determining if maintenance actions are required as identified through the annual inspection.
- Site vegetation should be trimmed as necessary to keep the pond free of leaves and to maintain the aesthetic appearance of the site. Slope areas that have become bare should be revegetated and eroded areas should be regraded prior to being revegetated.
- Sediment should be removed when the 1-foot sediment zone is full plus 6 inches. Sediments should be tested for toxicants in compliance with current disposal requirements. Sediments must be disposed in accordance with current local health department requirements and the Minimum Functional Standards for Solid Waste Handling. See Volume IV, Appendix IV-G Recommendations for Management of Street Waste for additional guidance.
- Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be properly disposed of. The preferred disposal option is discharge to a sanitary sewer at an approved location. Other disposal options include discharge back into the wetpool facility or the storm sewer system if certain conditions are met. See Volume IV, Appendix IV-G for additional guidance.

Table 10.1 -- Emergent wetland plant species recommended for wetponds			
Species	**Common Name**	**Notes**	**Maximum Depth**
INUNDATION TO 1-FOOT			
Agrostis exarata(1)	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	to 2 feet
Carex stipata	Sawbeak sedge	Wet ground	
Eleocharis palustris	Spike rush	Margins of ponds, wet meadows	to 2 feet
Glyceria occidentalis	Western mannagrass	Marshes, pond margins	to 2 feet
Juncus tenuis	Slender rush	Wet soils, wetland margins	
Oenanthe sarmentosa	Water parsley	Shallow water along stream and pond margins; needs saturated soils all summer	
Scirpus atrocinctus (formerly S. cyperinus)	Woolgrass	Tolerates shallow water; tall clumps	
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
Sagittaria latifolia	Arrowhead		
INUNDATION 1 TO 2 FEET			
Agrostis exarata(1)	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	
Alisma plantago-aquatica	Water plantain		
Eleocharis palustris	Spike rush	Margins of ponds, wet meadows	
Glyceria occidentalis	Western mannagrass	Marshes, pond margins	
Juncus effusus	Soft rush	Wet meadows, pastures, wetland margins	
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
Sparganium emmersum	Bur reed	Shallow standing water, saturated soils	
INUNDATION 1 TO 3 FEET			
Carex obnupta	Slough sedge	Wet ground or standing water	1.5 to 3 feet
Beckmania syzigachne(1)	Western sloughgrass	Wet prairie to pond margins	
Scirpus acutus(2)	Hardstem bulrush	Single tall stems, not clumping	to 3 feet
Scirpus validus(2)	Softstem bulrush		
INUNDATION GREATER THAN 3 FEET			
Nuphar polysepalum	Spatterdock	Deep water	3 to 7.5 feet
Nymphaea odorata(1)	White waterlily	Shallow to deep ponds	to 6 feet

Notes:

(1) Non-native species. *Beckmania syzigachne* is native to Oregon. Native species are preferred.

(2) *Scirpus* tubers must be planted shallower for establishment, and protected from foraging waterfowl until established. Emerging aerial stems should project above water surface to allow oxygen transport to the roots.

Primary sources: Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle, *Water Pollution Control Aspects of Aquatic Plants*, 1990. Hortus Northwest, *Wetland Plants for Western Oregon*, Issue 2, 1991. Hitchcock and Cronquist, *Flora of the Pacific Northwest*, 1973.

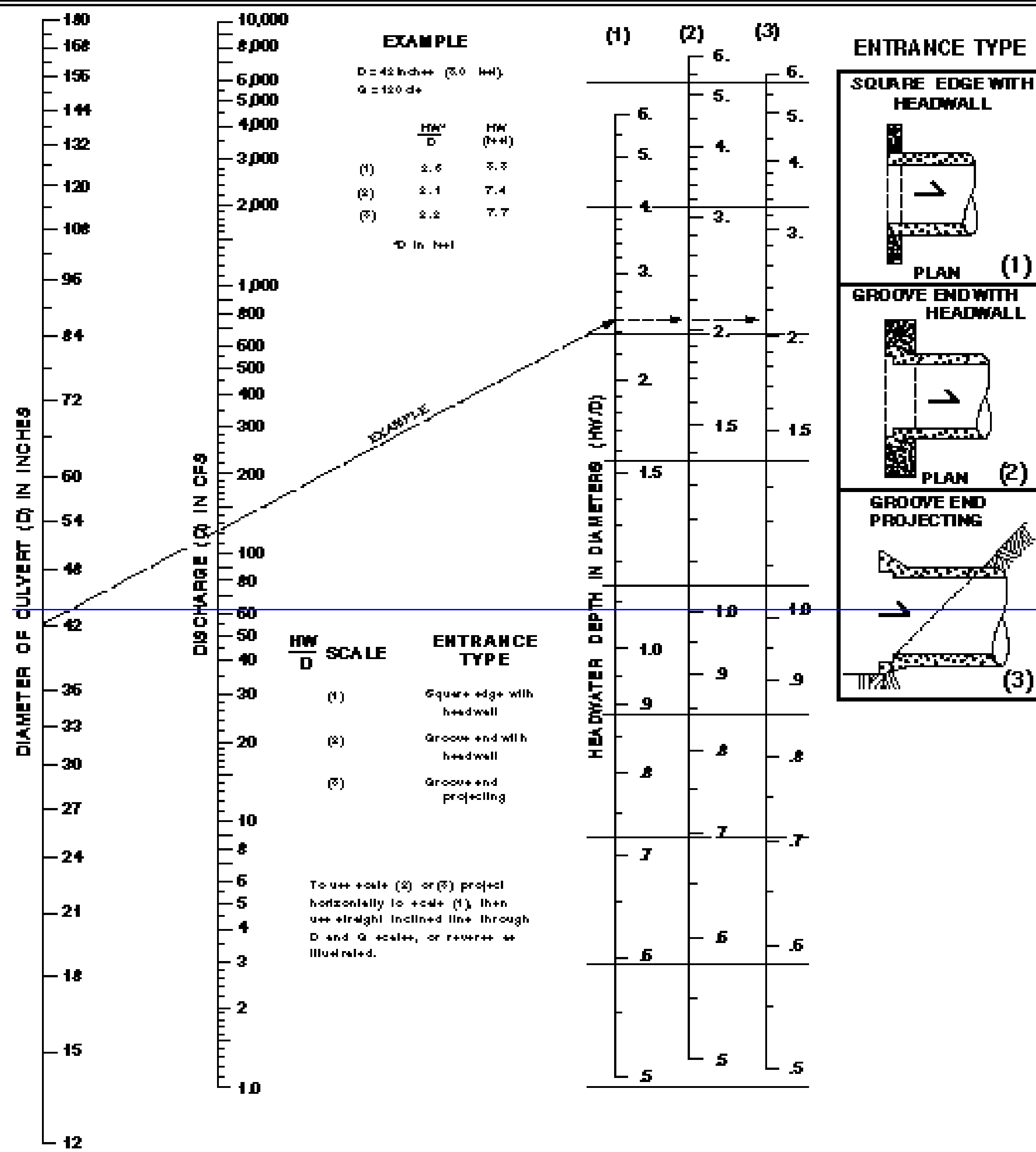


Figure 10.2 Headwater Depth For Smooth Interior Pipe Culverts With Inlet Control

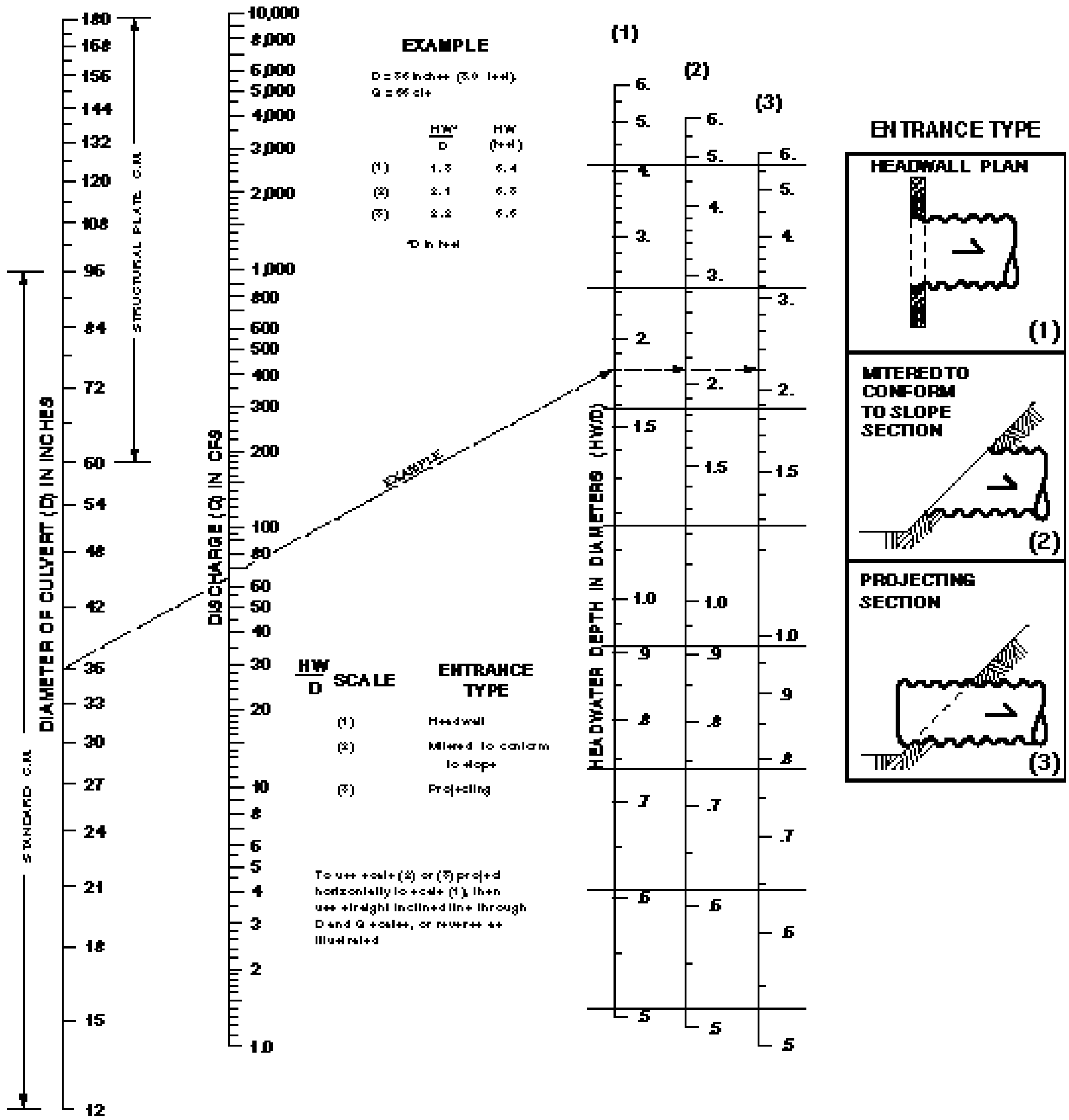
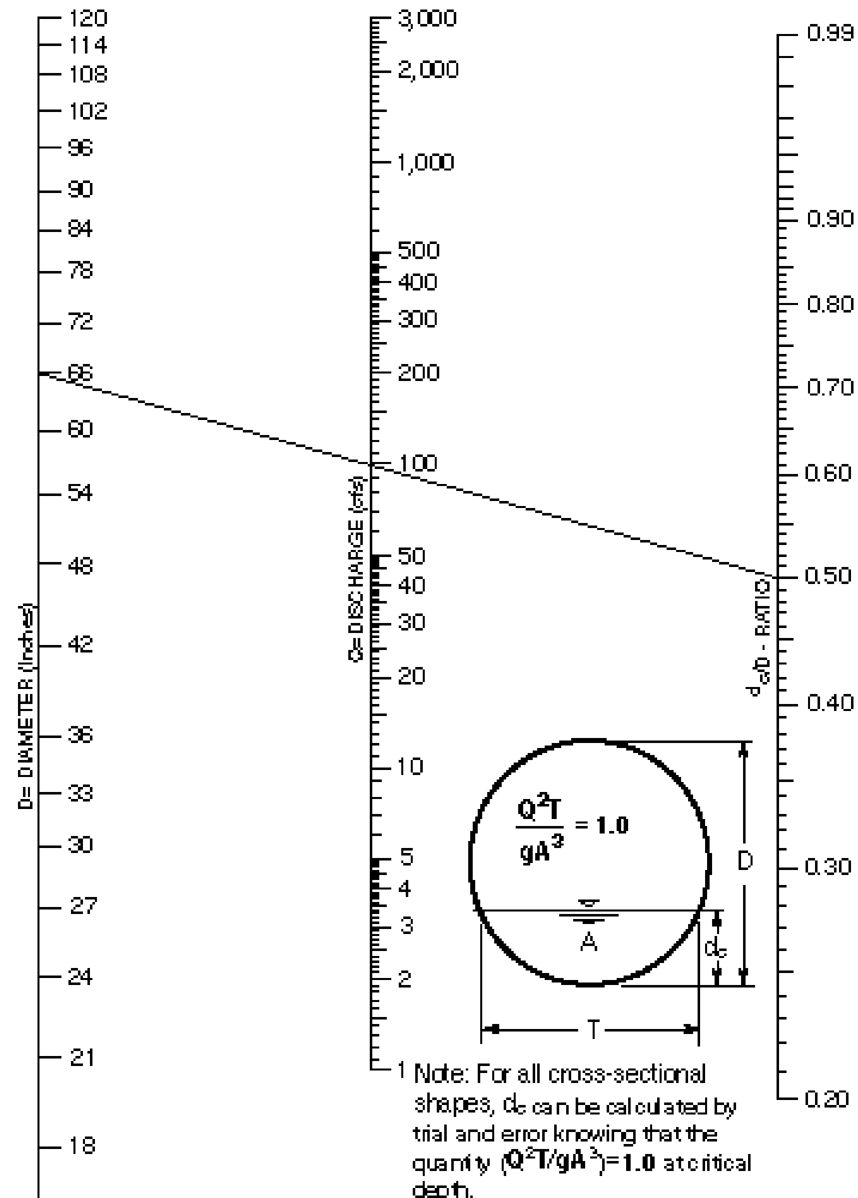


Figure 10.3 Headwater Depth For Corrugated Pipe Culverts With Inlet Control



EXAMPLE

D = 66 inches, Q = 100cfs
d_c/D - Ratio = 0.50
d_c = (0.50)(66 inches) = 33 inches ÷ (12 inches/ft)
d_c = 2.75 feet

Figure 10.4 Critical Depth Of Flow For Circular Culverts

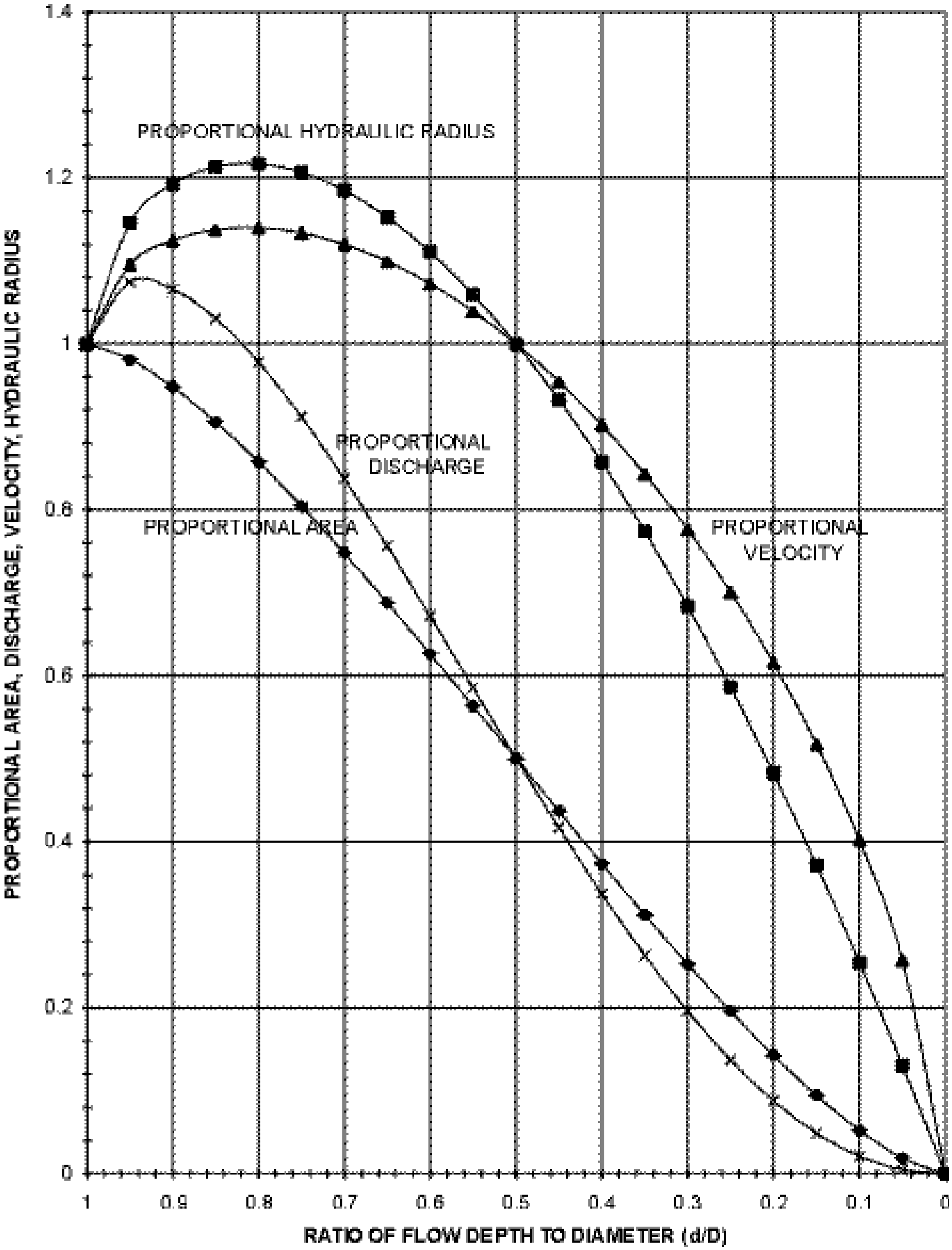


Figure 10.5 Circular Channel Ratios

BMP T10.20 Wetvaults

Purpose and Definition

A wetvault is an underground structure similar in appearance to a detention vault, except that a wetvault has a permanent pool of water (wetpool) which dissipates energy and improves the settling of particulate pollutants (see the wetvault details in Figure 10.6). Being underground, the wetvault lacks the biological pollutant removal mechanisms, such as algae uptake, present in surface wetponds.

Applications and Limitations

A wetvault may be used for commercial, industrial, or roadway projects if there are space limitations precluding the use of other treatment BMPs. The use of wetvaults for residential development is highly discouraged. Combined detention and wetvaults are allowed; see BMP T10.40.

A wetvault is believed to be ineffective in removing dissolved pollutants such as soluble phosphorus or metals such as copper. There is also concern that oxygen levels will decline, especially in warm summer months, because of limited contact with air and wind. However, the extent to which this potential problem occurs has not been documented.

Below-ground structures like wetvaults are relatively difficult and expensive to maintain. The need for maintenance is often not seen and as a result routine maintenance does not occur.

If oil control is required for a project, a wetvault may be combined with an API oil/water separator.

Design Criteria

Sizing Procedure

As with wetponds, the primary design factor that determines the removal efficiency of a wetvault is the volume of the wetpool. The larger the volume, the higher the potential for pollutant removal. Performance is also improved by avoiding dead zones (like corners) where little exchange occurs, using large length-to-width ratios, dissipating energy at the inlet, and ensuring that flow rates are uniform to the extent possible and not increased between cells.

The sizing procedure for a wetvault is identical to the sizing procedure for a wetpond. The wetpool volume for the wetvault shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event.

Typical design details and concepts for the wetvault are shown in Figure 10.6.

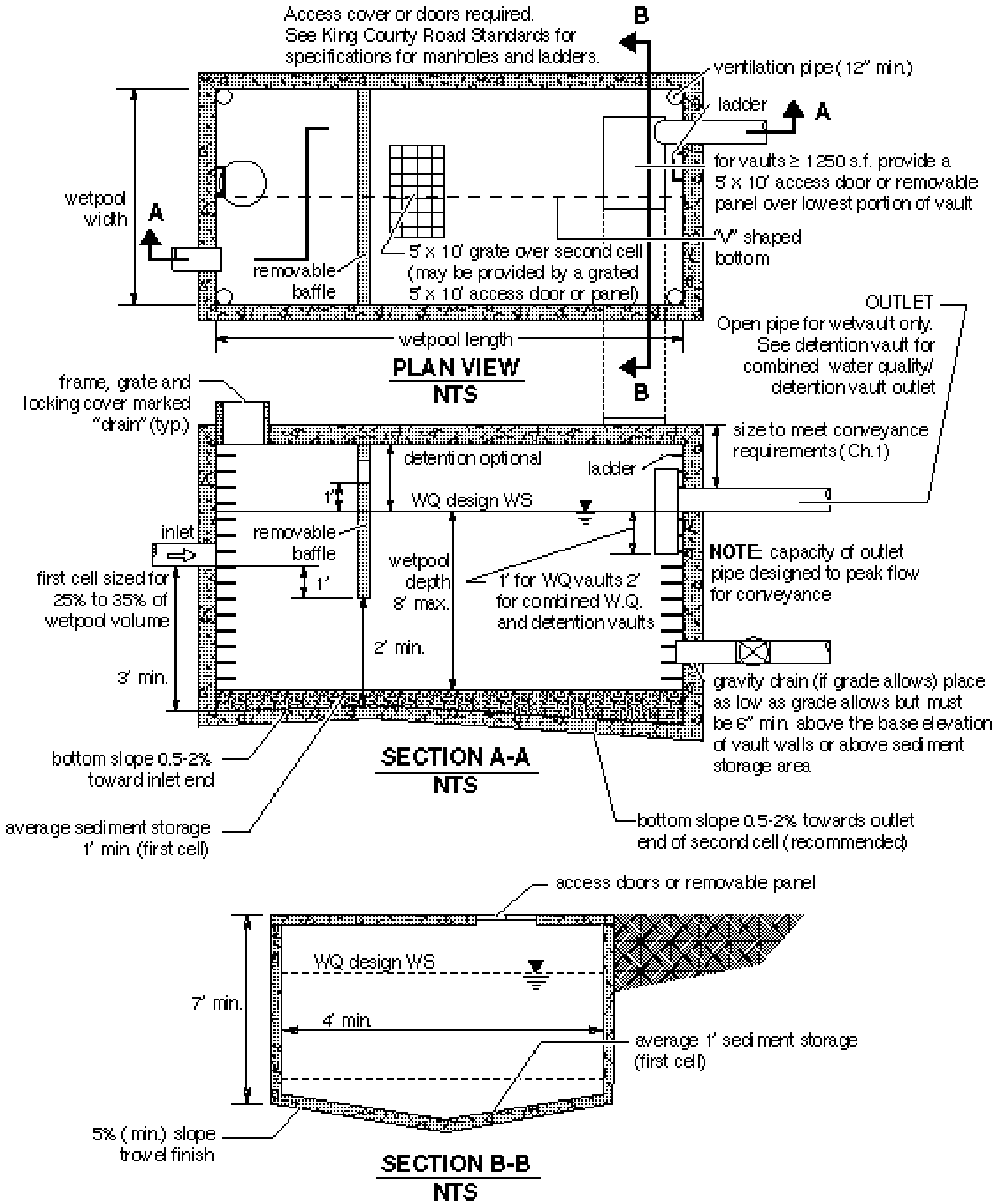


Figure 10.6 Wetvault

Wetpool Geometry

Same as specified for wetponds (see BMP T10.10) except for the following two modifications:

- The sediment storage in the first cell shall be an average of 1-foot. Because of the v-shaped bottom, the depth of sediment storage needed above the bottom of the side wall is roughly proportional to vault width according to the schedule below:

Vault Width	Sediment Depth (from bottom of side wall)
15'	10"
20'	9"
40'	6"
60'	4"

- The second cell shall be a minimum of 3 feet deep since planting cannot be used to prevent resuspension of sediment in shallow water as it can in open ponds.

Vault Structure

- The vault shall be separated into two cells by a wall or a removable baffle. If a wall is used, a 5-foot by 10-foot removable maintenance access must be provided for both cells. If a removable baffle is used, the following criteria apply:
  1) The baffle shall extend from a minimum of 1-foot above the WQ design water surface to a minimum of 1-foot below the invert elevation of the inlet pipe.
  2) The lowest point of the baffle shall be a minimum of 2 feet from the bottom of the vault, and greater if feasible.
- If the vault is less than 2,000 cubic feet (inside dimensions), or if the length-to-width ratio of the vault pool is 5:1 or greater, the baffle or wall may be omitted and the vault may be one-celled.
- The two cells of a wetvault should not be divided into additional subcells by internal walls. If internal structural support is needed, it is preferred that post and pier construction be used to support the vault lid rather than walls. Any walls used within cells must be positioned so as to lengthen, rather than divide, the flowpath.

  Intent: Treatment effectiveness in wetpool facilities is related to the extent to which plug flow is achieved and short-circuiting and dead zones are avoided. Structural walls placed within the cells can interfere with plug flow and create significant dead zones, reducing treatment effectiveness.

- The bottom of the first cell shall be sloped toward the access opening. Slope should be between 0.5 percent (minimum) and 2 percent (maximum). The second cell may be level (longitudinally) sloped toward the outlet, with a high point between the first and second cells. The intent of sloping the bottom is direct the sediment accumulation to the closest access point for maintenance purposes. Sloping the second cell towards the access opening for the first cell is also acceptable.
- The vault bottom shall slope laterally a minimum of 5 percent from each side towards the center, forming a broad "v" to facilitate sediment removal. Note: More than one "v" may be used to minimize vault depth.

  Exception: The Local Plan Approval Authority may allow the vault bottom to be flat if removable panels are provided over the entire vault. Removable panels should be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.
- The highest point of a vault bottom must be at least 6 inches below the outlet elevation to provide for sediment storage over the entire bottom.
- Provision for passage of flows should the outlet plug shall be provided.
- Wetvaults may be constructed using arch culvert sections provided the top area at the WQ design water surface is, at a minimum, equal to that of a vault with vertical walls designed with an average depth of 6 feet.

  <u>Intent:</u> To prevent decreasing the surface area available for oxygen exchange.
- Wetvaults shall conform with the "Materials" and "Structural Stability" criteria specified for detention vaults in Volume III, Chapter 3.
- Where pipes enter and leave the vault below the WQ design water surface, they shall be sealed using a non-porous, non-shrinking grout.

Inlet and Outlet

- The inlet to the wetvault shall be submerged with the inlet pipe invert a minimum of 3 feet from the vault bottom . The top of the inlet pipe should be submerged at least 1-foot, if possible.

  <u>Intent:</u> The submerged inlet is to dissipate energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.
- Unless designed as an off-line facility, the capacity of the outlet pipe and available head above the outlet pipe should be designed to convey the 100-year design flow for developed site conditions without

overtopping the vault. The available head above the outlet pipe must be a minimum of 6 inches.

- The outlet pipe shall be back-sloped or have tee section, the lower arm of which should extend 1 foot below the WQ design water surface to provide for trapping of oils and floatables in the vault.

- The Local Plan Approval Authority may require a bypass/shutoff valve to enable the vault to be taken offline for maintenance.

Access Requirements

Same as for detention vaults (see Volume III, Section 3.2) except for the following additional requirement for wetvaults:

- A minimum of 50 square feet of grate should be provided over the second cell. For vaults in which the surface area of the second cell is greater than 1,250 square feet, 4 percent of the top should be grated. This requirement may be met by one grate or by many smaller grates distributed over the second cell area. Note: a grated access door can be used to meet this requirement.

  Intent: The grate allows air contact with the wetpool in order to minimize stagnant conditions which can result in oxygen depletion, especially in warm weather.

Access Roads, Right of Way, and Setbacks

Same as for detention vaults (see Volume III, Section 3.2).

Recommended Design Features

The following design features should be incorporated into wetvaults where feasible, but they are not specifically required:

- The floor of the second cell should slope toward the outlet for ease of cleaning.
- The inlet and outlet should be at opposing corners of the vault to increase the flowpath.
- A flow length-to-width ratio greater than 3:1 minimum is desirable.
- Lockable grates instead of solid manhole covers are recommended to increase air contact with the wetpool.
- Galvanized materials shall not be used unless unavoidable.
- The number of inlets to the wetvault should be limited, and the flowpath length should be maximized from inlet to outlet for all inlets to the vault.

Construction Criteria

Sediment that has accumulated in the vault must be removed after construction in the drainage area is complete. If no more than 12 inches of sediment have accumulated after the infrastructure is built, cleaning may be left until after building construction is complete. In general, sediment accumulation from stabilized drainage areas is not expected to exceed an average of 4 inches per year in the first cell. If sediment accumulation is greater than this amount, it will be assumed to be from construction unless it can be shown otherwise.

Operation and Maintenance

- Accumulated sediment and stagnant conditions may cause noxious gases to form and accumulate in the vault. Vault maintenance procedures must meet OSHA confined space entry requirements, which includes clearly marking entrances to confined space areas. This may be accomplished by hanging a removable sign in the access riser(s), just under the access lid.
- Facilities should be inspected by the local government annually. The maintenance standards contained in Section 4.6 of this volume are measures for determining if maintenance actions are required as identified through the annual inspection.
- Sediment should be removed when the 1-foot sediment zone is full plus 6 inches. Sediments should be tested for toxicants in compliance with current disposal requirements. Sediments must be disposed in accordance with current local health department requirements and the Minimum Functional Standards for Solid Waste Handling. See Volume IV, Appendix IV-G Recommendations for Management of Street Waste for additional guidance.
- Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be properly disposed of. The preferred disposal option is discharge to a sanitary sewer at an approved location. Other disposal options include discharge back into the wetpool facility or the storm sewer system if certain conditions are met. See Volume IV, Appendix IV-G for additional guidance.

Modifications for Combining with a Baffle Oil/Water Separator

If the project site is a high-use site and a wetvault is proposed, the vault may be combined with a baffle oil/water separator to meet the runoff treatment requirements with one facility rather than two. Structural modifications and added design criteria are given below. However, the maintenance requirements for baffle oil/water separators must be adhered to, in addition to those for a wetvault. This will result in more frequent inspection and cleaning than for a wetvault used only for TSS removal.

See Chapter 11 for information on maintenance of baffle oil/water separators.

1. The sizing procedures for the baffle oil/water separator (Chapter 11) should be run as a check to ensure the vault is large enough. If the oil/water separator sizing procedures result in a larger vault size, increase the wetvault size to match.

2. An oil retaining baffle shall be provided in the second cell near the vault outlet. The baffle should not contain a high-flow overflow, or else the retained oil will be washed out of the vault during large storms.

3. The vault shall have a minimum length-to-width ratio of 5:1.

4. The vault shall have a design water depth-to-width ratio of between 1:3 to 1:2.

5. The vault shall be watertight and shall be coated to protect from corrosion.

6. Separator vaults shall have a shutoff mechanism on the outlet pipe to prevent oil discharges during maintenance and to provide emergency shut-off capability in case of a spill. A valve box and riser shall also be provided.

7. Wetvaults used as oil/water separators must be off-line and must bypass flows greater than the WQ design flow.

   Intent: This design minimizes the entrainment and/or emulsification of previously captured oil during very high flow events.

BMP T10.30 Stormwater Treatment Wetlands

Purpose and Definition

In land development situations, wetlands are usually constructed for two main reasons: to replace or mitigate impacts when natural wetlands are filled or impacted by development (mitigation wetlands), and to treat stormwater runoff (stormwater treatment wetlands). Stormwater treatment wetlands are shallow man-made ponds that are designed to treat stormwater through the biological processes associated with emergent aquatic plants (see the stormwater wetland details in Figure 10.7 and Figure 10.8.

Wetlands created to mitigate disturbance impacts, such as filling, may not also be used as stormwater treatment facilities. This is because of the different, incompatible functions of the two kinds of wetlands. Mitigation wetlands are intended to function as full replacement habitat for fish and wildlife, providing the same functions and harboring the same species diversity and biotic richness as the wetlands they replace. Stormwater treatment wetlands are used to capture and transform pollutants, just as wetponds are, and over time pollutants will concentrate in the sediment. This is not a healthy environment for aquatic life. Stormwater treatment wetlands are used to capture pollutants in a managed environment so that they will not reach natural wetlands and other ecologically important habitats. In addition, vegetation must occasionally be harvested and sediment dredged in stormwater treatment wetlands, further interfering with use for wildlife habitat.

In general, stormwater wetlands perform well to remove sediment, metals, and pollutants that bind to humic or organic acids. Phosphorus removal in stormwater wetlands is highly variable.

Applications and Limitations

This stormwater wetland design occupies about the same surface area as wetponds, but has the potential to be better integrated aesthetically into a site because of the abundance of emergent aquatic vegetation. The most critical factor for a successful design is the provision of an adequate supply of water for most of the year. Careful planning is needed to be sure sufficient water will be retained to sustain good wetland plant growth. Since water depths are shallower than in wetponds, water loss by evaporation is an important concern. Stormwater wetlands are a good WQ facility choice in areas with high winter groundwater levels.

Design Criteria

When used for stormwater treatment, stormwater wetlands employ some of the same design features as wetponds. However, instead of gravity settling being the dominant treatment process, pollutant removal mediated by aquatic vegetation and the microbiological community associated with that vegetation becomes the dominant treatment process. Thus when designing wetlands, water volume is not the dominant design criteria. Rather, factors which affect plant vigor and biomass are the primary concerns.

Sizing Procedure

<u>Step 1:</u> The volume of a basic wetpond is used as a template for sizing the stormwater wetland. The design volume is the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event.

<u>Step 2:</u> Calculate the surface area of the stormwater wetland. The surface area of the wetland shall be the same as the top area of a wetpond sized for the same site conditions. Calculate the surface area of the stormwater wetland by using the volume from Step 1 and dividing by the average water depth (use 3 feet).

<u>Step 3:</u> Determine the surface area of the first cell of the stormwater wetland. Use the volume determined from Criterion 2 under "Wetland Geometry", and the actual depth of the first cell.

<u>Step 4:</u> Determine the surface area of the wetland cell. Subtract the surface area of the first cell (Step 3) from the total surface area (Step 2).

<u>Step 5:</u> Determine water depth distribution in the second cell. Decide if the top of the dividing berm will be at the surface or submerged (designer's choice). Adjust the distribution of water depths in the second cell according to Criterion 8 under "Wetland Geometry" below. Note: This will result in a facility that holds less volume than that determined in Step 1 above. This is acceptable.

<u>Intent:</u> The surface area of the stormwater wetland is set to be roughly equivalent to that of a wetpond designed for the same site so as not to discourage use of this option.

<u>Step 6:</u> Choose plants. See Table 10.1 for a list of plants recommended for wetpond water depth zones, or consult a wetland scientist.

Wetland Geometry

1. Stormwater wetlands shall consist of two cells, a presettling cell and a wetland cell.

2. The presettling cell shall contain approximately 33 percent of the wetpool volume calculated in Step 1 above.

3. The depth of the presettling cell shall be between 4 feet (minimum) and 8 feet (maximum), excluding sediment storage.

4. One-foot of sediment storage shall be provided in the presettling cell.

5. The wetland cell shall have an average water depth of about 1.5 feet (plus or minus 3 inches).

6. The "berm" separating the two cells shall be shaped such that its downstream side gradually slopes to form the second shallow wetland cell (see the section view in Figure 10.7). Alternatively, the second cell may be graded naturalistically from the top of the dividing berm (see Criterion 8 below).

7. The top of berm shall be either at the WQ design water surface or submerged 1-foot below the WQ design water surface, as with wetponds. Correspondingly, the side slopes of the berm must meet the following criteria:

   a. If the top of berm is at the WQ design water surface, the berm side slopes shall be no steeper than 3H:1V.

   b. If the top of berm is submerged 1-foot, the upstream side slope may be up to 2H:1V. If the berm is at the water surface, then for safety reasons, its slope should be not greater than 3:1, just as the pond banks should not be greater than 3:1 if the pond is not fenced. A steeper slope (2:1 rather than 3:1) is allowable if the berm is submerged in 1 foot of water. If submerged, the berm is not considered accessible, and the steeper slope is allowable.

8. Two examples are provided for grading the bottom of the wetland cell. One example is a shallow, evenly graded slope from the upstream to the downstream edge of the wetland cell (see Figure 10.7). The second example is a "naturalistic" alternative, with the specified range of depths intermixed throughout the second cell (see Figure 10.8). A distribution of depths shall be provided in the wetland cell depending on whether the dividing berm is at the water surface or submerged (see Table 10.2 below). The maximum depth is 2.5 feet in either configuration. Other configurations within the wetland geometry constraints listed above may be approved by the Local Plan Approval Authority.

Table 10.2 – Distribution of depths in wetland cell

Dividing Berm at WQ Design Water Surface		Dividing Berm Submerged 1-Foot	
Depth Range (feet)	**Percent**	**Depth Range (feet)**	**Percent**
0.1 to 1	25	1 to 1.5	40
1 to 2	55	1.5 to 2	40
2 to 2.5	20	2 to 2.5	20

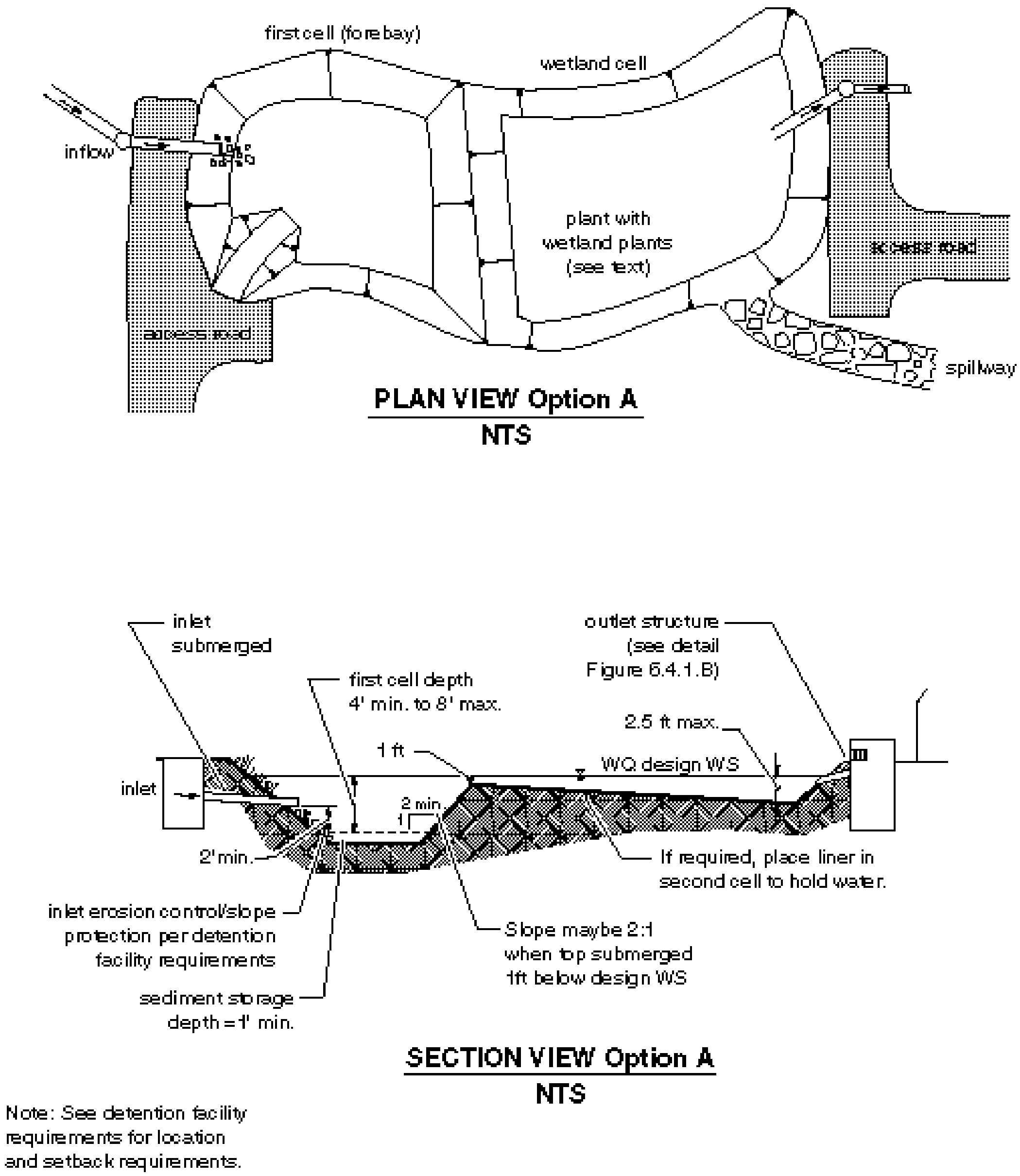
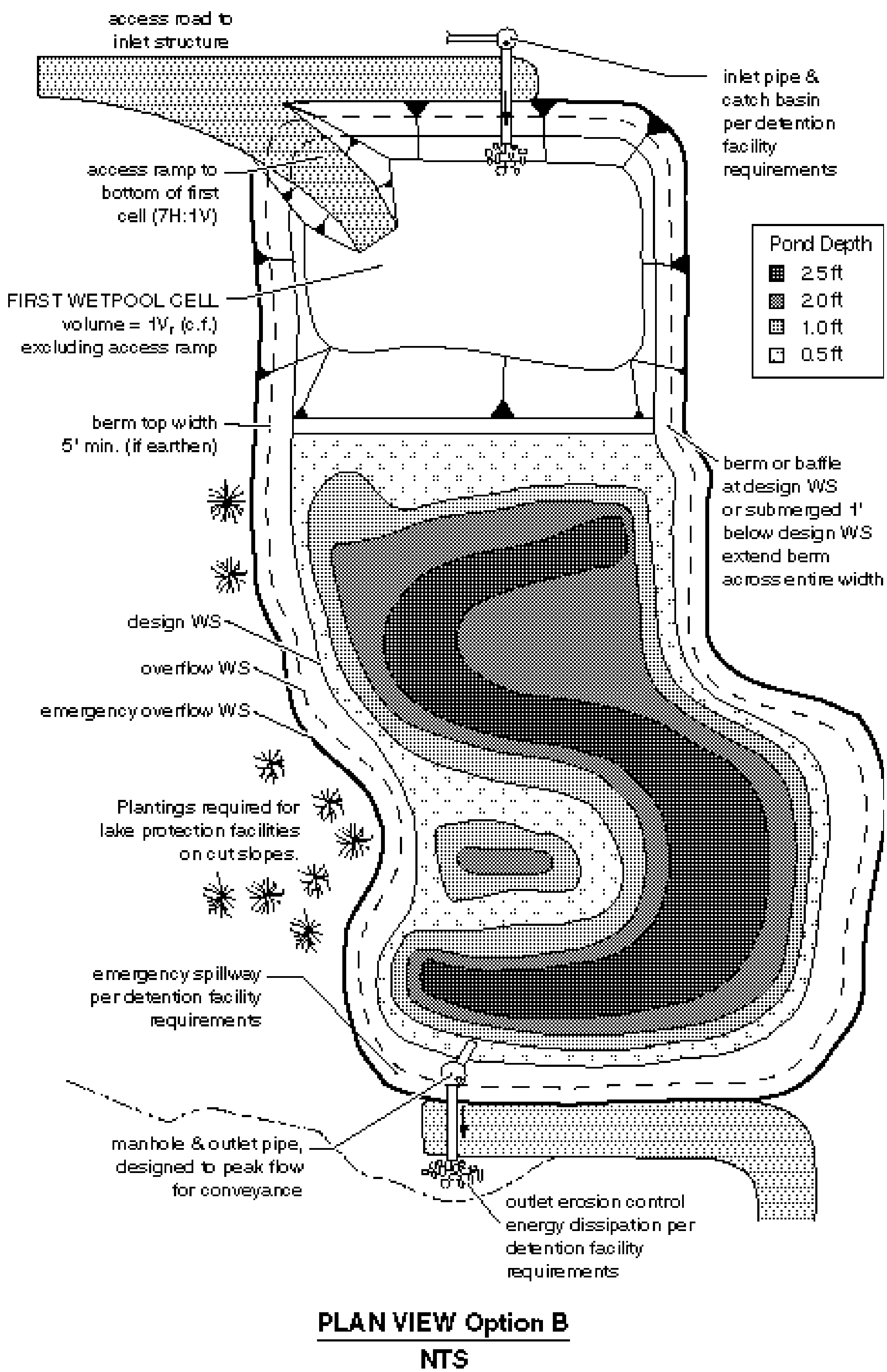


Figure 10.7 Stormwater Wetland — Option One



PLAN VIEW Option B

NTS

Figure 10.8 Stormwater Wetland — Option Two

Lining Requirements

In infiltrative soils, both cells of the stormwater wetland shall be lined. To determine whether a low-permeability liner or a treatment liner is required, determine whether the following conditions will be met. If soil permeability will allow sufficient water retention, lining may be waived.

1 The second cell must retain water for at least 10 months of the year.
2. The first cell must retain at least three feet of water year-round.
3. A complete precipitation record shall be used when establishing these conditions. Evapotranspiration losses shall be taken into account as well as infiltration losses.

<u>Intent:</u> Many wetland plants can adapt to periods of summer drought, so a limited drought period is allowed in the second cell. This may allow a treatment liner rather than a low permeability liner to be used for the second cell. The first cell must retain water year-round in order for the presettling function to be effective.

- If a low permeability liner is used, a minimum of 18 inches of native soil amended with good topsoil or compost (one part compost mixed with 3 parts native soil) must be placed over the liner. For geomembrane liners, a soil depth of 3 feet is recommended to prevent damage to the liner during planting. Hydric soils are not required.

The criteria for liners given in Chapter 4 must be observed.

Inlet and Outlet

Same as for wetponds (see BMP T10.10).

Access and Setbacks

- Location of the stormwater wetland relative to site constraints (e.g., buildings, property lines, etc.) shall be the same as for detention ponds (see Volume III). See Chapter 4 for typical setback requirements for WQ facilities.
- Access and maintenance roads shall be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Volume III). Access and maintenance roads shall extend to both the wetland inlet and outlet structures. An access ramp (7H minimum:1V) shall be provided to the bottom of the first cell unless all portions of the cell can be reached and sediment loaded from the top of the wetland side slopes.
- If the dividing berm is also used for access, it should be built to sustain loads of up to 80,000 pounds.

Planting Requirements

The wetland cell shall be planted with emergent wetland plants following the recommendations given in Table 10.1 or the recommendations of a wetland specialist. Note: Cattails (Typha latifolia) are not recommended. They tend to escape to natural wetlands and crowd out other species. In addition, the shoots die back each fall and will result in oxygen depletion in the wetpool unless they are removed.

Construction Criteria

- Construction and maintenance considerations are the same as for wetponds.
- Construction of the naturalistic alternative (Option 2) can be easily done by first excavating the entire area to the 1.5-foot average depth. Then soil subsequently excavated to form deeper areas can be deposited to raise other areas until the distribution of depths indicated in the design is achieved.

Operation and Maintenance

- Wetlands should be inspected at least twice per year during the first three years during both growing and non-growing seasons to observe plant species presence, abundance, and condition; bottom contours and water depths relative to plans; and sediment, outlet, and buffer conditions.
- Maintenance should be scheduled around sensitive wildlife and vegetation seasons.
- Plants may require watering, physical support, mulching, weed removal, or replanting during the first three years.
- Nuisance plant species should be removed and desirable species should be replanted.
- The effectiveness of harvesting for nutrient control is not well documented. There are many drawbacks to harvesting, including possible damage to the wetlands and the inability to remove nutrients in the below-ground biomass. If harvesting is practiced, it should be done in the late summer.

Resource Material

King County Surface Water Design Manual, September 1998.

Schueler, Thomas. Design of Stormwater Wetland Systems, Guidelines for Creating Diverse and Effective Stormwater Wetland Systems in the Mid-Atlantic Region, October, 1992.

Kadlec, Robert and Robert L. Knight. Treatment Wetlands. 1996.

BMP T10.40 Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities

Purpose and Definition

Combined detention and WQ wetpool facilities have the appearance of a detention facility but contain a permanent pool of water as well. The following design procedures, requirements, and recommendations cover differences in the design of the stand-alone WQ facility when combined with detention storage. The following combined facilities are addressed:

- Detention/wetpond (basic and large)
- Detention/wetvault
- Detention/stormwater wetland.

There are two sizes of the combined wetpond, a basic and a large, but only a basic size for the combined wetvault and combined stormwater wetland. The facility sizes (basic and large) are related to the pollutant removal goals. See Chapter 3 for more information about treatment performance goals.

Applications and Limitations

Combined detention and water quality facilities are very efficient for sites that also have detention requirements. The water quality facility may often be placed beneath the detention facility without increasing the facility surface area. However, the fluctuating water surface of the live storage will create unique challenges for plant growth and for aesthetics alike.

The basis for pollutant removal in combined facilities is the same as in the stand-alone WQ facilities. However, in the combined facility, the detention function creates fluctuating water levels and added turbulence. For simplicity, the positive effect of the extra live storage volume and the negative effect of increased turbulence are assumed to balance, and are thus ignored when sizing the wetpool volume. For the combined detention/stormwater wetland, criteria that limit the extent of water level fluctuation are specified to better ensure survival of the wetland plants.

Unlike the wetpool volume, the live storage component of the facility should be provided above the seasonal high water table.

Combined Detention and Wetpond (Basic and Large)

Typical design details and concepts for a combined detention and wetpond are shown in Figures 10.9 and 10.10. The detention portion of the facility shall meet the design criteria and sizing procedures set forth in Volume 3.

Sizing Procedure

The sizing procedure for combined detention and wetponds are identical to those outlined for wetponds and for detention facilities. The wetpool volume for a combined facility shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. Follow the standard procedure specified in Volume III to size the detention portion of the pond.

Detention and Wetpool Geometry

- The wetpool and sediment storage volumes shall not be included in the required detention volume.
- The "Wetpool Geometry" criteria for wetponds (see BMP T10.10) shall apply with the following modifications/clarifications:

Criterion 1: The permanent pool may be made shallower to take up most of the pond bottom, or deeper and positioned to take up only a limited portion of the bottom. Note, however, that having the first wetpool cell at the inlet allows for more efficient sediment management than if the cell is moved away from the inlet. Wetpond criteria governing water depth must, however, still be met. See Figure 10.11 for two possibilities for wetpool cell placement.

Intent: This flexibility in positioning cells is provided to allow for multiple use options, such as volleyball courts in live storage areas in the drier months.

Criterion 2: The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell is 1-foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention ponds does not need to be added to this, but 6 inches of sediment storage must be added to the second cell to comply with the detention sediment storage requirement.

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

Same as for wetponds (see BMP T10.10).

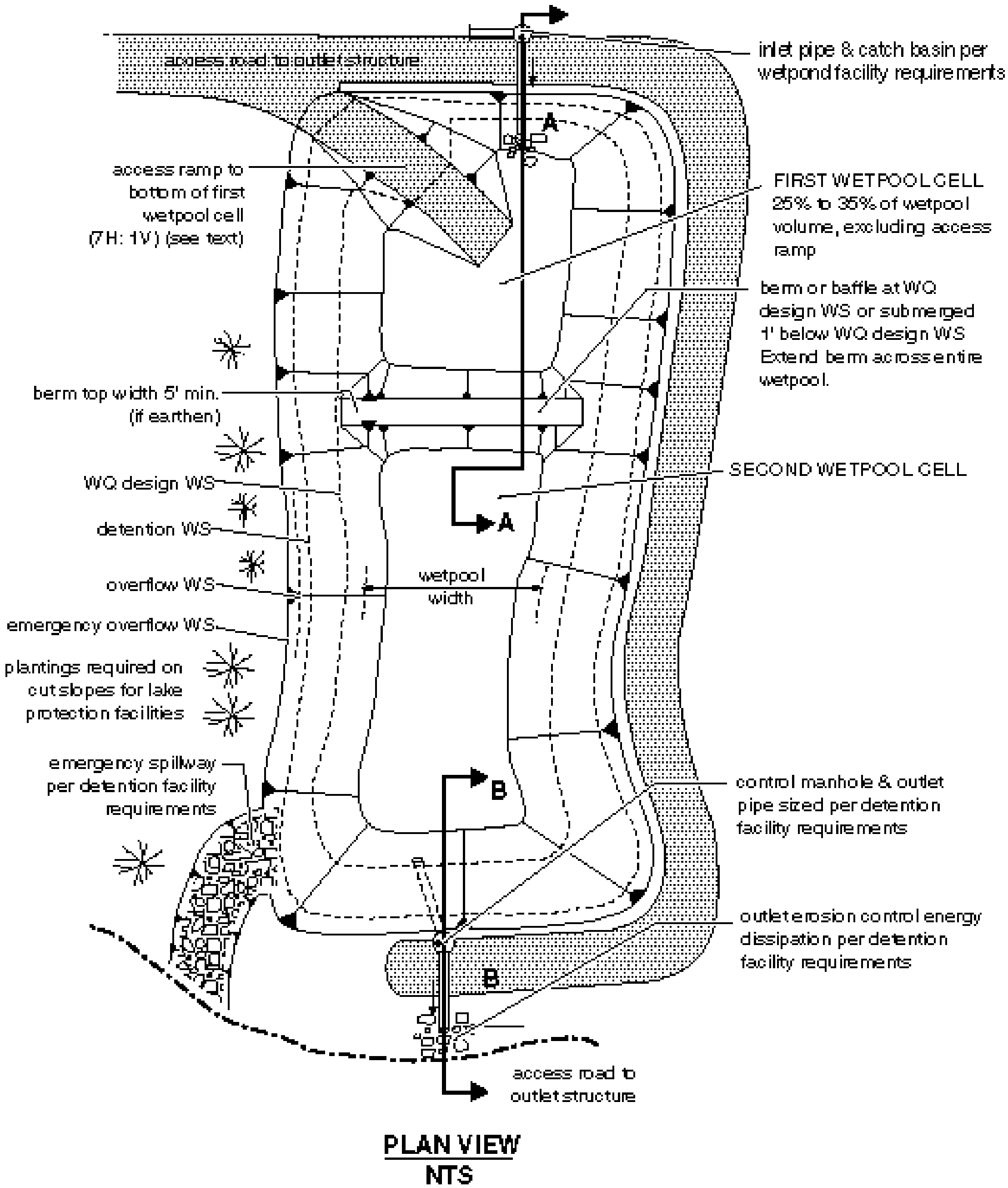
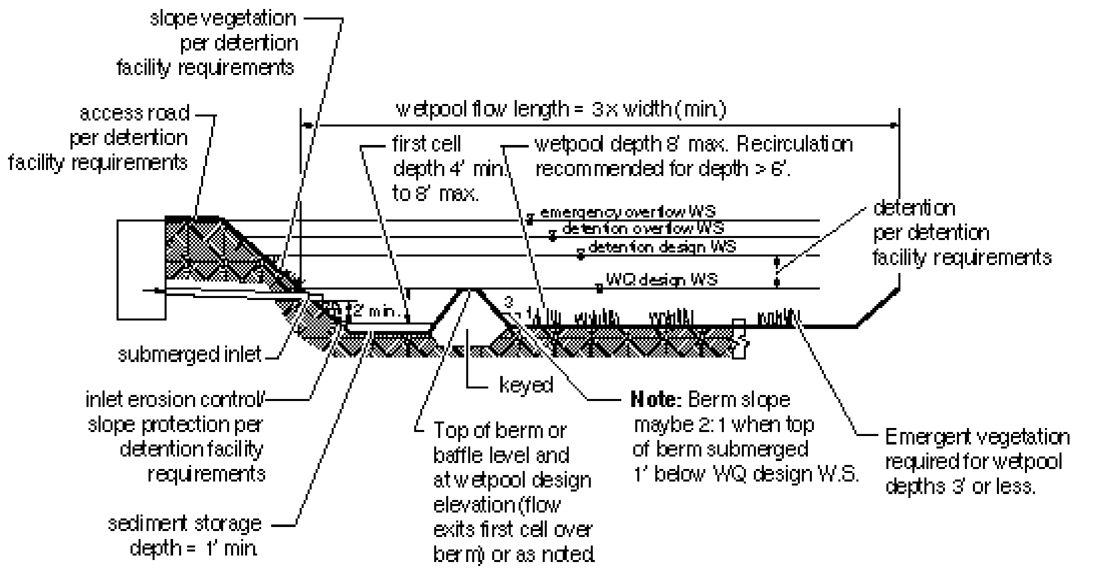


Figure 10.9 Combined Detention and Wetpond



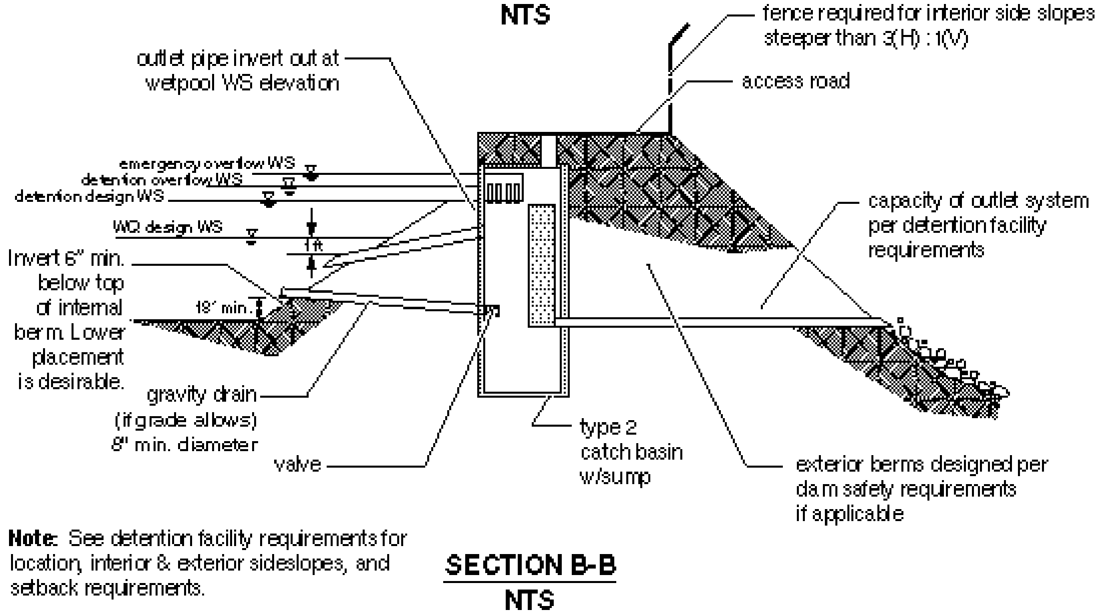
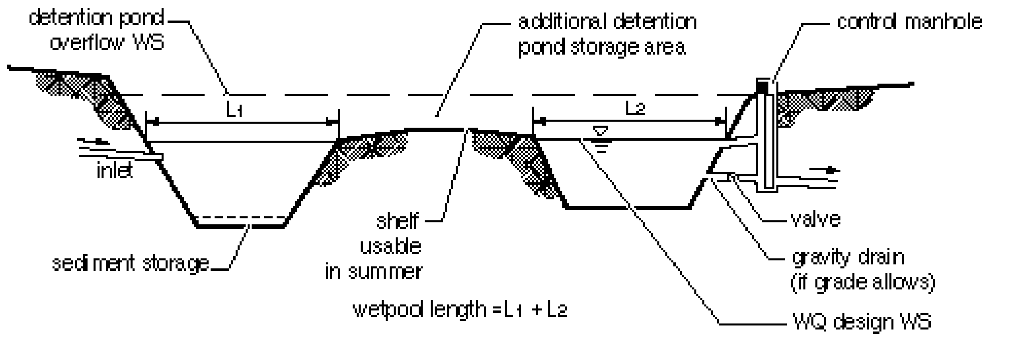
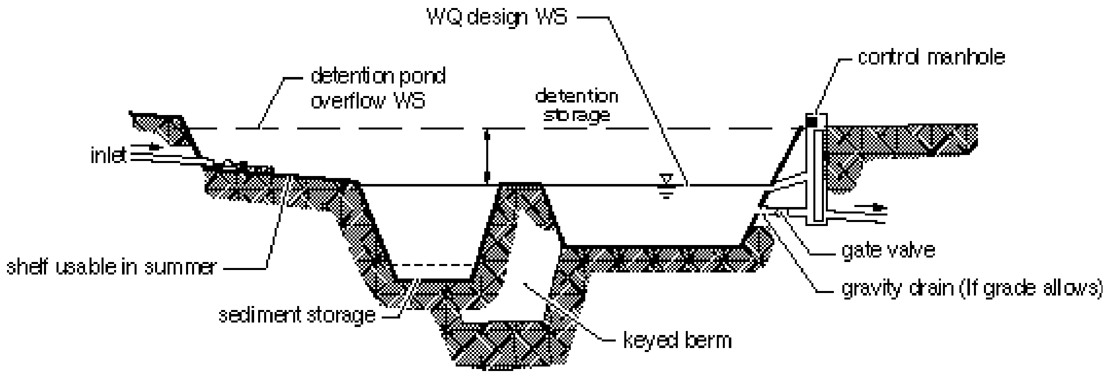


Figure 10.10 Combined Detention and Wetpond (Continued)



SECTION VIEW
NTS



SECTION VIEW
NTS

Note: These examples show how the combined detention/wetpool can be configured to allow for "shelves" for joint use opportunities in dry weather. Other options may also be acceptable.

Figure 10.11 Alternative Configurations of Detention and Wetpool Areas

Inlet and Outlet

The "Inlet and Outlet" criteria for wetponds shall apply with the following modifications:

- A sump must be provided in the outlet structure of combined ponds.
- The detention flow restrictor and its outlet pipe shall be designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Volume III).

Access and Setbacks

Same as for wetponds.

Planting Requirements

Same as for wetponds.

Combined Detention and Wetvault

The sizing procedure for combined detention and wetvaults is identical to those outlined for wetvaults and for detention facilities. The wetvault volume for a combined facility shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. Follow the standard procedure specified in Volume 3 to size the detention portion of the vault.

The design criteria for detention vaults and wetvaults must both be met, except for the following modifications or clarifications:

- The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell shall average 1-foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention vaults does not need to be added to this, but 6 inches of sediment storage must be added to the second cell to comply with detention vault sediment storage requirements.
- The oil retaining baffle shall extend a minimum of 2 feet below the WQ design water surface.

Intent: The greater depth of the baffle in relation to the WQ design water surface compensates for the greater water level fluctuations experienced in the combined vault. The greater depth is deemed prudent to better ensure that separated oils remain within the vault, even during storm events.

Note: If a vault is used for detention as well as water quality control, the facility may not be modified to function as a baffle oil/water separator as allowed for wetvaults in BMP T10.20. This is because the added pool fluctuation in the combined vault does not allow for the quiescent conditions needed for oil separation.

Combined Detention and Stormwater Wetland

The sizing procedure for combined detention and stormwater wetlands is identical to those outlined for stormwater wetlands and for detention facilities. Follow the procedure specified in BMP T10.30 to determine the stormwater wetland size. Follow the standard procedure specified in Volume III to size the detention portion of the wetland.

The design criteria for detention ponds and stormwater wetlands must both be met, except for the following modifications or clarifications:

- The "Wetland Geometry" criteria for stormwater wetlands (see BMP T10.30) are modified as follows:
- The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell is 1-foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention ponds does not need to be added to this, nor does the 6 inches of sediment storage in the second cell of detention ponds need to be added.

Intent: Since emergent plants are limited to shallower water depths, the deeper water created before sediments accumulate is considered detrimental to robust emergent growth. Therefore, sediment storage is confined to the first cell which functions as a presettling cell.

The "Inlet and Outlet" criteria for wetponds shall apply with the following modifications:

- A sump must be provided in the outlet structure of combined facilities.
- The detention flow restrictor and its outlet pipe shall be designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Volume III).

The "Planting Requirements" for stormwater wetlands are modified to use the following plants which are better adapted to water level fluctuations:

Scirpus acutus (hardstem bulrush)	2 - 6' depth
Scirpus microcarpus (small-fruited bulrush)	1 - 2.5' depth
Sparganium emersum (burreed)	1 - 2' depth
Sparganium eurycarpum (burreed)	1 - 2' depth
Veronica sp. (marsh speedwell)	0 - 1' depth

In addition, the shrub Spirea douglasii (Douglas spirea) may be used in combined facilities.

Water Level Fluctuation Restrictions: The difference between the WQ design water surface and the maximum water surface associated with the 2-year runoff shall not be greater than 3 feet. If this restriction cannot be met, the size of the stormwater wetland must be increased. The additional area may be placed in the first cell, second cell, or both. If placed in the second cell, the additional area need not be planted with wetland vegetation or counted in calculating the average depth.

Intent: This criterion is designed to dampen the most extreme water level fluctuations expected in combined facilities to better ensure that fluctuation-tolerant wetland plants will be able to survive in the facility. It is not intended to protect native wetland plant communities and is not to be applied to natural wetlands.

Chapter 11 - Oil and Water Separators

This chapter provides a discussion of oil and water separators, including their application and design criteria. BMPs are described for baffle type and coalescing plate separators.

11.1 Purpose of Oil and Water Separators

To remove oil and other water-insoluble hydrocarbons, and settleable solids from stormwater runoff.

11.2 Description

Oil and water separators are typically the American Petroleum Institute (API) (also called baffle type) (American Petroleum Institute, 1990) or the coalescing plate (CP) type using a gravity mechanism for separation. See Figures 11.1 and 11.2. Oil removal separators typically consist of three bays; forebay, separator section, and the afterbay. The CP separators need considerably less space for separation of the floating oil due to the shorter travel distances between parallel plates. A spill control (SC) separator (Figure 11.3) is a simple catchbasin with a T-inlet for temporarily trapping small volumes of oil. The spill control separator is included here for comparison only and is not designed for, or to be used for treatment purposes.

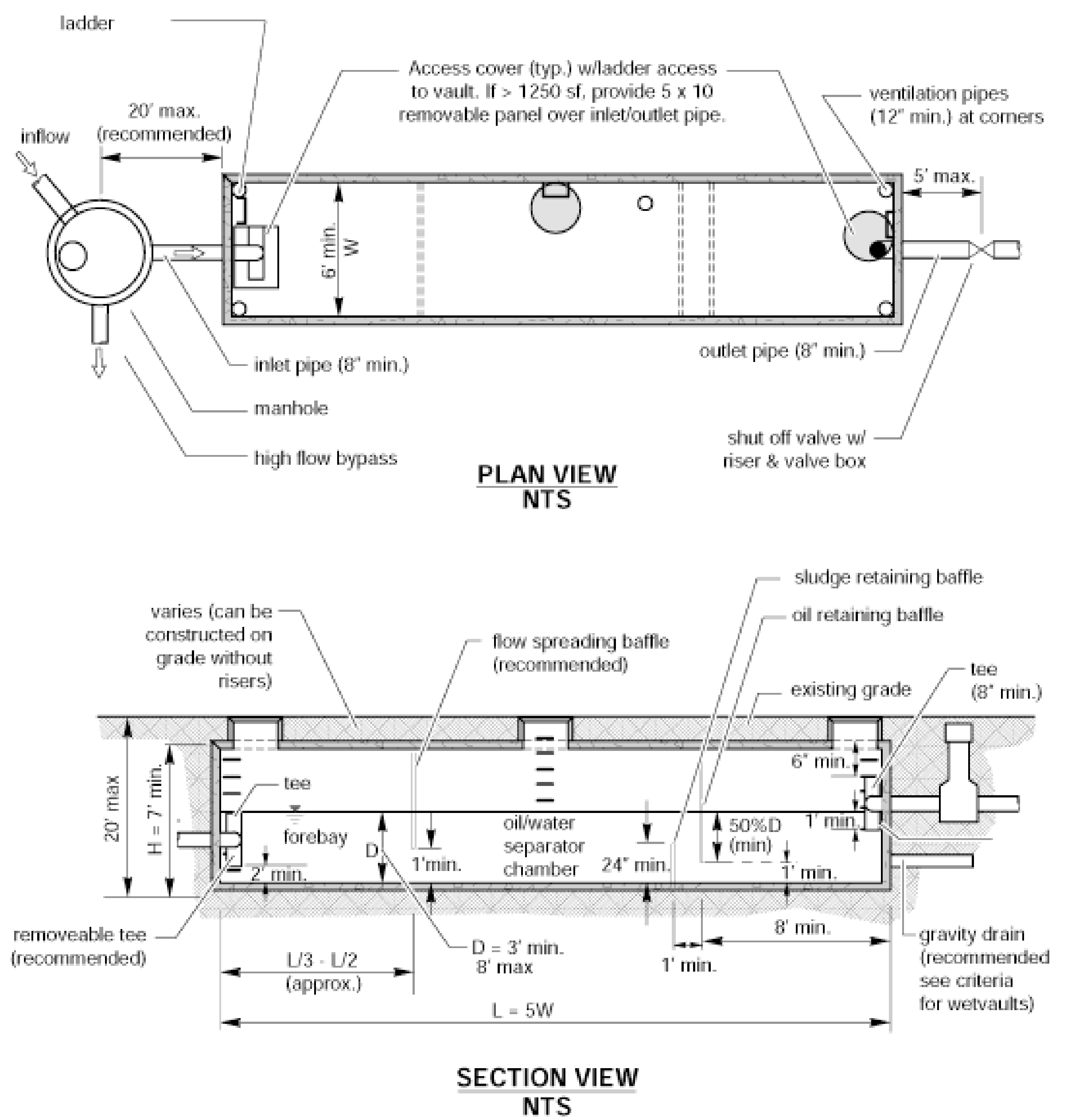


Figure 11.1 API (Baffle Type) Separator

Source: King County (reproduced with permission)

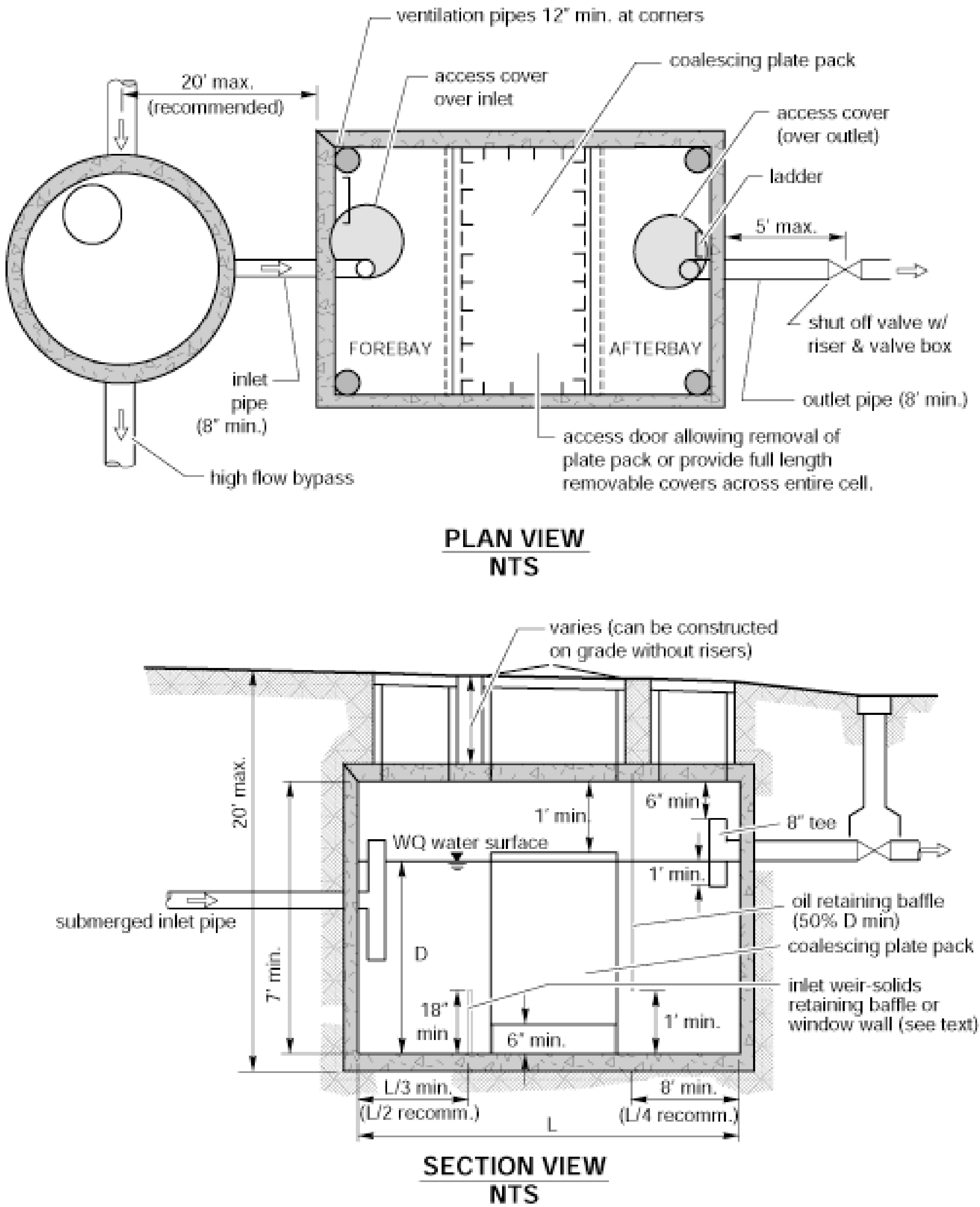


Figure 11.2 Coalescing Plate Separator

Source: King County (reproduced with permission)

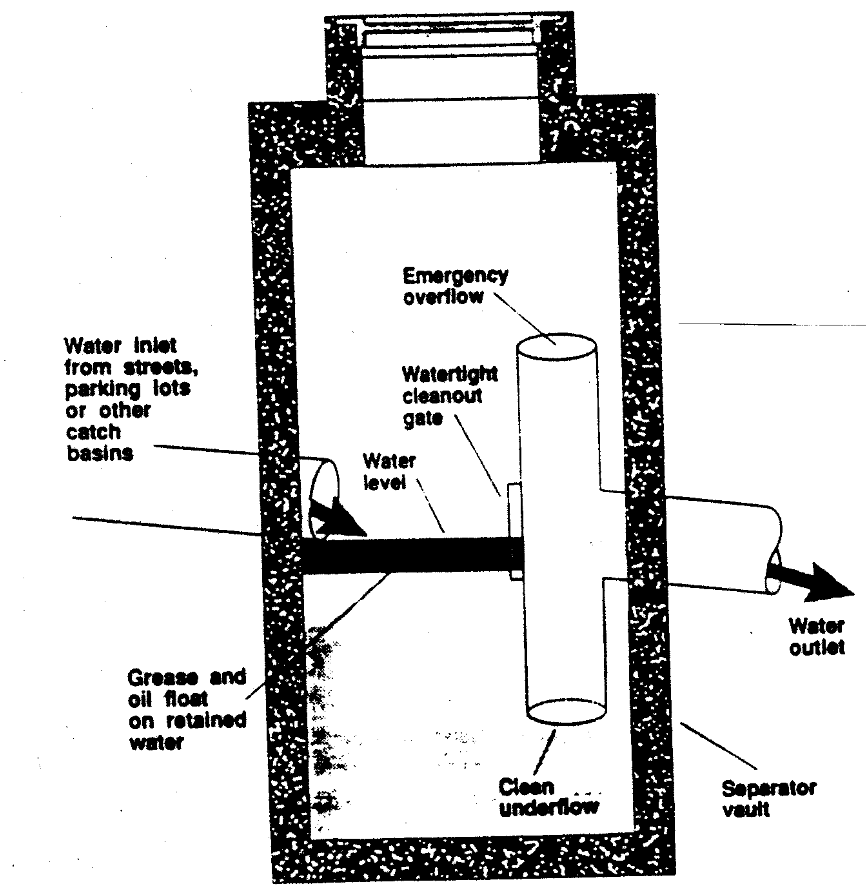


Figure 11.3 Spill Control Separator (not for oil treatment)

Source: 1992 Ecology Manual

11.3 Performance Objectives

Oil and water separators should be designed to remove oil and TPH down to 15 mg/L at any time and 10 mg/L on a 24-hr average, and produce a discharge that does not cause an ongoing or recurring visible sheen in the stormwater discharge, or in the receiving water. (See also Chapter 3)

11.4 Applications/Limitations

The following are potential applications of oil and water separators where free oil is expected to be present at treatable high concentrations and sediment will not overwhelm the separator. (Seattle METRO, 1990; Watershed Protection Techniques, 1994; King County Surface Water Management, 1998) For low concentrations of oil, other treatments may be more applicable. These include sand filters and emerging technologies.

- Commercial and industrial areas including petroleum storage yards, vehicle maintenance facilities, manufacturing areas, airports, utility areas (water, electric, gas), and fueling stations.(King County Surface Water Management, 1998)

- Facilities that would require oil control BMPs under the high-use site threshold described in Chapter 2 including parking lots at convenience stores, fast food restaurants, grocery stores, shopping malls, discount warehouse stores, banks, truck fleets, auto and truck dealerships, and delivery services. (King County Surface Water Management, 1998)

- Without intense maintenance oil/water separators may not be sufficiently effective in achieving oil and TPH removal down to required levels.

- Pretreatment should be considered if the level of TSS in the inlet flow would cause clogging or otherwise impair the long-term efficiency of the separator.

- For inflows from small drainage areas (fueling stations, maintenance shops, etc.) a coalescing plate (CP) type separator is typically considered, due to space limitations. However, if plugging of the plates is likely, then a new design basis for the baffle type API separator may be considered on an experimental basis. (See 11.6 Design Criteria)

11.5 Site Suitability

Consider the following site characteristics:

- Sufficient land area
- Adequate TSS control or pretreatment capability
- Compliance with environmental objectives
- Adequate influent flow attenuation and/or bypass capability
- Sufficient access for operation and maintenance (O & M)

11.6 Design Criteria-General Considerations

There is concern that oil/water separators used for stormwater treatment have not performed to expectations.(Watershed Protection Techniques, 1994; Schueler, Thomas R., 1990) Therefore, emphasis should be given to proper application (see Section 11.4), design, O & M, (particularly sludge and oil removal) and prevention of CP fouling and plugging.(US Army of Engineers, 1994) Other treatment systems, such as sand filters and emerging technologies, should be considered for the removal of insoluble oil and TPH.

The following are design criteria applicable to API and CP oil/water separators:

- If practicable, determine oil/grease (or TPH) and TSS concentrations, lowest temperature, pH; and empirical oil rise rates in the runoff, and the viscosity, and specific gravity of the oil. Also determine whether the oil is emulsified or dissolved. (Washington State Department of Ecology, 1995) Do not use oil/water separators for the removal of dissolved or emulsified oils such as coolants, soluble lubricants, glycols, and alcohols.
- Locate the separator off-line and bypass flows in excess of 2.15 times the Water Quality design flow rate.
- Use only impervious conveyances for oil contaminated stormwater.
- Specify appropriate performance tests after installation and shakedown, and/or certification by a professional engineer that the separator is functioning in accordance with design objectives. Expeditious corrective actions must be taken if it is determined the separator is not achieving acceptable performance levels.
- Add pretreatment for TSS that could cause clogging of the CP separator, or otherwise impair the long-term effectiveness of the separator.

Criteria for Separator Bays:

- Size the separator bay for the Water Quality design flow rate x a correction factor of 2.15. (See Chapter 4 of this Volume for a definition of the Water Quality Design Flow Rate.)
- To collect floatables and settleable solids, design the surface area of the forebay at ≥ 20 ft^2 per 10,000 ft^2 of area draining to the separator [6]. The length of the forebay should be 1/3-1/2 of the length of the entire separator. Include roughing screens for the forebay or upstream of the separator to remove debris, if needed. Screen openings should be about 3/4 inch.
- Include a submerged inlet pipe with a turn-down elbow in the first bay at least two feet from the bottom. The outlet pipe should be a Tee, sized to pass the design peak flow and placed at least 12 inches below the water surface.
- Include a shutoff mechanism at the separator outlet pipe. (King County Surface Water Management, 1998)
- Use absorbents and/or skimmers in the afterbay as needed.

Criteria for Baffles:

- Oil retaining baffles (top baffles) should be located at least at 1/4 of the total separator length from the outlet and should extend down at least 50% of the water depth and at least 1 ft. from the separator bottom.
- Baffle height to water depth ratios should be 0.85 for top baffles and 0.15 for bottom baffles.

11.7 Oil and Water Separator BMPs

Two BMPs are described in this section. BMP T11.10 for baffle type separators, and BMP T11.11 for coalescing plate separators.

BMP T11.10 -API (Baffle type) Separator Bay

Design Criteria

The criteria for small drainages is based on V_h, V_t, residence time, width, depth, and length considerations. As a correction factor API's turbulence criteria is applied to increase the length.

Ecology is modifying the API criteria for treating stormwater runoff from small drainage area (fueling stations, commercial parking lots, etc.) by using the design hydraulic horizontal velocity, V_h, for the design V_h/V_t ratio rather than the API minimum of $V_h/V_t = 15$. The API criteria appear applicable for greater than two acres of impervious drainage area. Performance verification of this design basis must be obtained during at least one wet season using the test protocol referenced in Chapter 12 for new technologies.

The following is the sizing procedure using modified API criteria:

- Determine the oil rise rate, V_t, in cm/sec, using Stokes Law (Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985), or empirical determination, or 0.033 ft./min for 60µ oil. The application of Stokes' Law to site-based oil droplet sizes and densities, or empirical rise rate determinations recognizes the need to consider actual site conditions. In those cases the design basis would not be the 60 micron droplet size and the 0.033 ft/min. rise rate.
- Stokes Law equation for rise rate, V_t (cm/sec):

  $$V_t = g(\sigma_w - \sigma_o)D^2 / 18\eta_w)$$

  Where:

g = gravitational constant (981 cm/sec²)
D = diameter of the oil particle in cm.

Use

oil particle size diameter, D=60 microns (0.006 cm)

σ_w =0.999 gm/cc. at 32° F

σ_o: Select conservatively high oil density,

For example, if diesel oil @ σ_o=0.85 gm/cc and motor oil @ σ_o = 0.90 can be present then use σ_o=0.90 gm/cc

η_w = 0.017921 poise, gm/cm-sec. at T_w=32 °F, (See API Publication 421, February , 1990)

Use the following separator dimension criteria:

Separator water depth, d ≥3≤8 feet (to minimize turbulence) (American Petroleum Institute, 1990; US Army Corps of Engineers, 1994).

Separator width, 6-20 feet (WEF & ASCE, 1998; King County Surface Water Management, 1998)

Depth/width (d/w) of 0.3-0.5 (American Petroleum Institute, 1990)

For Stormwater Inflow from Drainages under 2 Acres:

1. Determine V_t and select depth and width of the separator section based on above criteria.

2. Calculate the minimum residence time (t_m) of the separator at depth d:

$$t_m = d/V_t$$

3. Calculate the horizontal velocity of the bulk fluid, V_h, vertical cross-sectional area, A_v, and actual design V_h/V_t (American Petroleum Institute, 1990; US Army Corps of Engineers, 1994).

   $V_h = Q/dw = Q/A_v$ (V_h maximum at < 2.0 ft/min.)(American Petroleum Institute, 1990)

   Q = 2.15 x the Water Quality design flow rate in ft^3/min, at minimum residence time, t_m

   At V_h/V_t determine F, turbulence and short-circuiting factor (Appendix V-D) API F factors range from 1.28-1.74. (American Petroleum Institute, 1990)

4. Calculate the minimum length of the separator section, l(s), using:

$$l(s) = FQt_m/wd = F(V_h/V_t)d$$
$$l(t) = l(f) + l(s) + l(a)$$
$$l(t) = l(t)/3 + l(s) + l(t)/4$$

   Where:

   l(t) = total length of 3 bays
   l(f) = length of forebay
   l(a) = length of afterbay

5. Calculate $V = l(s)wd = FQt_m$, and $A_h = wl(s)$

   V = minimum hydraulic design volume
   A_h = minimum horizontal area of the separator

For Stormwater Inflow from Drainages > 2 Acres:

Use $V_h = 15\ V_t$ and $d = (Q/2V_h)^{1/2}$ (with d/w = 0.5) and repeat above calculations 3- 5.

BMP T11.11 - Coalescing Plate (CP) Separator Bay

Design Criteria

Calculate the projected (horizontal) surface area of plates needed using the following equation:

$$A_p = Q/V_t = Q/0.00386(\sigma_w - \sigma_o/\eta_w)$$

$$A_p = A_a(\text{cosine } b)$$

Where:

Q = 2.15 x the water quality design flow rate, ft^3/min

V_t = Rise rate of 0.033 ft/min, or empirical determination, or Stokes Law based

A_p = projected surface area of the plate in ft^2; .00386 is unit conversion constant

σ_w=density of water at 32º F
σ_o= density of oil at 32º F
A_a = actual plate area in ft^2 (one side only)

b = angle of the plates with the horizontal in degrees (usually varies from 45-60 degrees).

η_w=viscosity of water at 32º F

- Plate spacing should be a minimum of 3/4 in (perpendicular distance between plates). (WEF & ASCE, 1998; US Army Corps of Engineers, 1994; US Air Force, 1991; Jaisinghani, R., 1979)
- Select a plate angle between 45° to 60° from the horizontal.
- Locate plate pack at least 6 inches from the bottom of the separator for sediment storage
- Add 12 inches minimum head space from the top of the plate pack and the bottom of the vault cover.
- Design inlet flow distribution and baffles in the separator bay to minimize turbulence, short-circuiting, and channeling of the inflow especially through and around the plate packs of the CP separator. The Reynolds Number through the separator bay should be <500 (laminar flow).

- Include forebay for floatables and afterbay for collection of effluent. (WEF & ASCE, 1998)
- The sediment-retaining baffle must be upstream of the plate pack at a minimum height of 18 in. (King County Surface Water Management, 1998).
- Design plates for ease of removal, and cleaning with high-pressure rinse or equivalent.

Operation and Maintenance

- Prepare, regularly update, and implement an O & M Manual for the oil/water separators.
- Inspect oil/water separators monthly during the wet season of October 1-April 30 (WEF & ASCE, 1998; Woodward-Clyde Consultants) to ensure proper operation, and, during and immediately after a large storm event of ≥1 inch per 24 hours.
- Clean oil/water separators regularly to keep accumulated oil from escaping during storms. They must be cleaned by October 15 to remove material that has accumulated during the dry season (Woodward-Clyde Consultants), after all spills, and after a significant storm. Coalescing plates may be cleaned in-situ or after removal from the separator. An eductor truck may be used for oil, sludge, and washwater removal. (King County Surface Water Management, 1998) Replace wash water in the separator with clean water before returning it to service.
- Remove the accumulated oil when the thickness reaches 1-inch. Also remove sludge deposits when the thickness reaches 6 inches (King County Surface Water Management, 1998).
- Replace oil absorbent pads before their sorbed oil content reaches capacity.
- Train designated employees on appropriate separator operation, inspection, record keeping, and maintenance procedures.

Chapter 12 - Emerging Technologies

This Chapter addresses emerging (new) technologies that have not been evaluated in sufficient detail to be acceptable for general usage in new development or redevelopment situations.

12.1 Background

It has become clear that the treatment BMPs described in Ecology's 1992 Stormwater Manual, in some situations, are either not applicable or do not provide reliable and cost-effective removal of pollutants. For these reasons a need to develop new stormwater treatment technologies has emerged in this State as well as nationwide.

Emerging technologies are new technologies that have not been evaluated using approved protocols, but for which preliminary data indicate that they may provide a desirable level of stormwater pollutant removal. Some emerging technologies have already been installed in Washington as parts of treatment trains or as stand-alone systems for specific applications. In some cases, emerging technologies are necessary to remove metals, hydrocarbons, and nutrients. Emerging technologies can also be used for retrofits and where land availability is unavailable for larger natural systems.

12.2 Ecology Role in Evaluating Emerging Technologies

Ecology recognizes the need to participate in a process to evaluate emerging technologies and to convey judgments made by local jurisdictions and others on their acceptance. Based on recommendations from Ecology's Volume V Stormwater Technical Advisory Committee (TAC), Ecology plans to implement the following process:

- To develop a web site for publishing information on emerging technologies and protocols used in their evaluation,
- To organize and convene a Technical Review Committee (TRC) which will be asked to evaluate emerging technologies,
- To use Best Professional Judgment (BPJ) in the interim, with input from its TRC, in assessing levels of developments of emerging technologies.

12.3 Local Government Evaluation of Emerging Technologies

Local governments should consider the following as they make decisions concerning the use of new stormwater technologies in their jurisdictions:

<u>Remember the goal:</u>

The goal of any stormwater management program or BMP is to treat and release stormwater in a manner that does not harm beneficial uses. Compliance with water quality standards is one measure of determining whether beneficial uses will be harmed.

<u>Exercise reasonable caution:</u>

It is important to be cautious with the use of emerging, unproven, technologies for new development and for retrofits. Before selecting a new technology for a limited application, the local government should review evaluation information based on an acceptable protocol.

An emerging technology *must not be used* for new development sites unless there are data indicating that its performance is expected to be reasonably equivalent to a Basic Treatment, or as part of a treatment train. Local governments can refer to Ecology's web site to obtain the latest performance verification of an emerging technology.

Local governments are encouraged to:

- Conduct a monitoring program, using an acceptable protocol, of those emerging technologies that have not been verified for limited or full-scale statewide use at Ecology's web site.
- Look for achieving acceptable performance objectives as specified in Chapter 3.

To achieve the goals of the Clean Water Act and the Endangered Species Act, local government may find it necessary to retrofit many, existing stormwater discharges. In retrofit situations the use of any BMPs that make substantial progress toward these goals is a step forward and is encouraged by Ecology. To the extent practical, the performance of these BMPs should be evaluated, using approved protocols.

12.4 Acceptable Evaluation Protocol (APWA Task Committee, 1999)

To properly evaluate new technologies, performance data must be obtained using an accepted protocol. Such a protocol has been drafted by the Washington State Chapter of the APWA. Ecology plans to publish the final version of the APWA Protocol at its web site for use by local governments, suppliers of new technologies, and consultants. The current version can be downloaded from the APWA web site at http://www.mrsc.org/stormwater. Other acceptable protocols may also be added to Ecology's web site. Such protocols may be developed by local, state, or federal agencies.

12.5 Assessing Levels of Development of Emerging Technologies

Ecology has received several submittals from vendors to approve their new technologies for statewide applications. However, none of the submittals included performance information using the APWA, or equivalent protocol. Moreover, it is evident that some technologies have been under development for many years and have been improved considerably during that time.

To assess and classify levels of developments, Ecology is proposing to use the criteria given below. These criteria will be included on the planned web site. Emerging technologies shall be used only within the application criteria and performance limits listed at Ecology's web site. Best Professional judgment may be used in the interim until the APWA-TRC process is operational.

- *Pilot Level* - Pilot studies could typically be conducted at roadway, commercial and residential sites, or specific land uses for which the system is marketed. Runoff at each site should be tested at full flow (design flow) conditions using reasonable evaluation criteria before deciding on a limited or general statewide use of the technology. The pilot studies should be conducted during dry and wet seasons.
- *General Statewide Use*. - To obtain general statewide acceptance the performance criteria as specified in Chapter 3 must be met using the APWA protocol, or other acceptable protocol. Final application, design and O&M criteria, and costs must be determined. Approvals may include application as part of a treatment train and/or as a stand-alone BMP.

12.6 Examples of Emerging Technologies for Stormwater Treatment and Control

The descriptions and other supplier information provided in this section should not be construed as approvals by Ecology of any of the technologies. Suppliers of these emerging technologies are encouraged to submit performance verification data to Ecology in accordance with the APWA-TRC process described earlier in this chapter.

12.6.1 Media Filters

Introduction

The media filter technology has been under development in the Pacific Northwest since the early 1990s. During the early stages of development, a leaf compost medium was used in fixed beds, replacing sand. Continued development of this technology is based on placing the media in filter cartridges (vertical media filters) instead of fixed beds, and amending the media (Varner, Phyllis, City of Bellevue, 1999) with constituents that will improve effectiveness (See Figure 12.1). Many systems have been installed in the U.S. The primary target pollutants for removal are: TSS, total and soluble phosphorous, total nitrogen, soluble metals, and oil & grease and other organics.

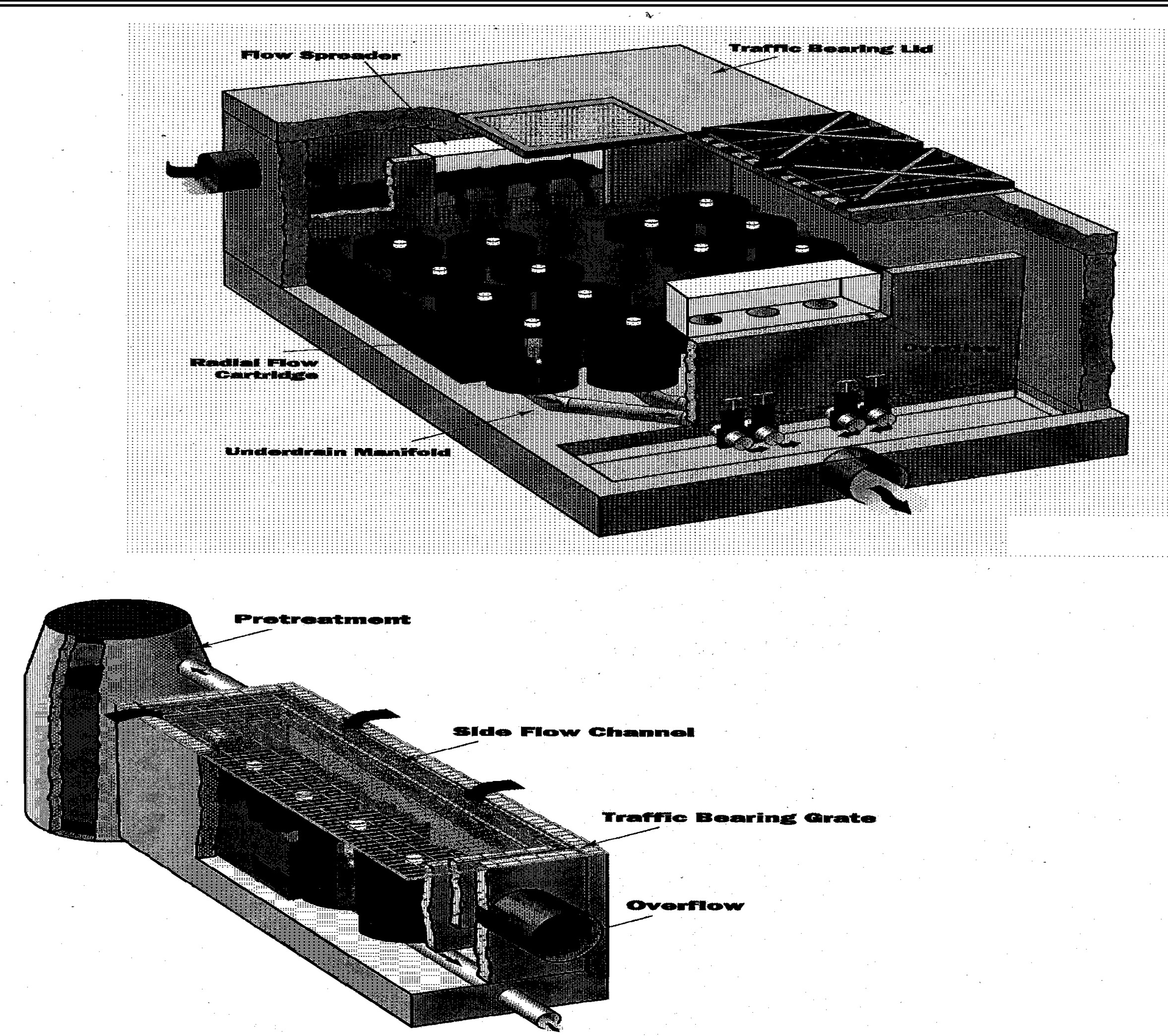


Figure 12.1. Vertical Media Filter

Courtesy of Stormwater Management Co.

Description: The media can be housed in cartridge filters enclosed in concrete vaults, or in fixed beds such as the sand filters described in Chapter 8. An assortment of filter media are available including leaf compost, pleated fabric, activated charcoal, perlite, amended sand and perlite, and zeolite. The system functions by routing the stormwater through the filtering or sorbing medium, which traps particulates and/or soluble pollutants. (Leif, Bill, 1999; Stormwater Management Company, 1999)

Performance Objectives Media can be selected for removal of TSS, oil/grease or total petroleum hydrocarbons, soluble metals, nutrients and organics. (See Chapter 4 for performance objectives)

Applications and limitations: Typical applications and limitations include:

- Pretreatment is required for high TSS and/or hydrocarbon loadings and debris that could cause premature failures due to clogging
- Media filtration, such as amended sand, (Varner, Phyllis, City of Bellevue, 1999) should be considered for some enhanced treatment applications to remove soluble metals and soluble phosphates
- These systems may be designed as on-line systems for small drainage areas, or as off-line systems.
- For off-line applications, flows greater than the design flow shall be bypassed.

Site Suitability Consider:

- Space requirements
- Design flow characteristics
- Target pollutants
- O & M requirements
- Capital and annual costs

Design Criteria for TSS Removal)

- Determine TSS loading and peak design flow.
- TSS loading capacity per cartridge based on manufacturer's loading and flow design criteria to determine number and size of cartridges.
- Evaluate for pre-treatment needs. Typically, roadways, single family dwellings, and developments with steep slopes and erodible soils need pretreatment for TSS. Developments producing sustained oil and grease loads should be evaluated for oil and grease pretreatment needs.
- Select media based on pollutants of concern which are typically based on land use and local agency guidelines.

Pretreatment and Bypassing:

- Use source control where feasible, including gross pollutant removal, sweeping, and spill containment

- Maintain catchbasins as needed to minimize inlet debris that could impair the operation of the filter media.
- Sedimentation vaults/ponds/ tanks, innovative more efficient catchbasins, oil/water separators for oil > 25 ppm, or other appropriate pre-treatment system to improve and maintain the operational efficiency of the filter media
- Bypassing of flows above design flows should be included

Construction

- A precast or cast-in-place vault is typically installed over an underdrain manifold pipe system. This is followed by installation of the cartridges.
- Prior to cartridge installation construction sites must be stabilized to prevent erosion and solids loading.

Maintenance

- Follow manufacturers O & M guidelines to maintain design flows and pollutant removals
- Based on TSS loading and cartridge capacity calculate maintenance frequency

Additional Applications, Limitations, Design, Construction, and Maintenance Criteria (See Ecology web site when available).

12.6.2 Amended Sand Filters

Description

The addition of media to improve the pollutant removal capabilities of basic sand filters.

Recent Performance Results

In a thorough study (Varner, Phyllis, City of Bellevue, 1999) of the performance of sand filters amended with processed steel fiber (95% sand and 5% processed steel fiber by volume), and crushed calcitic limestone (90% sand and 10% crushed calcitic limestone by volume), the City of Bellevue reported significant reductions in total phosphorus and dissolved zinc in runoff from the Lakemont residential area. Because the Lakemont filter study was a detailed, well-documented, and reviewed analysis of a full scale operation, Ecology considers this technology as sufficiently advanced in development to allow its use as an option under the Enhanced Treatment Menu and the Phosphorus Treatment Menu. Sand filters amended with one of these media should be sized using the design criteria for a basic sand filter. Ecology prefers that these amendments be tested at another location to confirm the performances achieved by the Lakemont study and to further refine the design criteria.

12.6.3 Catch Basin Inserts (CBI)

Introduction

CBIs have been under development for many years in the Puget Sound Basin. They function similarly to media filtration except that they are typically limited by the size of the catchbasin. They also are likely to be maintenance intensive.

Description

Catch basin inserts typically consist of the following components:

- A structure (screened box, brackets, etc.) which contains a pollutant removal medium
- A means of suspending the structure in a catch basin
- A filter medium such as sand, carbon, fabric, etc.
- A primary inlet and outlet for the stormwater
- A secondary outlet for bypassing flows that exceed design flow

Applications and Limitations

By treating runoff close to its source, the volume of flow is minimized and more effective pollutant removal is therefore possible. Depending on the insert medium, removals of TSS, organics (including oils), and metals can be achieved. The main drawbacks are the limited retention capacities and maintenance requirements on the order of once per month in the wet season to clean or replace the medium. Based on two studies of catch basin inserts,(Koon, John, Interagency Catchbasin Insert Committee, 1995; Leif, William, Snohomish County 1998) the following are potential limitations and applications for specifically designated CBIs.

- CBIs are not recommended as a substitute for basic BMPs such as wet ponds, vaults, constructed wetlands, grass swales, sand filters or related BMPs.
- CBIs can be used as temporary sediment control devices and pretreatment at construction sites.
- CBIs can be considered for oil control at small sites where the insert medium has sufficient hydrocarbon loading capacity and rate of removal, and the TSS and debris will not prematurely clog the insert.
- CBIs can be used in unpaved areas and should be considered equivalent to currently accepted inlet protection BMPs.
- CBIs can be used when an existing catch basin lacks a sump or has an undersized sump.
- CBIs can cause flooding when plugged.
- CBIs may be considered in specialized small drainage applications for specific target pollutants where clogging of the medium will not be a problem.

12.6.4 Manufactured Storm Drain Structures

Most of these types of systems marketed thusfar are cylindrical in shape and are designed to fit into or adjacent to existing storm drainage systems or catch basins. The removal mechanisms include vortex-enhanced sedimentation, circular screening, and engineered designs of internal components, for large particle TSS and large oil droplets.

1. ***Vortex-enhanced Sedimentation***

Description:

Vortex-enhanced Sedimentation consists of a cylindrical vessel with tangential inlet flow which spirals down the perimeter, thus causing the heavier particles to settle. It uses a vortex-enhanced settling mechanism (swirl-concentration) to capture settleable solids, floatables, and oil and grease. This system includes a wall to separate TSS from oil. See Figure 12.2.

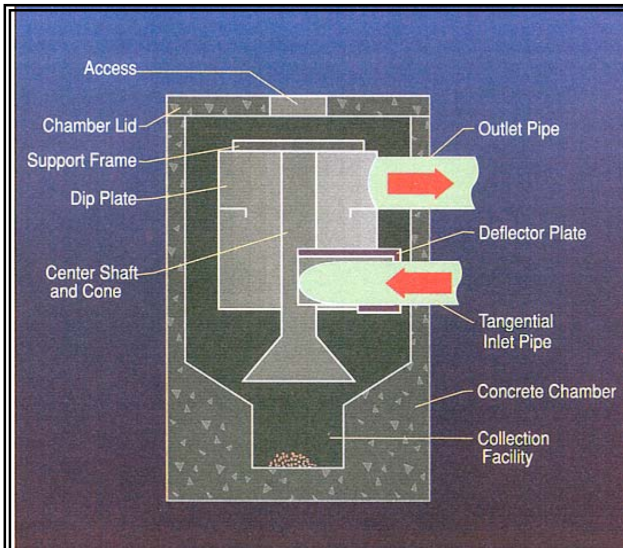


Figure 12.2 - Vortex-enhanced settling mechanism.

(Courtesy of HIL, Inc.)

Applications, Limitations, Design, Construction, and Maintenance Criteria (See Ecology web site when available).

2. *Vortex-enhanced Sedimentation and Media Filtration*

Description

This system uses a two-stage approach which includes a Swirl Concentrator followed by a filtration chamber. See Figure 12.3.

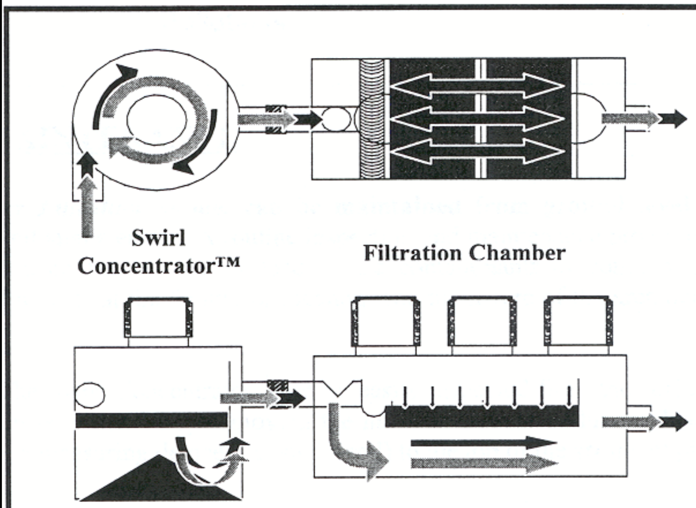


Figure 12.3 - Vortex-enhanced Sedimentation and Media Filtration

(Courtesy of Aquafilter, Inc.)

Applications, Limitations, Design, Construction, and Maintenance Criteria (See Ecology web site when available).

3. *Cylindrical Screening System*

Description:

This system is comprised of a cylindrical screen and appropriate baffles and inlet/outlet structures to remove debris, large particle TSS, and large oil droplets. It includes an overflow for flows exceeding the design flow. Sorbents can be added to the separation chamber to increase pollutant removal efficiency. See Figure 12.4.

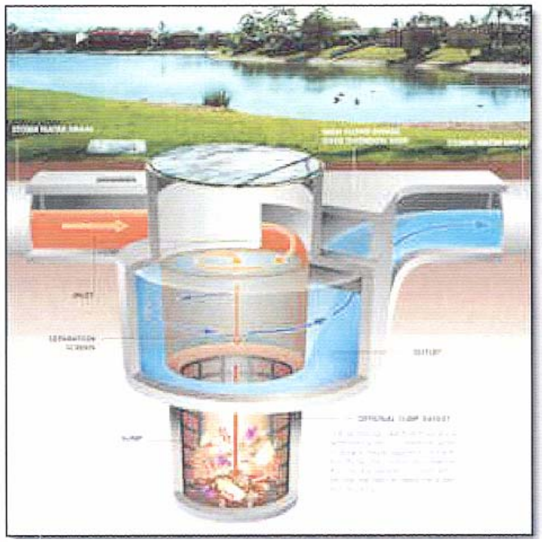


Figure 12.4 - Screen Separator

(Courtesy of CDS, Inc.)

Applications, Limitations, Design, Construction, and Maintenance Criteria (See Ecology web site when available).

4. Engineered Cylindrical Sedimentation

Description:

This system is comprised of an engineered internal baffle arrangement and oil/TSS storage compartment designed to provide considerably better removals of large particle TSS and oil droplets than the standard catchbasins. It includes a bypass of flows higher than design flows, thus preventing scouring of collected solids and oils during the bigger storms. See Figure 12.5.

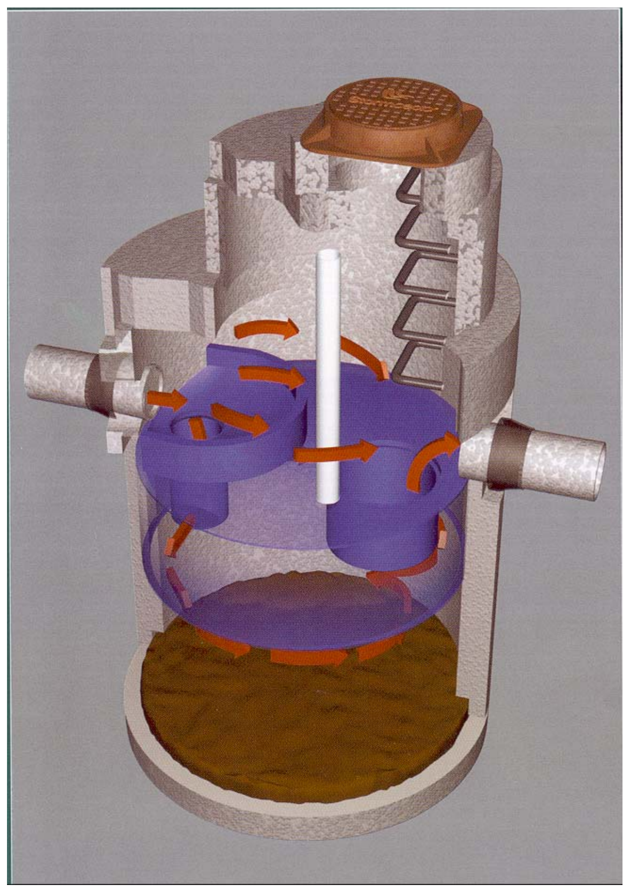


Figure 12.5 Engineered Cylindrical Sedimentation

(Courtesy of Stormceptor Co.)

Applications, Limitations, Design, Construction, and Maintenance Criteria (See Ecology web site, when available).

12.6.5 High Efficiency Street Sweepers

Description:

A new generation of street sweepers has been developed that utilize strong vacuums to pick-up small particulates. They include mechanical sweeping and air filtration to control air emissions to acceptable levels. At least two manufacturers market what is referred to as a *"high-efficiency"* street sweeper.

Application: (See Ecology web site, when available)

High efficiency street sweepers are being marketed for roadways that are sufficiently accessible, need fine particulate removal (<250 microns), and for which a sufficient frequency of sweeping can be maintained to achieve proper removals of street dirt.

Limitations:

- Limited field data and dependence on modeling projections
- May not be sufficiently effective during wet conditions
- More expensive than traditional sweepers - the cost of alternative BMPs should be compared.
- Increased storm frequency, with short intervals between storms, results in a need for increased frequency of sweeping.
- May depend on its availability, particularly during the wet season, and the need for a minimum in-place backup treatment facility.

Volume V References

Allen, Tony (Recommendations by) -Geotechnical Engineer, WSDOT, 1999

American Petroleum Institute, "Design and Operation of Oil-Water Separators," Publication 421, Feb. 1990.

APWA Task Committee, "Protocol for the Acceptance of Unapproved Stormwater Treatment Technologies for Use in the Puget Sound Watershed, November 1999.

Aquashield Inc., "Aquafilter Stormwater Filtration System", 2000.

ASCE and WEF, Urban Runoff Quality Management, WEF Manual of Practice No. 23, 1998.

Caraco, Deborah and Richard Claytor, Stormwater BMP Design Supplement for Cold Climates, Center for Watershed Protection, December 1997.

Center for Watershed Protection, "Better Site Design", August 1998.

Chang, George, C., "Review of Stormwater Manual-Sand Filtration Basins for Department of Ecology, State of Washington", November 5, 2000.

Chin, D. A. Water Resources Engineering, Prentice Hall, New Jersey, 2000.

Chow, V.T., "Open Channel Hydraulics", McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1959.

City of Austin, Texas. Design Guidelines for Water Quality Control Basins, Environmental Criteria Manual, June 1988.

Claytor, Richard and Thomas Schueler, Design of Stormwater Filter Systems, December 1996

Colwell, S.R., "Characterization of Performance Predictors and Evaluation of Mowing Practices in Biofiltration Swales." MSCE Thesis, U. of Washington, 2000.

Corbitt, Robert A., "Oil and Grease Removal," Handbook of Environmental Engineering, McGraw-Hill, Inc., 1990.

CSR-HydroConduit, "The Stormceptor System Technical Manual", 1997.

Ferguson, Bruce K., Stormwater Infiltration, Lewis Publishers, 1994.

Ferguson, Bruce K., Review of Draft Stormwater Manual for Western Washington (Infiltration Sections of Volume III and Volume V), October 2000.

Goldman, S.J., K. Jackson and T.A. Bursztynsky, "Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook" McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1986.

H.I.L. Technology, Inc.," Downstream Defender", 1998.

Horner, R., "Fundamentals of Urban Runoff Management-Technical and Institutional Issues", 1994.

Horner, Richard "Review of Stormwater Manual." October 23, 2000.

Jaisinghani, R., A., et. al., "A Study of Oil/Water Separation in Corrugated Plate Separators," Journal of Engineering for Industry, 11/79.

King County Surface Water Management, "High Use/Oil Control Decision Paper," Draft, 1994.

King County Surface Water Management, Design Manual, September, 1998.

King County Surface Water Management, WA, "Draft Guidelines for Full-Scale Infiltration Facility Testing", February, 2001.

Koon, John, "Evaluation of Water Quality Ponds and Swales in the Issaquah/East Sammamish Basins", King County Surface Water Management, 1995.

Koon, John, et al, "Evaluation of Commercial-Available Catch basin Inserts for the Treatment of Stormwater Runoff from Developed Sites", Interagency Catch basin Insert Committee, 1995.

Kulzer, Louise and Horner, Richard, et. al., "Biofiltration Swale Performance, Recommendations, and Design Considerations", Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle. Publication 657, October 1992

Lambert, C., "Stormceptor", CSR, Inc., July 2000.

Lee, D., T.A. Dillaha and J.H. Sherrard, "Modeling Phosphorus Transport in Grass Buffer Strips." Journal of Environmental Engineering, Volume 115, No. 2, New York, N.Y., April, 1989.

Leif, Bill, "Compost Stormwater Filter Evaluation", January 1999.

Leif, William, "Sediment Removal in Catch Basin Inserts", Snohomish County, March 1998.

Massmann, Joel and Carolyn Butchart. Infiltration Characteristics, Performance, and Design of Storm Water Facilities, U. of Washington, March 2000.

Mazer, Greg, "Environmental Limitations to Vegetation Establishment and Growth in Vegeteted Stormwater Biofilters." University of Washington, July 1998.

Minton, Gary, "Planning Report No. 3: Sizing Oil/Water Separators for the Redmond Way Storm Drain System", Resource Planning Associates, 1990.

Minton, G., The Selection and Sizing of Treatment BMPs in New Developments to Achieve Water Quality Objectives, March 1993.

No. Carolina DEHNR," Stormwater Best Management Practices", November 1995.

Rawls, W. J., D. L. Brakensiek, and K. E. Saxton. Estimation of Soil Properties. Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers, Vol. 25, No. 5, pp. 1316-1320, 1982.

Schueler, Thomas R., "Water Quality inlets/Oil Grit Separators," BMP Fact Sheet #11, Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices, March 1992.

Schueler, Tom, et. al., "A Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices", March 1992.

Seattle METRO, "Oil and Water Don't Mix," October 1990.

Shaver, Earl, Sand Filter Design for Water Quality Treatment, Delaware Department of Natural Resources and Environmental Control, 1992.

SPE Production Engineering, "Droplet-Settling vs. Retention-Time Theories for Sizing Oil/Water Separator," Kenneth Arnold, et. al., February 1990.

Stenstrom, Michael, et. al., "Oil and Grease in Urban Stormwater," 1983 paper for publication in Journal of Environ. Engineering.

Stormwater Management Co., "Stormfilter Product Manual", 1999.

Strynchuk, Justin, et al, "The Use of a CDS Unit for Sediment Control in Brevard County, April, 2000.

Sutherland, Roger, et al, "High Efficiency Sweeping as an Alternative to the Use of Wet Vaults for Stormwater Treatment," 1998.

Thurston County Environmental Health, "Oil/Water Separator Fact Sheet," circa 1995.

U.S. Air Force, "Gravity Oil and Water Separator Design Criteria," circa 1991.

U.S. Army Corps. of Engineers, "Selection and Design of Oil and Water Separators," August 26, 1994.

U.S. Army Corps. of Engrs., "Prefabricated Oil-Water Separators," Draft Specifications, 1995.

U.S. Dept. of Commerce, Bureau of Public Roads, "Design Charts for Open-Channel Flow, Hydraulic Design Series 3", Washington, D.C., 1961.

Urbonas, Ben, Hydraulic Design of Sand Filters for Stormwater Quality, 1997.

USEPA, "Stormwater BMP Design Supplement for Cold Climates", December 1997.

Varner, Phyllis, et al, "Lakemont Stormwater Treatment Facility Monitoring Report," City of Bellevue, November 1999.

Wa. Dept. of Ecology, "NPDES and State Waste Discharge General Permit for Stormwater Discharges Associated with Industrial Activities," November 18, 1995.

Wang T.S., D.E. Spyridakis, B.W. Mar, and R.R. Horner, "Transport, Deposition and Control of Heavy Metals in Highway Runoff." FHWA-WA-RD-39.10. Report to Washington State Department of Transportation by Department of Civil Engineering, University of Washington, Seattle, 1982

Water Environment Federation, "Urban Runoff Quality Management", American Society of Civil Engineers, 1998.

Water Pollution Control Federation, "Clarifier Design," Manual of Practice FD-8, 1985.

Watershed Protection Techniques, "Hydrocarbon Hotspots in the Urban Landscape: Can They be Controlled?", Feb. 1994.

WEF & ASCE, "Urban Runoff Quality Management, 1998.

Wiltsie, Edward, Stormwater Facilities Performance Study, Infiltration Pond Testing and Data Evaluation, August 10, 1998.

Woinsky, S. G., "New Advanced Solids/Oil/Water Separator," Environmental Progress, Feb. 1995.

Wong, S.L., and R.H. McKuen, "The Design of Vegetative Buffer Strips for Runoff and Sediment Control", Report to the Maryland Coastal Zone Management Program, University of Maryland, College Park, Maryland, 1981.

Woodward-Clyde Consultants (Recommendations by), "Biofiltration Swales and Filter Strips", November 1995.

Woodward-Clyde Consultants "Oil/Water Separators."

Woodward-Clyde Consultants, Recommendations for Revising Ecology's Manual, November 1995.

Appendix V-A
Basic Treatment Receiving Waters

1. All salt waterbodies

2.

Rivers	Upstream Point for Exemption
Bogachiel	Bear Creek
Chehalis	Bunker Creek
Columbia	Canadian Border
Cowlitz	Skate Creek
Elwha	Lake Mills
Hoh	South Fork Hoh River
Humptulips	West and East Fork Confluence
Lewis	Swift Reservoir
Nisqually	Alder Lake
Nooksack	Glacier Creek
South Fork Nooksack	Hutchinson Creek
Puyallup	Carbon River
Queets	Clearwater River
Quillayute	Bogachiel River
Sauk	Clear Creek
Satsop	Middle and East Fork Confluence
Skagit	Cascade River
Skokomish	Vance Creek
Skykomish	Beckler River
Snohomish	Snoqualmie River
Snoqualmie	Middle and North Fork Confluence
Sol Duc	Beaver Creek
Stillaguamish	North and South Fork Confluence
North Fork Stillaguamish	Boulder River
South Fork Stillaguamish	Canyon Creek
Toutle	North and South Fork Confluence
North Fork Toutle	Green River
White	Geenwater River
Wynoochee	Wishkah River Road Bridge

3.

Lakes	County
Washington	King
Sammamish	King
Union	King
Whatcom	Whatcom
Silver	Cowlitz

Appendix V-B
Procedure for Conducting a Pilot Infiltration Test

The Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT) consists of a relatively large-scale infiltration test to better approximate infiltration rates for design of stormwater infiltration facilities. The PIT reduces some of the scale errors associated with relatively small-scale double ring infiltrometer or "stove-pipe" infiltration tests. It is not a standard test but rather a practical field procedure recommended by Ecology's Technical Advisory Committee.

Infiltration Test

- Excavate the test pit to the depth of the bottom of the proposed infiltration facility. Lay back the slopes sufficiently to avoid caving and erosion during the test.
- The horizontal surface area of the bottom of the test pit should be approximately 100 square feet. For small drainages and where water availability is a problem smaller areas may be considered as determined by the site professional.
- Accurately document the size and geometry of the test pit.
- Install a vertical measuring rod (minimum 5-ft. long) marked in half-inch increments in the center of the pit bottom.
- Use a rigid 6-inch diameter pipe with a splash plate on the bottom to convey water to the pit and reduce side-wall erosion or excessive disturbance of the pond bottom. Excessive erosion and bottom disturbance will result in clogging of the infiltration receptor and yield lower than actual infiltration rates.
- Add water to the pit at a rate that will maintain a water level between 3 and 4 feet above the bottom of the pit. A rotameter can be used to measure the flow rate into the pit.

Note: *A water level of 3 to 4 feet provides for easier measurement and flow stabilization control. However, the depth should not exceed the proposed maximum depth of water expected in the completed facility.*

Every 15-30 min, record the cumulative volume and instantaneous flow rate in gallons per minute necessary to maintain the water level at the same point (between 3 and 4 feet) on the measuring rod.

Add water to the pit until one hour after the flow rate into the pit has stabilized (constant flow rate) while maintaining the same pond water level. (usually 17 hours)

After the flow rate has stabilized, turn off the water and record the rate of infiltration in inches per hour from the measuring rod data, until the pit is empty.

Data Analysis

Calculate and record the infiltration rate in inches per hour in 30 minutes or one-hour increments until one hour after the flow has stabilized.

Note: Use statistical/trend analysis to obtain the hourly flow rate when the flow stabilizes. This would be the lowest hourly flow rate.

Apply appropriate correction factors for site heterogeneity, anticipated level of maintenance and treatment to determine the site-specific design infiltration rate (see Table 7.3).

Example

The area of the bottom of the test pit is 8.5-ft. by 11.5-ft.

Water flow rate was measured and recorded at intervals ranging from 15 to 30 minutes throughout the test. Between 400 minutes and 1,000 minutes the flow rate stabilized between 10 and 12.5 gallons per minute or 600 to 750 gallons per hour, or an average of (9.8 + 12.3) / 2 = 11.1 inches per hour.

Applying a correction factor of 5.5 for gravelly sand in table 6.3 the design long-term infiltration rate becomes 2 inches per hour, anticipating adequate maintenance and pre-treatment.

Appendix V-C
Geotextile Specifications

Table 1 **Geotextile properties for underground drainage.** **Geotextile Property Requirements**[1]			
		Low Survivability	**Moderate Survivability**
Geotextile Property	**Test Method**	**Woven/Nonwoven**	**Woven/Nonwoven**
Grab Tensile Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	180 lbs/115 lbs min.	250 lbs/160 lbs min.
Grab Failure Strain, in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	<50%/>50%	<50%/>50%
Seam Breaking Strength (if seams are present)	ASTM D4632 and ASTM D4884 (adapted for grab test)	160 lbs/100 lbs min.	220 lbs/140 lbs min.
Puncture Resistance	ASTM D4833	67 lbs/40 lbs min.	80 lbs/50 lbs min.
Tear Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4533	67 lbs/40 lbs min.	80 lbs/50 lbs min.
Ultraviolet (UV) Radiation stability	ASTM D4355	50% strength retained min., after 500 hrs. in weatherometer	50% strength retained min., after 500 hrs. in weatherometer

[1] All geotextile properties are minimum average roll values (i.e., the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in the table).

Table 2 Geotextile for underground drainage filtration properties. Geotextile Property Requirements[1]				
Geotextile Property	Test Method	Class A	Class B	Class C
AOS[2]	ASTM D4751	.43 mm max. (#40 sieve)	.25 mm max. (#60 sieve)	.18 mm max. (#80 sieve)
Water Permittivity	ASTM D4491	.5 sec -1 min.	.4 sec -1 min.	.3 sec -1 min.

[1] All geotextile properties are minimum average roll values (i.e., the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in the table).

[2] Apparent Opening Size (measure of diameter of the pores in the geotextile)

Table 3 Geotextile strength properties for impermeable liner protection.		
Geotextile Property	**Test Method**	**Geotextile Property Requirements[1]**
Grab Tensile Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	250 lbs min.
Grab Failure Strain, in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	>50%
Seam Breaking Strength (if seams are present)	ASTM D4632 and ASTM D4884 (adapted for grab test)	220 lbs min.
Puncture Resistance	ASTM D4833	125 lbs min.
Tear Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4533	90 lbs min.
Ultraviolet (UV) Radiation	ASTM D4355	50% strength stability retained min., after 500 hrs. in weatherometer

[1] All geotextile properties are minimum average roll values (i.e., the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in the table).

Applications

1. For sand filter drain strip between the sand and the drain rock or gravel layers specify Geotextile Properties for Underground Drainage, moderate survivability, Class A, from Tables 1 and 2 in the Geotextile Specifications.

2. For sand filter matting located immediately above the impermeable liner and below the drains, the function of the geotextile is to protect the impermeable liner by acting as a cushion. The specification provided below in Table 3 should be used to specify survivability properties for the liner protection application. Table 2, Class C should be used for filtration properties. Only nonwoven geotextiles are appropriate for the liner protection application.

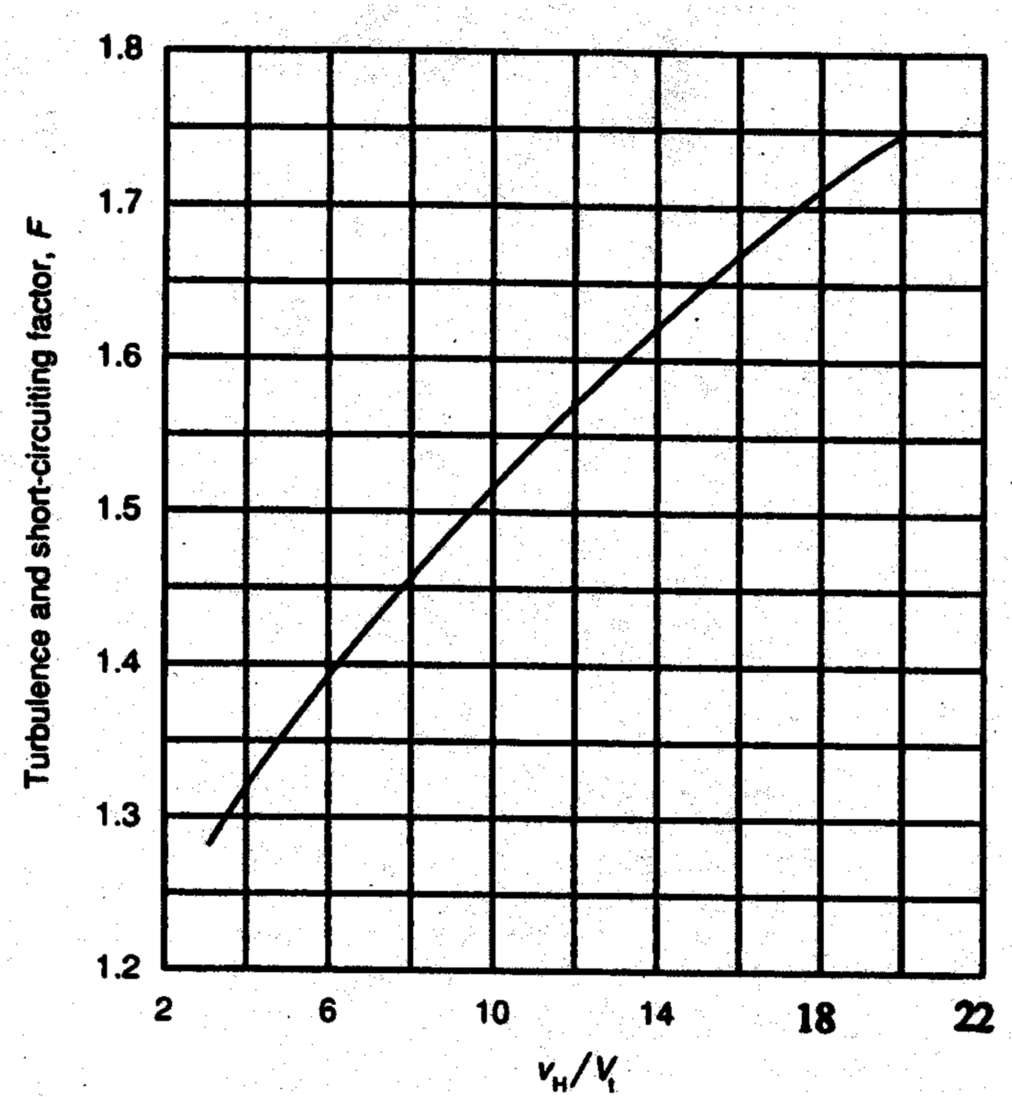
3. For an infiltration drain specify Geotextile for Underground Drainage, low survivability, Class C, from Tables 1 and 2 in the Geotextile Specifications.

4. For a sand bed cover a geotextile fabric is placed exposed on top of the sand layer to trap debris brought in by the storm water and to protect the sand, facilitating easy cleaning of the surface of the sand layer. However, a geotextile is not the best product for this application. A polyethylene or polypropylene geonet would be better. The geonet material should have high UV resistance (90% or more strength retained after 500 hours in the weatherometer, ASTM D4355), and high permittivity (ASTM D4491, 0.8 sec. -1 or more) and percent open area (CWO-22125, 10% or more). Tensile strength should be on the order of 200 lbs grab (ASTM D4632) or more.

Courtesy of Tony Allen, Geotechnical Engineer-WSDOT

Reference for Tables 1 and 2: Section 9-33.2 "Geotextile Properties," 1998 Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction

Appendix V-D
Turbulence and Short-Circuiting Factor



v_H/V_t	Turbulence Factor (F_t)	$F = 1.2(F_t)$
20	1.45	1.74
15	1.37	1.64
10	1.27	1.52
6	1.14	1.37
3	1.07	1.28

Figure D.1 Recommended Values of *F* for Various Values of v_H/Vt